



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

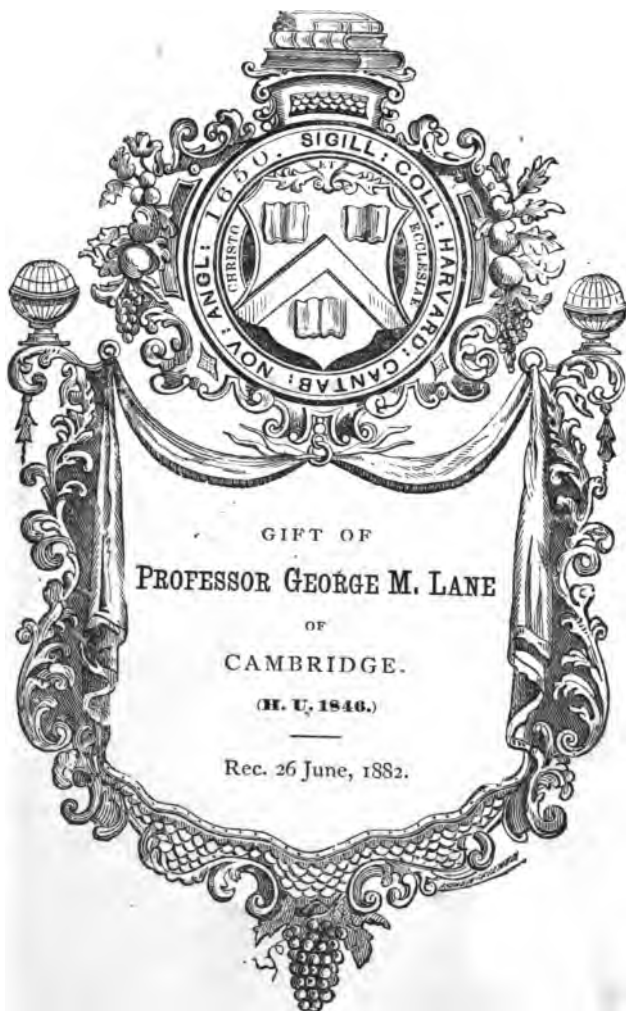
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

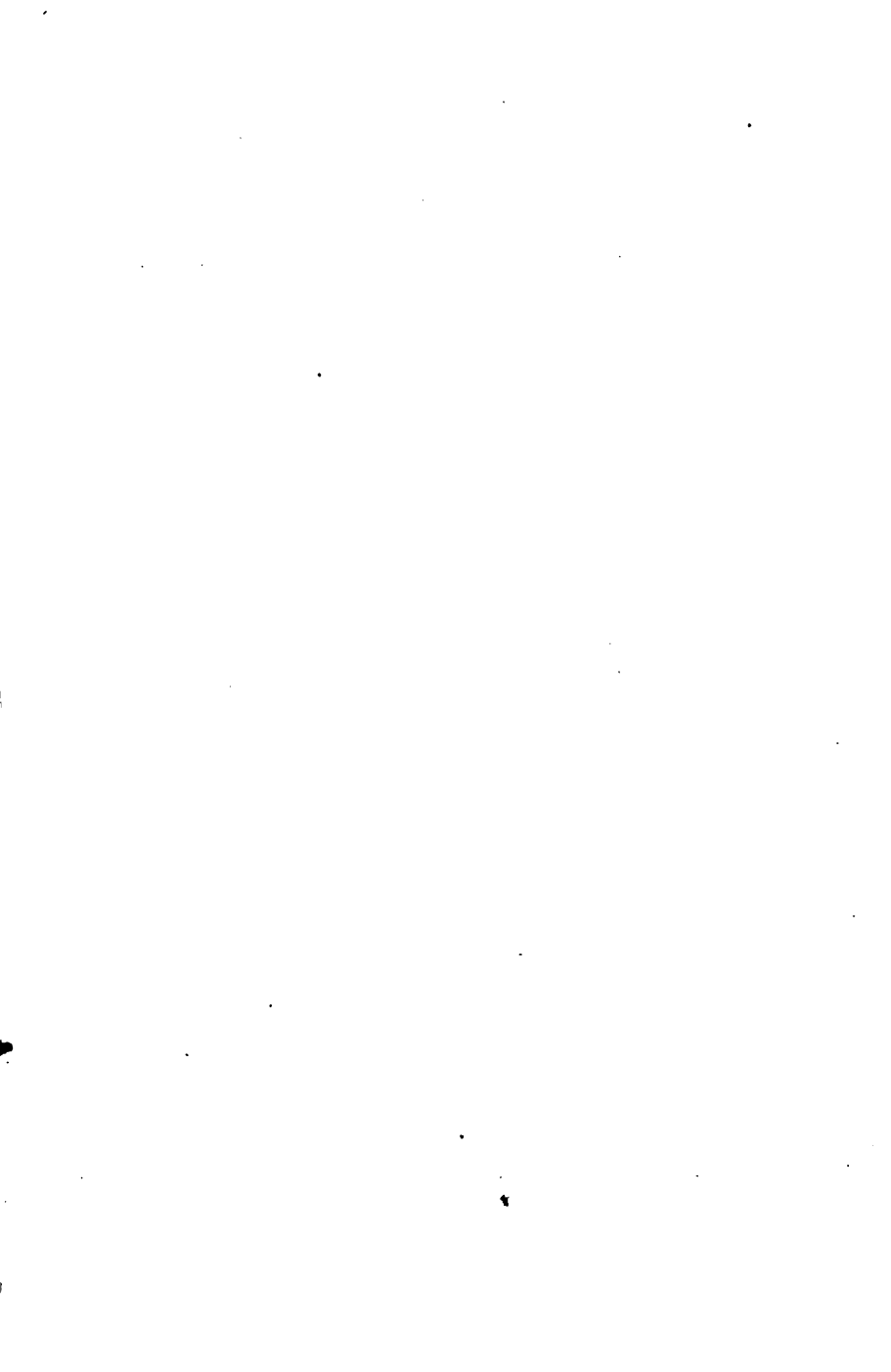
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





3 2044 097 063 390



A

0

LATIN GRAMMAR.

BY
Barnes
BASIL L. GILDERSLEEVE, PH. D.,
PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA.

C NEW YORK:
RICHARDSON AND COMPANY,
14 BOND STREET.
1867.

Induc T 918, 67. 425
~~Edmc 918. 67~~ ✓
~~5254. 26~~

JUN 26 1882

Recd
Prof. G. B. Lane,
Cambridge.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1867,
BY C. B. RICHARDSON & COMPANY,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States
for the Southern District of New York.

PART FIRST.

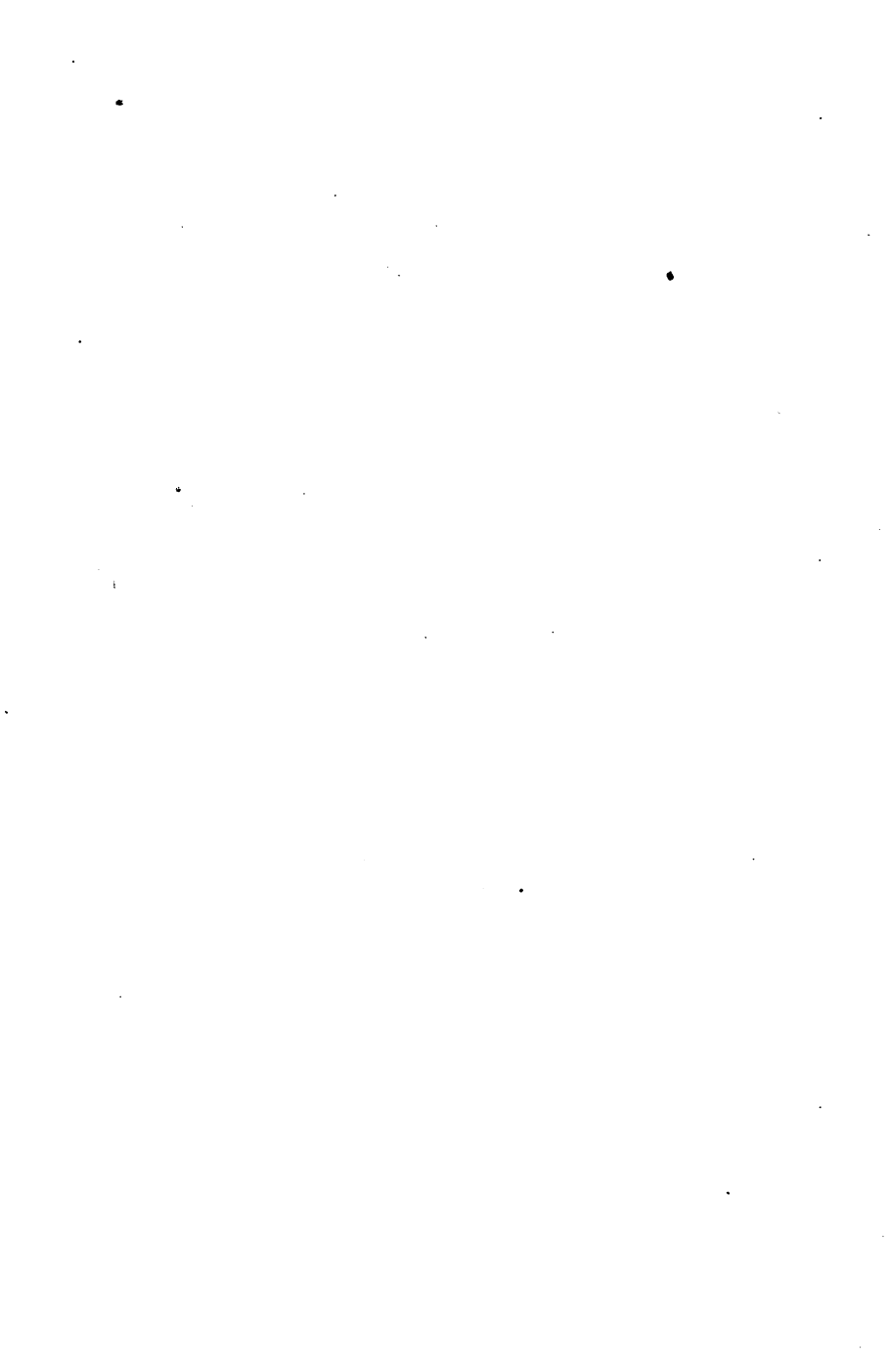
FORMS OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE,

CHIEFLY FROM THE

GERMAN OF LATTMAN AND MULLER.

EDITED BY

BASIL L. GILDERSLEEVE.



PREFACE.

THE First Part of this Latin Grammar is essentially an adaptation of the German work of LATTMANN and MÜLLER to the use of American students. In order to gain time for the Syntax, which seemed to require a more independent treatment, I associated with myself in the preparation of the Inflections Mr. T. R. PRICE, Jr., of Richmond, a Master of Arts of the University of Virginia, who has enjoyed the advantage of a thorough training in the best German schools, and who, by his fine native intellect, varied culture, and accurate scholarship, is competent to undertake and carry out far higher tasks than that which his personal friendship for me has induced him to share. For the method of noting the quantity, and for various modifications of the original, I alone am responsible.

In the preparation of the Syntax, I have been under special obligations to the Grammar of KRITZ, and to the joint labors of LATTMANN and MÜLLER: to KRITZ, for the general disposition; to LATTMANN and MÜLLER, for numerous practical hints, and particularly for the treatment of the Cases and the Paradigms of Construction. On almost all the important points, in which the views adopted and the presentation of those views differ from the usual method, I have had the advantage

of repeated conferences with my friend and colleague, Professor PETERS, and the great support of a cordial concurrence on the part of a scholar of such distinguished merit.

This Grammar is intended for the earliest, as well as for the latest, stages of instruction in Latin. The beginner is expected to commit the Paradigms to memory, without troubling himself about the scientific arrangement, as explained in the text. The practical use of the Syntax will be facilitated by an exercise-book, now in course of preparation.

B. L. GILDERSLEEVE.

UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA,

September, 1867.

INFLECTIONS

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE.

ALPHABET.

THE Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no W.

REMARK.—K is used chiefly in abbreviations—*K. (Casso), Kal. (Calendae)*. Y and Z, occur in Greek words only. Originally, there was no difference in character between I and J, between V and U.

VOWELS.


The vowels are a, e, i, o, u; and are divided:—

1. According to their *quality*, into

open, a, e, o.
close, i, u.

2. According to their *quantity*, into

long, —
short, ∪
common, i. e., sometimes short, and sometimes long, ∽

 In this grammar, every long vowel sound is marked.

Sound of the Vowels.

ā	=	a	in	father.	ā	nearly =	a	in	pat.
ē	=	e	in	prey.	ē	=	e	in	pet.
ī	=	i	in	caprice.	ī	=	i	in	pit.
ō	=	o	in	bone.	ō	=	o	in	pot.
ū	=	oo	in	moon.	ū	=	u	in	put.
y	=	u	in	sûr (French)	y	=	u	in	sur (French).

REMARK.—The short sounds are only less prolonged in pronunciation than the long sounds, and have no exact English equivalents.

Diphthongs.

There are but few *diphthongs* (*double sounds*) in Latin.

ae = ae in Graeme, or a in mādē.

au = ou in our.

oe = oe in French œil.

In *ei*, *eu*, *ui*, both elements should be heard slightly.

Diæresis.

The sign *··* (*Diæresis*—Greek = *separation*) over the second vowel shows that each sound is to be pronounced separately: *ǣr*, *air*; *Mene-lāūs*, *aloë*.

CONSONANTS.

Consonants are divided :—

1. According to the principal *organs*, by which they are pronounced, into

Labials (lip-sounds): b, p, (ph), f, v, m.

Dentals (tooth-sounds): d, t, (th), l, n, r, s.

Gutturals (throat-sounds): g, c, k, qu, (ch).

2. According to their *prolongation*, into

A. *Semi-vowels*: of which

l, m, n, r, -are *liquids*.

h, and v, are *breathings*, and

s, is a *sibilant*.

B. *Mutes*: to which belong

The P-mutes, p, b, (ph), f, *labials*.

The T-mutes, t, d, (th), *dentals*.

The K-mutes, k, c, qu, g, (ch), *gutturals*.

Those on the same line are said to be of the *same organ*.

Mutes are further divided into

Tenuēs (thin): p, t, k, c, qu.

Mediae (middle): b, d, g.

[*Aspiratae* (aspirate): ph, th, ch.]

The aspirates occur chiefly in Greek words.

Those on the same line are said to be of the *same order*.

Double consonants are: z = dz in *adze*, j = dy, x = cs (*ks*).

Sound of the Consonants.

The consonants are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions:—

Ch, in Greek words, is aspirated (ch in German). In Latin words, *e. g.*, *pulcher*, *beautiful*, it is sounded as ch in *archangel*.

G is hard throughout, as in *get*, *give*.

J has the sound of a broad *y*.

N has a nasal sound before c, g, and q, as in *anchor*, *anguish*.

Qu = kw (nearly); before u, qu = c, *quum* = *cum*, *when*.

REMARK.—In modern pronunciation, c is commonly hissed before e and i. Anciently, it was hard throughout.

DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

The syllable is the unit of pronunciation, and consists of a vowel, or a vowel and one or more consonants.

A consonant, between two vowels, belongs to the second: a-mo, *I love*.

Two or more consonants belong to the following vowel: a-sper, *rough*; fau-stus, *lucky*; li-bri, *books*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Liquids, l, m, n, r, join the preceding vowel: al-mus, *fostering*; am-bo, *both*; an-guis, *snake*; ar-bor, *tree*. mn follows the general rule: a-mnis, *river*.

2. When the consonant is doubled, the first belongs to the first, the second to the second syllable: cas-sis, *helmet*; al-lium, *garlic*; map-pa, *napkin*; an-nus, *year*; mit-to, *I send*.

3. Compounds are treated as if their parts were separate words: ab-igo, *I drive off*; rēs-pública, *commonwealth*.

The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

A syllable is said to be long *by nature*, when it contains a long vowel or diphthong; *by position*, when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant: ars, *art*; collum, *neck*; abrum-po, *I break off*; per in-are, *through the sea*; nex, *murder*; Troja, *Troy*.

REMARKS.—1. J does not make position in the compounds of jugum, *yoke*; bi-jugus, *two-horse*.

2. In this grammar, the circumflex (^) is employed to designate vowels long by nature, when they stand before two consonants or a double consonant: æris, *keen*; lûx, *light*.

A syllable with a short vowel before a mute, followed by l or r, is *common* (anceps): *tenēbrae*, *darkness*.

Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is long: *saevus*, *cruel*; *conclūdo*, *I shut up* (from *claudo*, *I shut*); *cōgo* (from *co-igo*), *I drive together*.

One simple vowel before another makes a short syllable: *deus*, *God*; *puer*, *boy*.

REMARKS.—1. h does not count: *nihil*, *nothing*.

2. Exceptions will be noted as they occur.

I final is always long.

M, R, T, final, make the preceding vowel short: *amēm*, *I may love*; *amēr*, *I may be loved*; *amēt*, *he may love*.

ACCENTUATION.

Dissyllabic words have the accent or stress on the penult: *ēquus*, *horse*.

Polysyllabic words have the accent on the penult, when the penult is long; on the antepenult, when the penult is short or common: *mandāre*, *to commit*; *mándēre*, *to chew*; *intēgram*, *entire*.

REMARKS.—1. The little appendages (enclitics), *que*, *ve*, *ne*, add an accent to the ultimate of words accented on the antepenult: *lūmināque*, *and lights*; *flūmināve*, *or rivers*; *vōmerēne*, *from a ploughshare?*

2. Other exceptions will be noted as they occur.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech are:—

I. The *Noun*, embracing: 1. The *Substantive*, which gives a name: *vir*, *a man*; *Cocles*, *Cocles*; *dōnum*, *a gift*. 2. The *Adjective*, which adds a quality to the substantive. 3. The *Pronoun*, which points out the substantive.

II. The *Verb*, which says.

III. The *Particles*, which are mainly mutilated forms of the noun, and embrace: 1. The *Adverb*, which shows the *circumstances*. 2. The *Preposition*, which shows the *local relation*. 3. The *Conjunction*, which shows the *connection of actions*.

REMARK.—The Interjection is either an inarticulate cry: *ah!* *ah!* and does not belong to language, or falls under one of the above-mentioned classes.

Inflection is that *bending* or *change*, chiefly in the end of a word, which shows a change in the relations of that word. The noun and verb are inflected; the particles are not capable of further inflection.

The inflection of nouns is called *declension*, and nouns are said to be *declined*.

The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and verbs are said to be *conjugated*.

NOUN SUBSTANTIVE.

The noun substantive gives the name of a person or thing (concrete), or of a quality (abstract).

Concrete substantives are either *proper* or *common*. The *proper* noun is *proper*, or *peculiar*, to certain persons or things: Horātius, *Horace*; Neāpolis, *Naples*; Padus, *Po*. *Common* nouns are *common* to a whole class: dominus, *a lord*; urbs, *a city*; amnis, *a river*.

GENDER.

For the names of animate beings, the gender is determined by the signification; for things and qualities, by the termination.

Males are masculine, Females, feminine. Masculine: Rōmulus; Jūpiter; vir, *man*; equus, *horse*. Feminine: Cornēlia; Jūno; fēmina, *woman*; equa, *mare*.

Some classes of words, without natural gender, have their gender determined by the signification:—

I. Names of *months* (mēnsēs, *masc.*), *winds* (ventī, *masc.*), *riters* (fluvī, *masc.*), and *mountains* (montēs, *masc.*), are *masculine*: Aprilis, *the opening month, April*; Aquilo, *the north wind*; Albis, *the River Elbe*; Athōs, *Mt. Athos*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Feminine are the Rivers Allia; Albula; Matrōna, *the Marne*; Styx; Lēthē.

2. Of the mountains, the Alps, Alpēs, are *feminine*, and sundry (Greek) names in a (Gen. ae), ē (Gen. ēs): Aetna, Cyllēnē. Sōracte and Pēlion are *neuter*, and so are names of mountains in a (Gen. ōrum): Maenala, Maenalōrum.

II. Names of *countries* (terrae, *fem.*), *islands* (insulae, *fem.*), *cities* (urbēs, *fem.*), *plants* (plantae, *fem.*), and *trees* (arborēs, *fem.*), are *feminine*: Aegyptus, *Egypt*; Rhodus, *Rhodes*; pirus, *a pear-tree*; abiēs, *a fir-tree*.

The exceptions, which are numerous, are chiefly Greek, and follow the termination instead of the signification.

III. All indeclinable nouns, and all words and phrases treated as indeclinable nouns, are *neuter*: *fās*, *right*; *ā longum*, *ā long*; *scire tuum*, *thy knowing*; *triste valē*, *a sad "farewell."*

Nouns which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of *common gender*: *civis*, *citizen* (male or female); *comēs*, *companion*; *iūdex*, *judge*.

Substantiva mobilia are words of the same origin, whose different terminations designate difference of gender: *magister*, *master*, *teacher*; *magistra*, *mistress*; *servus*, *serva*, *slave* (m. and f.); *victor*, *victrix*, *conqueror* (m. and f.)

If the male and female of animals have but one designation (*Epicene nouns*), *mas*, *male*, and *fēmina*, *female*, are added, when it is necessary to be exact: *pāvo mas* (*masculus*) *peacock*, *pāvo fēmina*, *peahen*.

CASES.

The Latin noun has six cases: *Nominative* (the case of the subject); *Genitive* (case of the complement); *Dative* (case of the indirect object); *Accusative* (case of the direct object); *Vocative* (case of direct address); *Ablative* (case of adverbial relation).

Of these, *Nominative* and *Vocative* are called *Cāsūs Rectī*, or *independent cases*; the other four, *Cāsūs Obliqui*, or *dependent cases*.

The cases arise from the combination of the ending with the stem.

The stem is that which is common to a class of formations.

REMARK.—The stem is often so much altered by contact with the ending, that its original form does not appear.

DECLENSIONS.

There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterized by the final sound of their respective stems:—

	Stem characteristic.
The stems of the First Declension end in	ā
The stems of the Second Declension end in	ō
The stems of the Third Declension end in a consonant, or the close vowels	i and u
The stems of the Fourth Declension end in	ū
The stems of the Fifth Declension end in	ē

The First, Second, and Fifth Declensions are called *Vowel Declensions*; the Third and Fourth, which really form but one, the *Consonant Declension*.

FIRST DECLENSION.

The stem ends in *ā*, which disappears in the ending *-is* of the Dative and Ablative plural.

FEMININE.

Sing. N.	mēnsa, <i>the, or a, table.</i>	Pl. N.	mēnsae, <i>the tables, or tables.</i>
G.	mēnsae, <i>of the, or a, table.</i>	G.	mēnsārum, <i>of the tables, or tables.</i>
D.	mēnsae, <i>to, for the, or a, table.</i>	D.	mēnsā, <i>to, for the tables, or tables.</i>
Ac.	mēnsa-m, <i>the, or a, table.</i>	Ac.	mēnsās, <i>the tables, or tables.</i>
V.	mēnsa, <i>O table! or table!</i>	V.	mēnsae, <i>O tables!</i>
Abl.	mēnsā, <i>from, with, by, the, or a, table.</i>	Abl.	mēnsā, <i>from, with, by, the tables, or tables.</i>

MASCULINE.

Sing. N.	scriba, <i>the clerk.</i>	Pl. N.	scribae, <i>the clerks.</i>
G.	scribae, <i>of the clerk.</i>	G.	scribārum, <i>of the clerks.</i>
D.	scribae, <i>to, for the clerk.</i>	D.	scribā, <i>to, for the clerks.</i>
Ac.	scriba-m, <i>the clerk.</i>	Ac.	scribās, <i>the clerks.</i>
V.	scriba, <i>O clerk!</i>	V.	scribae, <i>O clerks!</i>
Abl.	scribā, <i>from, with, by, the clerk.</i>	Abl.	scribā, <i>from, with, by, the clerks.</i>

Examples.

āla, <i>wing.</i>	poena, <i>punishment.</i>	ripa, <i>bank.</i>
aqua, <i>water.</i>	poëta, <i>poet.</i>	stella, <i>star.</i>
aula, <i>court.</i>	porta, <i>gate.</i>	terra, <i>earth.</i>
nauta, <i>sailor.</i>	pugna, <i>fight.</i>	ūva, <i>grape.</i>

REMARKS.—1. The Gen. *-āī* is found in poetry. The Gen. in *-ās* occurs in the word *famīlia*, *family*, when combined with *pater*, *father*, *māter*, *mother*, *filius*, *son*, *filia*, *daughter*, viz. :—*paterfamiliās*, *māterfamiliās*, *fillusfamiliās*, *filiafamiliās*.

The Gen. Pl. sometimes takes the form *-um* instead of *-ārum*, chiefly in the Greek words *amphora* (*amphora*, *measure of tonnage*), and *drachma*, *franc*—*Greek coin*. The poets make frequent use of this form in patronymics and compounds of *-cola* (from *colo*, *I inhabit*) and *-gena* (from *gen*, *beget*).

2. *Dea*, *goddess*, *filia*, *daughter*, *ambae*, *both*, and *duse*, *two*, have the form *-ābus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural, viz. :—*deābus*, *filiābus*, *ambābus*, *duābus*.

Rule of Gender.—The gender is feminine, except when males are meant.

Hadria, *the Adriatic*, is masculine.

SECOND DECLENSION.

The stem ends in *ō*, which is changed into *ō*, *ū*, *ē*, or disappears wholly.

	MASCULINE.		NEUTER.	
Sing. N.	hortus,	<i>the garden.</i>	bellum,	<i>war.</i>
G.	horti,	<i>of the garden.</i>	belli,	<i>of war.</i>
D.	hortō,	<i>to, for the garden.</i>	bellō,	<i>to, for war.</i>
Ac.	hortum,	<i>the garden.</i>	bellum,	<i>war.</i>
V.	hortē,	<i>O garden!</i>	bellum,	<i>O war!</i>
Abl.	hortō,	<i>from, with, by, the garden.</i>	bellō,	<i>from, with, by, war.</i>
Pl. N.	horti,	<i>the gardens.</i>	bella,	<i>wars.</i>
G.	hortōrum,	<i>of the gardens.</i>	bellōrum,	<i>of wars.</i>
D.	hortis,	<i>to, for the gardens.</i>	bellis,	<i>to, for wars.</i>
Ac.	hortōs,	<i>the gardens.</i>	bella,	<i>wars.</i>
V.	horti,	<i>O gardens!</i>	bella,	<i>O wars!</i>
Abl.	hortis,	<i>from, with, by, the gardens.</i>	bellis,	<i>from, with, by, wars.</i>

Examples.

animus,	<i>soul.</i>	equus,	<i>horse.</i>	arātrum,	<i>plough.</i>	ōvum,	<i>egg.</i>
ānus,	<i>year.</i>	fluvius,	<i>river.</i>	damnum,	<i>loss.</i>	oppidum,	<i>town.</i>
asinus,	<i>ass.</i>	gladius,	<i>sword.</i>	exemplum,	<i>pattern.</i>	ostium,	<i>mouth of a river.</i>
campus,	<i>field.</i>	lūdus,	<i>game.</i>	ferrum,	<i>iron.</i>	præmium,	<i>reward.</i>
cervus,	<i>stag.</i>	morbū,	<i>disease.</i>	folium,	<i>leaf.</i>	prātum,	<i>meadow.</i>
cibus,	<i>food.</i>	nūntius,	<i>messenger.</i>	lignum,	<i>log.</i>	regnum,	<i>kingdom.</i>
corvus,	<i>raven.</i>	rivus,	<i>brook.</i>	membrum,	<i>limb.</i>	scamnum,	<i>bench.</i>
	servus,	<i>slave.</i>			verbum,	<i>word.</i>	

Rule of Gender.—Nouns in -us are masculine; in -um, neuter.

Exceptions.—Feminine are: 1st. Cities and islands, *e. g.*, Corinthus, Salamis. 2d. Most trees, *e. g.*, fāgus, *beech*; quercus, *oak*. 3d. Many Greek nouns, *e. g.*, atomus, *atom*; paragraphus, *paragraph*; methodus, *method*; periodus, *period*; dialectus, *dialect*. 4th. Alvus, *belly*; colus, *distaff*; humus, *ground*; vannus, (*wheat*) *fan*.

Neuters are: virus, *venom*; pelagus, *sea*; vulgus, *the rabble* (sometimes masculine).

Some masculines in *r* drop -us in the Nominative and *e* in the Vocative Singular:—

Sing. N.	puer,	<i>the boy.</i>	ager,	<i>the field.</i>
G.	pueri,	<i>of the boy.</i>	agri,	<i>of the field.</i>
D.	puerō,	<i>to, for the boy.</i>	agrō,	<i>to, for, the field.</i>
Ac.	puerum,	<i>the boy.</i>	agrum,	<i>the field.</i>
V.	puer,	<i>O boy!</i>	ager,	<i>O field!</i>
Abl.	puerō,	<i>from, with, by, the boy.</i>	agrō,	<i>from, with, by, the field.</i>
Pl. N.	Pueri,	<i>the boys.</i>	agri,	<i>the fields.</i>
	&c., &c.		&c., &c.	

The *e* belongs to the stem, and is retained through all the cases in adulter, *adulterer*; alter, *the other*; asper, *rough*; dexter, *on the right*

(which has either *dextrī* or *dexterī*); *exter*, *outside*; *gener*, *son-in-law*; *gibber*, *hump-backed*; *lacer*, *torn*; *liber*, *free*; *Liber*, *god of wine*; *miser*, *wretched*; *prosper*, *lucky*; *puer*, *boy*; *socer*, *father-in-law*; *tener*, *soft*; *vesper*, *evening*; and in words ending in *-fer* and *-ger*, from *fero*, *I bear*, and *gero*, *I carry*, *e. g.*, *signifer*, *standardbearer*, *armiger*, *armorbearer*.

Iber and *Celtiber* (names of nations) have in the Plural *Ibērī* and *Celtibērī*.

In other words, the *e* is inserted only in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

Examples.

<i>aper</i> , <i>wild boar</i> .	<i>caper</i> , <i>he-goat</i> .	<i>fiber</i> , <i>beaver</i> .	<i>minister</i> , <i>servant</i> .
<i>arbiter</i> , <i>umpire</i> .	<i>cultor</i> , <i>knife</i> .	<i>lēvir</i> , { <i>husband's</i> <i>brother</i> .	<i>oleaster</i> , { <i>wild</i> <i>olive</i> .
<i>cancer</i> , <i>crab</i> .	<i>faber</i> , <i>workman</i> .	<i>magister</i> , <i>teacher</i> .	<i>vir</i> , <i>man</i> .

REMARKS.—1. In the Genitive Singular, *i* is often contracted into *ī*, the accent remaining unchanged; *e. g.*, *ingēnīi*, of *genius*, into *ingēnī*.

2. In the Vocative Singular, *īe* (*je*) is commonly contracted into *ī* in proper names in *-ius*, *-cius* (*ējus*). *-aius* (*ājus*), the accent remaining unchanged; *e. g.*, *Antōnī*, *Tullī*, *Gāī*, *Virgilī*. *Filius*, *son*, and *meus*, *my*, form their Vocatives in like manner: *fili*, *mī*.

3. In the Genitive Plural, *-um* for *-ōrum* is found in words denoting coins and measures; *e. g.*, *nūmum*, (*money*)=*sēstertium*, *sesterces*; *modium*, *measures*. *Faber*, *workman*, has both *fabrum* and *fabrōrum*; *liberī*, *children*, both *liberum* and *liberōrum*; and *vir*, *man*, in compounds, has *triumvirum*, of the *triumvirs*, and the like.

4. *Deus*, *God*, is irregular. Singular Vocative, *deus*. Plural Nominative (*dei*), *dī*, *dī*; Genitive, *deōrum*; Accusative, *deōs*; Dative and Ablative (*deīs*), *dīs*, *dīs*.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES IN *-us*, *-a*, *-um*.

Bonus, bona, bonum, good.

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Sing. N.	bōnus,	bona,	bonum,	<i>good.</i>	Pl. N.	bonī,	bonae, bona.
G.	bonī,	bonae,	bonī,	<i>of the good.</i>		bonōrum,	bonārum, bonōrum.
D.	bonō,	bonae,	bonō,	<i>to, for the good.</i>		bonīs,	bonīs, bonīs.
Ac.	bonum,	bonam,	bonum,	<i>the good.</i>		bonōs,	bonās, bona.
V.	bone,	bona,	bonum,	<i>O good!</i>		bonī,	bonae, bona.
Abl.	bonō,	bonā,	bonō,	<i>{ from, with, by,</i> <i>the good.</i>		bonīs,	bonīs, bonīs.

Miser, misera, miserum, wretched.

Sing. N.	<i>miser</i> ,	<i>misera</i> ,	<i>miserum</i> ,	<i>miserī</i> ,	<i>miserae</i> ,	<i>misera</i> .
G.	<i>miserī</i> ,	<i>miserae</i> ,	<i>miserī</i> ,	<i>miserōrum</i> ,	<i>miserārum</i> ,	<i>miserōrum</i> .
D.	<i>miserō</i> ,	<i>miserae</i> ,	<i>miserō</i> ,	<i>miserīs</i> ,	<i>miserīs</i> ,	<i>miserīs</i> .
Ac.	<i>miserum</i> ,	<i>miseram</i> ,	<i>miserum</i> ,	<i>miserōs</i> ,	<i>miserās</i> ,	<i>misera</i> .
V.	<i>miser</i> ,	<i>misera</i> ,	<i>miserum</i> ,	<i>miserī</i> ,	<i>miserae</i> ,	<i>misera</i> .
Abl.	<i>miserō</i> ,	<i>miserā</i> ,	<i>miserō</i> ,	<i>miserīs</i> ,	<i>miserīs</i> ,	<i>miserīs</i> .

Piger, pigra, pigrum, slow.

Sing. N.	<i>piger</i> ,	<i>pigra</i> ,	<i>pigrum</i> ,	Pl. N.	<i>pigrī</i> ,	<i>pigrae</i> ,	<i>pigra</i> ,
G.	<i>pigrī</i> ,	<i>pigrae</i> ,	<i>pigrī</i> ,	G.	<i>pigrōrum</i> ,	<i>pigrārum</i> ,	<i>pigrōrum</i> ,
	<i>&c.</i> , <i>&c.</i>					<i>&c.</i> , <i>&c.</i>	

The following have Genitive Singular in *-ius*, and Dative Singular in *i* :—

<i>ūnus,</i>	<i>ullus,</i>	<i>nullus,</i>	<i>one,</i>	<i>any,</i>	<i>none.</i>
<i>sōlus,</i>	<i>tōtus,</i>	<i>alius,</i>	<i>sole,</i>	<i>whole,</i>	<i>other.</i>
<i>uter,</i>	<i>alter,</i>	<i>neuter,</i>	<i>which of the two,</i>	<i>one of the two,</i>	<i>neither.</i>

REMARK.—In poetry, the *i* of the Genitive ending *-ius* is often shortened, except in *alius*.

Sing. N.	<i>nullus,</i>	<i>nulla,</i>	<i>nullum,</i>	<i>none.</i>	<i>alius,</i>	<i>alia,</i>	<i>aliud,</i>
G.	<i>nullius,</i>	<i>nullius,</i>	<i>nullius,</i>		<i>alius,</i>	<i>alius,</i>	<i>alius,</i>
D.	<i>nullī,</i>	<i>nullī,</i>	<i>nullī,</i>		<i>aliī,</i>	<i>aliī,</i>	<i>aliī,</i>
Ac.	<i>nullum,</i>	<i>nullam,</i>	<i>nullum,</i>		<i>aliū,</i>	<i>aliā,</i>	<i>aliud,</i>
Abl.	<i>nullō,</i>	<i>nullā,</i>	<i>nullō.</i>		<i>aliō,</i>	<i>aliā,</i>	<i>aliō.</i>
Pl. N.	<i>nullī,</i>	<i>nullae,</i>	<i>nulla,</i>		<i>aliī,</i>	<i>aliae,</i>	<i>alia,</i>
G.	<i>nullōrum,</i>	<i>nullārum,</i>	<i>nullōrum,</i>		<i>aliōrum,</i>	<i>aliārum,</i>	<i>aliōrum,</i>
		<i>&c., &c.</i>				<i>&c., &c.</i>	

THIRD DECLENSION.

The stem ends in a consonant, or the close vowels *i* and *u*.

The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem-characteristic, following the subdivisions of the letters of the alphabet :—

I.—Consonant Stems.

A. Liquid stems, ending in *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*.

B. Sibilant stems, ending in *s*.

C. Mute stems. { 1. Ending in a P-mute, *b*, *p*.
2. Ending in a K-mute, *c*, *g*.
3. Ending in a T-mute, *d*, *t*

II.—Vowel Stems.

1. Ending in *i*.

2. Ending in *u*.

(Compare the Fourth Declension.)

The sign of the Nominative Singular, masculine and feminine, is *s*, which, however, is dropped after *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*.

The Nominative Singular undergoes various changes.

The Vocative is like the Nominative. In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem.

Neuters always form { the Nominative without the case ending *s*.
the Accusative and Vocative case in both
numbers like the Nominative.
the Nominative Plural in *ā*.

I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

A.—*Liquid Stems.*1. Liquid stems in l. Nominative without s; *e. g.*, cōsul, *the consul.*

Sing. N.	cōsul,	<i>a consul.</i>	Pl. N.	cōsul-ēs,	<i>the consuls.</i>
G.	cōsul-is,		G.	cōsulūm,	
D.	cōsul-i,		D.	cōsul-ibūs,	
Ac.	cōsul-em,		Ac.	cōsul-ēs,	
V.	cōsul,		V.	cōsul-ēs,	
Abl.	cōsul-e,		Abl.	cōsul-ibūs.	

Rule of Gender.—Stems in l are masculine: sōl, *the sun*, sōlis; sāl, *salt*, sālīs.

Exceptions.—Neuters are: mel, *honey*, mellis; fel, *gall*, fellis.

2. Liquid stems in m. Nominative with s. One example only: hiem(p)s, *winter*; Genitive, hiem-is (fem.)

3. Liquid stems in n. The Nominative Singular of masculine and feminine stems is formed without s, drops the n of the stem, and ends in ō.

The Genitive Singular has, in some nouns, -ōnis; in others, -īnis.

The Nominative Singular of the neuter stems retains the n, and terminates in -ēn.

The Genitive Singular of neuters ends in -īnis.

Sing. N.	leo,	<i>the lion. (Masc.)</i>	imāgo,	<i>a likeness. (Fem.)</i>
G.	leōn-is,		imāgin-is,	
D.	leōn-i,		imāgin-i,	
Ac.	leōn-em,		imāgin-em,	
V.	leo,		imāgo,	
Abl.	leōn-e,		imāgine,	
Pl. N.	leōn-ēs,	<i>the lions.</i>	imāgin-ēs,	<i>likenesses.</i>
G.	leōn-um,		imāgin-um,	
D.	leōn-ibūs,		imāgin-ibūs,	
Ac.	leōn-ēs,		imāgin-ēs,	
V.	leōn-ēs,		imāgin-ēs,	
Abl.	leōn-ibūs.		imāgin-ibūs.	

Like leo, decline ōrātio, *speech*; like imāgo, decline consuetūdo, *custom*.

Remarks.—I. Nouns in -do and -go have in the Genitive -īnis, whilst the rest in -o have -ōnis; *e. g.*, grando, *hail*, grandinis; virgo, *maid*, virginis.

Exceptions.—Praedo, *robber*; harpago, *grappling-hook*; ligo, *mattock*, have ōnis; homo, *man*; turbo *whirlwind*, have īnis.

2. To the stems in n belong sanguis, *blood*, sanguin-is; pollis, *flower*, pollin-is. In these, n of the stem is dropped before s of the Nominative.

Nömen, *name*.

Sing. N.	nömen, (Neuter.)	Pl. N.	nömin-a,
G.	nömin-is,		nömin-um,
D.	nömin-I,		nömin-ibus,
Ac.	nömen,		nömin-a,
V.	nömen,		nömin-a,
Abl.	nömin-e.		nömin-ibus.

8. Masculines in -en, Genitive inis, are: pecten, *comb*, and the personal designations: tñbican, *flute*; tubicen, *trumpeter*; cornicen, *horn-blower*, and flānen, *priest*.

Masculines in -ēn, ēnis, are only: splēn and lēn, *spleen*, and the Plural rēnēs, *kidneys*.

Rule of Gender.

Masculine are nouns in -o,
Save those in -do, -go, and -io,
With caro, *flesh*; but ordo, cardo,
Are masculine, with ligo, margo;
Add harpago; and in -io,
All concrete nouns like pugio.

ordo, *rank*; cardo, *hinge*; ligo, *mattock*; margo, *border*; harpago, *grappling-hook*; pugio, *dagger*; vespertilio, *bat*; titio, *firebrand*.

Nouns in -en (-men) are neuter. See exceptions under Remark 3.

4. Liquid stems in r. Nominative without s.

REMARK.—In several words in -ör and -ür, the r has arisen from s. Hence, labōs, as well as labör, *toil*; rōbus and rōbür, *oak*; vōmis and vōmer, *plough-share*.

MASCULINE.				NEUTER.	
a.	passer, <i>sparrow</i> .	pater, <i>father</i> .		cadāver, <i>dead body</i> .	
	passer-is.	patr-is,		cadāver-is.	
o.	labor, <i>toil</i> .	örātor, <i>speaker</i> .		rōbur, <i>oak</i> .	
	labör-is.	örātör-is.		rōbor-is.	
u.	fūr, <i>thief</i> .	vultur, <i>vulture</i> .		fulgur, <i>lightning</i> .	
	fūr-is.	vultur-is.		fulgur-is.	

Words in -ter syncopate, *i. e.*, leave out the e, except later, *brick*, later-is.

Sing. N.	labor, <i>toil</i> .	Pl. labör-ēs,	Sing. pater, <i>father</i> .	Pl. patr-ēs,
G.	labör-is,	labör-um,	patr-is,	patr-um,
D.	labör-I,	labör-ibus,	patr-I,	patr-ibus,
Ac.	labör-em,	labör-ēs,	patr-em,	patr-ēs,
V.	labor,	labör-ēs,	pater,	patr-ēs,
Abl.	labör-e,	labör-ibus.	patr-e,	patr-ibus.

Rules of Gender.—Words in -er and -or are masculines; those in -ur, neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.

The only feminine is arbor.
 Neuters are: fār, nectar, marmor,
 Aequor, iter, acer, piper,
 Verber, ūber, vēr, cadāver,
 Ador, tūber, and papāver.

acer, *maple*; arbor, *tree*; ador, *spelt*; aequor, *sea*; cadāver, *dead body*; fār, *spelt*; marmor, *marble*; nectar, *nectar*; piper, *pepper*; papāver, *poppy*; tūber, *tumor*; ūber, *teat*; vēr, *spring*.

Furfur, *bran*, is masculine.

B.—Sibilant Stems in s.

The Nominative has no additional s.

In the other cases, the s of the stem passes over, between two vowels, into r.

Instead of the final stem-vowel e, the Nominative of masculines has i.

Instead of the final stem-vowels e and o, the Nominative of neuters has u.

REMARK.—S is retained throughout in the neuter: vās, *dish*, vāsia. SS occurs in as, *a copper*. Genitive assis (masc.), and os, *bone*, ossis (neut.)

Sing. N.	genus, <i>kind</i> .	Pl. gener-a,	Sing. corpus, <i>body</i> .	Pl. corpor-a,
G.	gener-is,	gener-um,	corpor-is,	corpor-um,
D.	gener-I,	gener-ibus,	corpor-I,	corpor-ibus,
Ac.	genus,	gener-a,	corpus,	corpor-a,
V.	genus,	gener-a,	corpus,	corpor-a,
Abl.	gener-a,	gener-ibus.	corpor-a,	corpor-ibus.

Rule of Gender.—Masculine are nouns in -is (-eris), and -os, -ōris; except ōs, *mouth*; Genitive, ōris, neuter.

Neuter are nouns in -us, Genitive, -eris, -oris, and in -us, -ūris; except tellūs, *earth*, tellūris, which is feminine, and the masculines, lepus, *hare*, leporis; mūs *mouse*, mūris.

C.—*Mute Stems.*

All masculines and feminines of mute stems have *s* in the Nominative.

Most polysyllabic mute stems change their final vowel *i* into *e* in the Nominative.

A K-mute, combining with *s*, becomes *x*, *e. g.*, *pac-s* = *pâx*, *peace*; *reg-s* = *rêx*, *king*.

A T-mute before *s* is dropped, *e. g.*, *aetat-s* = *aetâs*, *age*; *ped-s* = *pēs*, *foot*.

Stems in a P-mute.

A	K	I	O	U
trab-s, <i>beam</i> .	plēb-s, <i>commons</i> .	stip-s, <i>dole</i> .	princep-s, <i>chief</i> .	(op-s), <i>power</i> .
trab-is (fem.)	plēb-is (fem.)	stip-is (fem.)	princip-is (com.)	op-is (fem.)

With consonant preceding the stem-characteristic: *urb-s*, *city*, *urb-is* (fem.); *stirp-s*, *stock*, *stirp-is* (fem.).

Stems in a K-mute.

pâx, <i>peace</i> .	rêx, <i>king</i> .	râdix, <i>root</i> .	vôx, <i>voice</i> .	lûx, <i>light</i> .
pâc-is (fem.)	rêg-is (mas.)	râdic-is (fem.)	vôc-is (fem.)	lûc-is (fem.)
fax, <i>torch</i> .	grex, <i>herd</i> .	salix, <i>willow</i> .	jûdex, <i>judge</i> .	dux, <i>leader</i> .
fac-is (fem.)	grêg-is, (mas.)	salic-is (fem.)	jûdic-is	duc-is.

With consonant preceding the stem-characteristic: *arx*, *citadel*, *arc-is*; *falx*, *sickle*, *falc-is*.

Sing. N.	princep-s, <i>chief</i> .	Pl. p̄ncip-ēs,	Sing. N. rêx, <i>king</i> .	Pl. rêg-ēs,
G.	p̄ncip-is,	p̄ncip-um,	rêg-is,	rêg-um,
D.	p̄ncip-i,	p̄ncip-ibus,	rêg-i,	rêg-ibus,
Ac.	p̄ncip-em,	p̄ncip-ēs,	rêg-em,	rêg-ēs,
V.	princep-s,	p̄ncip-ēs,	rêx,	rêg-ūs,
Abl.	p̄ncip-e,	p̄ncip-ibus.	rêg-e,	rêg-ibus.

REMARK.—All monosyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the Genitive Plural in *-ium*, *e. g.*, *urbium*, *of cities*; *arcium*, *of citadels*; *montium*, *of mountains*; *partium*, *of parts*; *noctium*, *of the nights*. The polysyllabic stems also in *-nt* and *-rt* have more frequently *-ium*, *e. g.*, *cllentium*, *of clients*; *cohortium*, *of companies*. Stems in *-at* have sometimes both *-um* and *-ium*, *e. g.*, *civitatium* and *civitiatium*.

Stems in a T-mute.

A. Characteristic preceded by a vowel:—

T.				D.	
a.	aetâs, <i>aga</i> .	anas, <i>duck</i> .		vas, <i>bail</i> .	
	aetât-is, (fem.)	anât-is, (fem.)		vâdis, (masc.)	
a.	quîēs, <i>rest</i> .	pariēs, <i>wall</i> .	hērēs, <i>heir</i> .	pēs, <i>foot</i> .	
	quîēt-is, (fem.)	pariēt-is, (masc.)	hērēd-is, (masc.)	pēd-is, (masc.)	
l.	lîa, <i>suit</i> .			lapîs, <i>stone</i> .	
	lît-is, (fem.)	G. P., ium.		lapîd-is, (masc.)	
		mîles, <i>soldier</i> .			
		mîlit-is.			
o.	sacerdōa, <i>priest</i> .		custōs, <i>keeper</i> .		
	sacerdôt-is.		custōd-is.		
u.	virtûs, <i>manliness</i> .		palûs, <i>dog</i> .	laus, <i>praise</i> .	pēcus, <i>sheep</i> .
	virtût-is, (fem.)		palûd-is, (fem.)	laudis, (fem.)	pecûd-is, (fem.)

B.—Characteristic preceded by a consonant:—

<i>nī.</i> frōns, front-is,	<i>brow.</i> (fem.)			<i>nī.</i> frōna, <i>leafy branch.</i> frond-ā, (fem.)		
<i>rt.</i> pars, part-is,	<i>part.</i> (fem.)	<i>lt.</i> pulis, pult-is,	<i>porridge.</i> (fem.)	<i>rd.</i> cor, <i>heart.</i> cord-is, (neut.)		
<i>ct.</i> nox, noct-is,	<i>nighē.</i> (fem.)		<i>lāc,</i> lact-is,	<i>mīlk.</i> (neut.)		
Sing. N.	<i>aetās,</i>	<i>aga.</i>	Pl. aetāt-ēs,	Sing. pēs,	<i>foot.</i>	Pl. ped-ēs,
G.	aetāt-is,		aetāt-um,	ped-is,		ped-um,
D.	aetāt-i,		aetāt-ibus,	ped-i,		ped-ibus,
Ac.	aetāt-em,		aetāt-ūs,	ped-em,		ped-ēs
V.	aetās,		aetāt-ūs,	pēs,		ped-ēs,
Abl.	aetāt-e,		aetāt-ibus.	ped-e,		ped-ibus.

Rule of Gender.—All mute stems, with Nominative in s, are feminine.

EXCEPTIONS IN A K-MUTE.

Masculines are -unx and -ex,
Saving forfex, forpex, nex,
Lēx, faex, and all the forms of prex.

faex,	<i>drege.</i>	lēx,	<i>law.</i>
forfex,	<i>shears.</i>	nex,	<i>slaughter.</i>
forpex,	<i>tongs.</i>	prece,	<i>with prayer.</i>
		deunx,	$\frac{1}{2}$ as.

Calix, *cup*, and fornix, *arch*, are masculine. Calx, *heel*, and calx, *chalk*, vary.

EXCEPTIONS IN A T-MUTE.—Nouns in -ēs, -ītis, are masculine, *e. g.*, cēspes, *turf*, cēspitis; as are also pēs, *foot*; pariēs, *wall*; and, of the nouns in -is, lapis, *stone*.

Masculines in -ns are: mōns, *mountain*; pōns, *bridge*; fōns, *spring*; dēns, *tooth*; torrēns, *torrent*; rudēns, *rope*.

Neuters are only: cor, *heart*, and lac, *milk*, which drop the characteristic t; and caput, *head*, capitis.

II.--VOWEL STEMS.

1.—Vowel Stems in *i*.

Masculines and feminines form their Nominative in *s*.

Some feminines change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel *i* into *e*.

Neuters change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel *i* into *e*. This *e* is generally dropped by polysyllabic neuters after *l* and *r*.

All stems in *i* have Genitive Plural in *-ium*.

All neuter stems in *i* have the Ablative Singular in *i*, and Nominative Plural in *-ia*.

REMARKS.—The stems of Nominatives in *-is* and *-es* are easily distinguished.

Consonant stems in *-is* and *-es* increase in the Genitive; but vowel stems in *i* do not increase in the Genitive, *e. g.*,

	Consonant: lapis, <i>stone</i> ; Genitive, lapid-is.		mīles, <i>soldier</i> ; Genitive, mīlit-is.		
	Vowel: civis, <i>citizen</i> , civis.		nūbēs, <i>cloud</i> , nūbīs.		
Sing. N.	collī-s, <i>hill</i> .	turri-s, <i>tower</i> .	vulpēs, <i>fox</i> .	mare, <i>sea</i> .	animal, <i>living being</i> .
G.	collis,	turris,	vulpis,	maris,	animālis,
D.	collī,	turri,	vulpi,	marī,	animālī,
Ac.	collem,	turrem (turri-m),	vulpem,	mare,	animal,
V.	collis,	turris,	vulpes,	mare,	animal,
Abl.	colle,	turre (turri),	vilpe,	marī,	animālī,
Pl. N.	collēs,	turrēs,	vulpēs,	marī-a,	animālī-a,
G.	collī-um,	turri-um,	vulpi-um,	mari-um,	animālī-um,
D.	collī-bus,	turri-bus,	vulpi-bus,	mari-bus,	animālī-bus,
Ac.	collēs,	turrēs,	vulpēs,	marī-a,	animālī-a,
V.	collēs,	turrēs,	vulpēs,	marī-a,	animālī-a,
Abl.	collī-bus.	turri-bus.	vulpi-bus.	mari-bus.	animālī-bus.

REMARKS.—1. In Genitive Plural, *-um* instead of *-ium*.

Always in: juvenis, *young*; senex, *old*; canis, *dog*; vātēs, *bard*; struēs, *heap*; pānis, *bread*.

Usually in: apis, *bee*; sēdēs, *seat*; volucris, *bird*.

2. The Genitive Plural in *-ium* occurs in the apparently consonant stems: imber, *rain-storm*; ūter, *bottle*; venter, *belly*; linter, *skiff*; which form the Nominative without *s*, dropping the *i*, and inserting *e*. Genitive, imbris, ūtris, ventris, lintris, etc. All are masculine, except linter, which is feminine.

OBSERVATIONS.—Several stems in *i*, with Nominative in *-is*, have Accusative and Ablative Singular and Accusative Plural in *-im*, *i*, *is*, respectively:

1. The Accusative Plural in *-is* occurs:

In all vowel-stems in *i*, which have Nominative Singular in *-is*;

In mute-stems, which have Genitive Plural in *-ium*.

2. The Accusative Singular in -ĭm is used :

a. *Always* in names of towns and rivers in ĭs, e. g., Neāpōlis, Accusative, Neāpōlĭm; Tĭbēris, Accusative, Tĭbērĭm; and in vīs, *force*; sitis, *thirst*; tussis, *cough*.

b. *Usually* in secūris, *axe*; febris, *fever*; puppis, *poop*; turris, *tower*.

3. The Ablative Singular in ĭ is used :

a. In all nouns which have Accusative Singular invariably in -ĭm, and in ignis, *fire*, in the phrases, ferrō ignique, āquā et ignī interdicere. Nouns which have Accusative in -ĭm or -ĕm have Ablative in -ĭ or -ĕ.

b. In the neuter vowel-stems, which have Nominative in ĕ, āl, ār. Names of cities in -ĕ have Ablative also in -e, e. g., Praeneste, Genitive, Praenestis.

c. In the adjective vowel-stems of the Third Declension, e. g., facilis, *easy*; Ablative, facilĭ; ācer, *sharp*; Ablative, ācrĭ.

REMARK.—So also the adjectives of this class, when used as substantives by ellipsis: annālis (sc. liber, *book*), *chronicle*; nātālis (sc. diēs, *day*), *birthday*; Aprĭlis (sc. mensis, *month*), and all the other months of the Third Declension: Ablative, annālĭ, nātālĭ, Aprĭlĭ, Septembri, &c.

EXCEPTIONS.—Juvenis, *young man*; and aedĭlis, *aedile*; Ablative, juvenē, aedilē. Adjectives used as proper nouns have generally Ablative in -e, e. g., Juvenālĭs; Ablative, Juvenālē.

Rule of Gender.—Ī. Of stems in ĭ, Nominative in -is, some are masculine, some feminine.

Masculine are :

Amnis, axis, callis, crĭnis,
Cassis, caulis, fascis, finis,
Fūnis, fustis, ignis, ĕnsis,
Orbis, pūnis, piscis, mēnsis,
Postis, scrobis, būris, collis,
Sentis, torquis, atque follis,
Torris, unguis et ānnālĭs,
Vectis, vermis et canālĭs.

axis, <i>axe</i> .	collis, <i>hill</i> .	fustis, <i>cudgel</i> .	sentis, <i>bramble</i> .
amnis, <i>river</i> .	crĭnis, <i>hair</i> .	ignis, <i>fire</i> .	scrobis, <i>ditch</i> .
būris, <i>plough-tail</i> .	ĕnsis, <i>glaive</i> .	mēnsis, <i>month</i> .	torquis, <i>necklace</i> .
callis, <i>footpath</i> .	fascis, <i>fagot</i> .	orbis, <i>circle</i> .	torris, <i>firebrand</i> .
canālĭs, <i>canal</i> .	fĭnis, <i>end</i> .	pānis, <i>bread</i> .	unguis, <i>nail</i> .
cassēa, <i>pl. toils</i> .	follis, <i>bellows</i> .	piscis, <i>fish</i> .	vectis, <i>lever</i> .
caulis, <i>stalk</i> .	fūnis, <i>rope</i> .	postis, <i>door-post</i> .	vermis, <i>worm</i> .

Callis, finis, scrobis, torquis, are used also as feminines.

Other nouns in -is, and all in -es, are feminine.

2. Vowel-stems, with Nominative in -e, -al, -ar, are neuter.

REMARK.—Of the names of animals in -is, some are masculine: tigris, *tiger*; canis, *dog*; piscis, *fish*; others feminine: apis, *bee*; avis, *bird*; ovis, *sheep*; fĕlis, *cat* (usually fēles).

2.— *Vowel Stems in u.*

Of stems in u, only the *monosyllabic* belong to the Third Declension. Singular Nominative, sū-s, *swine*, usually feminine. Genitive, su-is; Dative Plural, usually subus, &c. Grū-s, *crane*, usually feminine; Genitive, gru-is, &c.

Table of Nominative and Genitive Endings of the Third Declension.

A * before the ending denotes that it occurs only in the one word cited.

A.—Nominatives ending with a liquid :—

	NOM.	GEN.	
I.	-al	-ālis	animal, <i>animal</i> , animālis.
		-ālis	Hannibal, Hannibalis—proper name.
	-āl	*-ālis	sāl, <i>salt</i> , salis.
II.	-el	-ellis	mel, <i>honey</i> , mellis.
III.	-il	-ilis	pugil, <i>boxer</i> , pugilis.
		-ilis	Tanaquil—proper name—Tanaquilis.
IV.	-ōl	-ōlis	sōl, <i>the sun</i> , sōlis.
V.	-ul	-ulis	cōsul, <i>consul</i> , cōsulis.
VI.	-ēn	-ēnis	rēn, <i>kidney</i> , rēnis.
VII.	-en	-inis	nōmen, <i>name</i> , nōminis.
VIII.	-ar	-āris	calcar, <i>spur</i> , calcāris.
		-aris	nectar, nectaris.
		*-arris	fār, <i>spelt</i> , farris.
IX.	-er	-eris	anser, <i>goose</i> , anseris.
		-ris	pater, <i>father</i> , patris.
		-ineris	iter, <i>journey</i> , itineris.
X.	-ēr	*-ēris	vēr, <i>spring</i> , vēris.
XI.	-or	-ōris	color, <i>color</i> , colōris.
		-oris	aequor, <i>expanse</i> , aequoris.
		*-ordis	cor, <i>heart</i> , cordis.
XII.	-ur	-uris	fulgur, <i>lightning</i> , fulguris.
		-oris	rōbur, <i>oak</i> , rōboris.
XIII.	-ūr	-ūris	fūr, <i>thief</i> , fūris.

B.—Nominatives ending with s, or a compound of s (gs, cs), x:—

	NOM.	GEN.	
XIV.	-ās	-ātis	aetās, <i>age</i> , aetātis.
XV.	-as	*-adis	vas, <i>surety</i> , vadis.
		*-atis	anas, <i>duck</i> , anatis.
		*-aris	mas, <i>male</i> , maris.
		*-assis	as, <i>a copper</i> , assis.
XVI.	-aes	*-aedis	praes, <i>surety</i> , praedis.
		*-aeris	aes, <i>brass</i> , aeris.
XVII.	-ēs	-is	nūbēs, <i>cloud</i> , nūbis.
		-eris	Cerēs—proper name—Cereris.
		-edis	pēs, <i>foot</i> , pedis.
		-etis	abiēs, <i>fir</i> , abietis.
		-ētis	quiēs, <i>rest</i> , quiētis.
XVIII.	-es	-etis	seges, <i>crop</i> , segetis.
		-idis	obses, <i>hostage</i> , obsidis.
		-itis	miles, <i>soldier</i> , militis.
XIX.	-is	-is	amnis, <i>river</i> , amnis.
		-idis	lapis, <i>stone</i> , lapidis.
		-eris	cinis, <i>ashes</i> , cineris.
		-inis	sanguis, <i>blood</i> , sanguinis.
XX.	-is	*-itis	lis, <i>suit at law</i> , litis. Gen. Pl. litium.
		*-iris	glis, <i>dormouse</i> , gliris. Gen. Pl. glirium
XXI.	-ōs	*-ōdis	custōs, <i>keeper</i> , custōdis.
		-ōtis	cōs, <i>whetstone</i> , cōtis.
		-ōris	flōs, <i>flower</i> , flōris.
		*-ovis	bōs, <i>ox</i> , bovis.
XXII.	-os	-otis	compos, <i>possessed of</i> , compotis.
		*-ossis	os, <i>bone</i> , ossis.
XXIII.	-us	*-udis	pecus, <i>cattle</i> , sheep, pecudis.
		*-utis	intercus, <i>under the skin</i> , intercutis.
		*-nris	Ligus, <i>a Ligurian</i> , Liguris.
		-oris	corpus, <i>body</i> , corporis.
		-eris	scelus, <i>crime</i> , sceleris.
XXIV.	-ūs	-uis	sūs, <i>swine</i> , suis.
		-ūris	jūs, <i>right</i> , jūris.
		-ūdis	incūs, <i>anvil</i> , incūdis.
		-ūtis	salūs, <i>weal</i> , salutis.

	NOM.	GEN.	
XXV.	-aus	-audis	fraus, <i>cheatery</i> , fraudis. Gen. Pl. fraud-
XXVI.	-ls	*-ltis	puls, <i>porridge</i> , pultis. [ium.
XXVII.	-m(p)s	*-mis	hiema, <i>winter</i> , hiemis.
XXVIII.	-ns	-ndis	frōns, <i>leafy branch</i> , frondia.
		-ntis	frōns, <i>forehead</i> , frontis.
XXIX.	-rs	-rdis	concors, <i>concordant</i> , concordis.
		-rtis	pars, <i>part</i> , partis.
XXX.	-bs	-bis	urbs, <i>city</i> , urbis.
XXXI.	-ps	-pis	stirps, <i>stalk</i> , stirpis.
		-ipis	prīnceps, <i>chief</i> , principis.
		*-upis	auceps, <i>fowler</i> , aucupis.
XXXII.	-ax	-ācis	pāx, <i>peace</i> , pācis.
		*-acis	fax, <i>torch</i> , facis.
XXXIII.	-ex	-icis	jūdex, <i>judge</i> , jūdicis.
		-ecis	nex, <i>death</i> , necis.
		-ēcis	ālēx, <i>pickle</i> , ālēcis.
		-icis	vībēx, <i>veal</i> , vībicis.
		*-igis	rēmex, <i>rower</i> , rēmigis.
		-egis	grex, <i>flock</i> , gregis.
		-ēgis	rēx, <i>king</i> , rēgis.
XXXIV.	-ix	-icis	cervix, <i>neck</i> , cervicis.
		-icis	calix, <i>cup</i> , calicis.
		*-igis	strix, <i>screech-owl</i> , strigis.
		*-ivis	nix, <i>snow</i> , nivis. Gen. Pl. nivium.
XXXV.	-ox	-ōcis	vōx, <i>voice</i> , vōcis.
		*-ocis	praecox, <i>early-ripe</i> , praecocis.
		*-ogis	Allobrox—foreign name—Allobrogis.
		*-octis	nox, <i>night</i> , noctis.
XXXVI.	-ūx	-ucis	crux, <i>cross</i> , crucis.
		-ūcis	lūx, <i>light</i> , lūcis.
		-ugis	conjug, <i>spouse</i> , conjugis.
		-ūgis	frūx, <i>fruit</i> , frūgis.
XXXVII.	-aex	-aecis	faex, <i>dregs</i> , faecis.
XXXVIII.	-aux	-aucis	faux, <i>throat</i> , faucis. Gen. Pl. faucium.
XXXIX.	-lx	-lcis	falx, <i>sickle</i> , falcis.
	-nx	-ncis	lanx, <i>dish</i> , lancis.
	-rx	-rcis	arx, <i>citadel</i> , arcis.

C.—Nominatives ending with a mute:—

XL.	-āc	*-actis	lāc, <i>milk</i> , lactis.
XLI.	-ēc	*-ēcis	ālēc, <i>pickle</i> , ālēcis.
XLII.	-ut	*-itis	caput, <i>head</i> , capitis.

D.—Nominatives ending with a vowel:—

XLIII.	-e	-is	mare, <i>sea</i> , maris.
XLIV.	-o	-ōnis	pāvo, <i>peacock</i> , pāvōnis.
		-onis	Saxo, <i>Saxon</i> , Saxonis.
		-inis	homo, <i>man</i> , hominis.
		*-nis	caro, <i>flesh</i> , carnis.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

The Fourth Declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in u.

The endings are those of the Third Declension.

In the Genitive and Ablative Singular, and the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural (sometimes, too, in the Dative Singular), the u of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long, *e. g.*, fructu-is becomes fructūs, *of fruit*; fructu-e becomes fructū, *from fruit*; fructu-ēs becomes fructūs, *fruits*. This u, on the contrary, is lost before the ending -ibus in the Dative and Ablative Plural.

The Accusative Singular, as always in vowel-stems, has the ending m, without a connecting vowel (compare the Accusative in -im of the stems in i), hence u -m.

MASCULINE.			NEUTER.	
Sing. N.	fructu-a, <i>fruit</i>	Pl. fructūs,	cornū, <i>horn</i> .	Pl. cornu-a,
G.	fructūs,	fructu-um,	cornūs,	cornu-um,
D.	fructu-i,	fructibus,	cornū,	cornibus,
	(fructū),			
Ac.	fructu-m,	fructūs,	cornū,	cornu-a,
V.	fructus,	fructūs,	cornū,	cornu-a,
Abl.	fructū,	fructibus.	cornū,	cornibus.

REMARKS.—1. Dative and Ablative Plural in -ubus occur in nouns in -cus, and in tribus, *tribe*: artus, *joint*; partus, *childbirth*; portus, *harbor*; sinus, *fold*.

2. Domus, *house*, Ablative Singular, domō; Genitive Plural, domuum and domōrum; Accusative Plural, domūs and domōs. Domī (a locative form) means, *at home*.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns in -us are masculine; those in -ū are neuter.

Exceptions.—Feminines are idūs, pl., *the 15th day of the month*, tribus, *tribe*, porticus, *piazza*, acus, *needle*, manus, *hand*, domus, *house*.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

The stem ends in *e*. Nominative in *s*.

MASCULINE		FEMININE	
Sing. N.	diē-s, <i>day</i> ,	Sing.	rēs, <i>thing</i> ,
G.	diē-I,		re-I,
D.	diē-I,		re-I,
Ac.	diē-m,		rem,
V.	diēs,		rēs,
Abl.	diē,		rē,
Pl.	diēs,	Pl.	rēs,
	diē-rum,		rē-rum,
	diē-bus,		rē-bus,
	diēs,		rēs,
	diēs,		rēs,
	diē-bus.		rē-bus.

REMARKS.—The Plural is used throughout in these words only, viz.: *rēs, thing*; *diēs, day*; *speciēs, appearance*. In some words, only Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural occur; others have no Plural at all.

The stem-characteristic *e*, in the Genitive and Dative Singular, is *long* after a vowel, and *short* after a consonant, *e. g.*, *speciēs*, Genitive *speciēī*; *rēs, thing*, *reī*; *fidēs, faith*, Genitive *fidēī*, &c.

Some nouns of the Fifth Declension have a secondary form which follows the First Declension, *e. g.*, *mollitiēs, softness*, and *mollitia*. Where the double form exists, only Nominative, Accusative, and Ablative Singular commonly follow the Fifth Declension.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns of the Fifth Declension are feminine, except *diēs* (which in the Singular is of common gender, and in the Plural masculine) and the masculine *meridiēs, mid-day*.

DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.

Greek substantives, especially proper names, are commonly Latinized, and declined regularly according to their stem-characteristic. Many nouns, however, either retain their Greek form exclusively, or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side.

Paradigms of Greek Nouns of the First Declension.

ἡ ἐπιτομή, ἡς, <i>abridgment</i> .		Λεωνίδα, ου,	
Sing. N.	epitomē,	Pl.	epitomae,
G.	epitomēs,		epitomārum,
D.	epitomae,		epitomīa,
Ac.	epitomēn,		epitomās,
V.	epitomē,		epitomae,
Abl.	epitomē,		epitomīa.
			Leōnidās, ov,
			Leōnidās,
			Leōnidāe,
			Leōnidāe,
			Leōnidam, -ān,
			Leōnidās, -ā,
			Leōnidā.

ὁ Πέρσης, ου, <i>the Persian</i> .			
Sing. N.	Persēs and Persa,	Pl.	Persae,
G.	Persae,		Persārum,
D.	Persae,		Persīa,
Ac.	Persēn and Persam,		Persās,
V.	Persē,		Persae,
Abl.	Persō and Persā,		Persīa.

Synopsis of the Changes in Greek Nouns.

Τροία, Troja, -ae,	Ἰφιγένεια, Iphigenia, -ae,	Μενέλαος, Menelaus, -i,	
Ἀλέξανδρος, Alexander, -dri,	ἡ παράγραφος, paragraphus,	Δῆλος, Delus, Delos, -I, <i>Delos</i> .	
Ἴλιον, Ilium, Ilion, -i,	Ἄθως, -ω, Athōs, Gen., Dat. Athō, Acc. Athō or Athōn, or Gen. Athōnia.		
<i>Troy.</i>	<i>Athos.</i>		
Ὀρφεύς, -εως, Orpheus, Gen. Orpheī, Dat. Orpheō, Acc. Orpheum, Voc. Orpheū, Abl. Orpheō.			
Σόλων, -ωνος,	Λάκων, -ωνος,	Μακεδών, -όνος,	Ξενοφών, -ώντος,
Solōn, Solo, -ōnis,	Iaco, -ōnia.	Macedo, -donia.	Xenophōn, -ōntia.
Ἑκτωρ, -ορος,	ὁ ῥήτωρ, -ορος,	Κύκλωψ, -ωπος,	
Hector, -oria.	rhētor, -oria.	Cyclōps, -ōpia.	
Πάρις, -ιδος,	Δημόναξ, -ακτος,	Βίας, -αντος,	
Paris, -idia.	Dēmōnax, -actia.	Biās, -antia.	
Χρόμης, -ητος,	Οἰδίπους, -οδος,		
Chremēs, -ētia.	Oedipūs, -odia, or -i,		
Ἀπόλλων, -ωνος,	Αἴας, -αντος,	Ὀδυσσεύς, -εως,	Ἀχιλλεύς, -εως,
Apollo, -inia.	Ajāx, -ācia.	Ulixēs, -ia.	Achillēs, -ia.
Ξέρξης, -ου,	Περικλῆς, -έους,	Ἡρακλῆς, -έους,	
Xerxēs, -ia.	Periclēs, -ia.	Hercules, -ia.	

REMARK.—Greek proper names in -ea, Genitive -is, of the Third Declension, have in Latin, in the Genitive Singular, both -is and -i, but in the Ablative only -e, and in the Accusative -em, and sometimes -en, e. g.:

Xerxēs. Genitive, Xerxis and Xerxi; Accusative, Xerxem and Xerxēn.

τὸ ἔπος, -ους, epos, only in Nom. and Acc. Plural, epē, <i>epic</i> .		ἡ ποίησις, -εως, poēsis, -is and eūs, <i>poesy</i> . acc. a. poēsīn.	
ὁ ἥρως, -ως, hērōs, -ōis, <i>hero</i> .	Διδῶ, -ούς, -οῦ, -ῶ, Didō. Gen. Didūs, Dat. Didō, Didōnis, Didōnī,	Acc. Didō, Didōnem.	
ἡ μουσική, mūsicā, -ea, mūsica, -ae, <i>musica</i> .	ὁ κρατήρ, crātēr, -ēris, m. crātēra, -ae, f., <i>bowls</i> .	ὁ ἐλέφας, elephas, -antis, elephantus, -i, <i>elephant</i> .	Σαλαμίς, Salamīs, -inis, Salamīna, -ae.

Many words form the Accusative Singular in a, e. g. : āēra, *air*, aethera, Marathōna, Salamīna.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

NOUNS OF SUPERABUNDANT FORMS.

baculus and baculum, <i>staff</i> .	baltens and -um, <i>word-belt</i> .
clipeus and -um, <i>shield</i> .	vesper, -i, and vespera, -ae, <i>evening</i> .
māteria and māteriēs (fifth decl.), <i>stuff</i> .	dūritia and dūritiūs, <i>hardness</i> .
diluvium and diluviēs, <i>flood</i> .	
plēbs and plēbēs, <i>commons</i> , Gen. plēbis and plēbei, and tribūnus plēbi, <i>tribune of the people</i> .	

NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

NOUNS USED IN SINGULAR ONLY.

Most abstract nouns and names of materials: *iustitia, justice, aurum, gold.*

NOUNS USED IN PLURAL ONLY.

valvae, *door-leaves, door.*
 scālae, *stair-case.*
 habēnae, *reins.*
 divitiae, *riches.*
 tenebrae, *darkness.*
 epulae, epulum, *banquet.*
 nuptiae, *wedding.*
 indutiae, *armistice.*
 minae, *threats.*
 fauces, -ium, *faux, gullet.*
 compedēs, -ium, *l., fetters.*

bigae, quadrigae, *two-horses, four-horses chariot.*
 angustiae, *straits.*
 cūnae, cūnārum, cūnābula, -ōrum, *cradles.*
 liberi, liberōrum, *children.*
 arma, -ōrum, *arms.*
 cervicēs, G. -um, also *cervix, neck.*
 castra, *camp.*
 forēs, G. -um, *l., door.*
 moenia, G. -ium, m., *town-wall.*
 Kalendae, Nōnae, Idūs, *Calends, Nones, Ides.*
 precēs, -ium (prex), *prayer.*
 ambagēs, -um, *l., circumlocution.*

The last four have Ablative Singular in -e: *fauce, compede, prece, ambage.*

NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN CASE.

Used only:—

In Ablative Singular: *nātū, by birth; promptū, in readiness; monitū, by admonition; jussū, by order; sponte, of free will, &c.*

In Nominative and Accusative Singular: *fās, right; nefās, wrong; and the Greek neuters in -os.*

In the oblique cases the forms of *ops, power; daps, feast; frūx, fruit; vix, change; dicio, sway; verber, scourge; of which the Nominatives are not in use.*

The Genitive Plural of many monosyllabic nouns does not occur, *e. g.:* *cōs, a whetstone; lūx, light; ōs, mouth.*

vis, force; G. and D. are wanting; Ac. vim; Abl. vi. Pl. vīrēs, virium, viribus.

nēmo, nobody; G. nullius hominis; D. nēmīnī; Ac. nēmīnem; Abl. nullō homine.

HETEROCLITES.

(Different Stems with the same Nominative.)

pecus, udis, one head of cattle, a sheep; pecus, oris, cattle collectively.
domus, house; Abl. domō. Pl. G. domuum and domōrum; Ac. domūs and domōs.

figus, *fig-tree*; *laurus*, *bay-tree*; *pinus*, *pine-tree*, are declined regularly according to the Second Declension, but have secondary forms in use from the Fourth Declension in the Ablative Singular, and in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

senātus, *senate*; G. *senatūs* or *senatī*.

requiēs, -ētis, f.; Ac. *requiētem* and *requiem*, *rest*.

famēs, -is; Abl. *famē* and *famē*, *hunger*.

satrapēs, G. *satrapae* and *satrapis*; D. *satrapae*, &c., *Persian governor*.

METAPLASTS.

(*Isolated Cases from another than the Nominative Stem.*)

locus, Pl. *loci*, *localities*, *locī*, *passages in books*.

jocus, *jest*, Pl. *jocī* and *joca*.

frēnum, *bridle*, Pl. *frēna* and *frēnī*.

rastrum, *mattock*, Pl. *rāstrī*, also *rāstra*.

vās, *vāsī*, n., *dish*, Pl. *vāsa*, *vāsōrum*, *vāsīs* (as if from *vasum*).

poēma, *poem*, *poēmatīs*, n., Pl. *poēmata*, *poēmatum*, -ōrum, *poēmatīs*, -ibus. So all Greek words in -a, -atis.

Bacchānālia, -iorum, -ibus, *feast of Bacchus*. So several other names of feasts in -ia.

PECULIARITIES AND IRREGULARITIES.

sanguis, *blood*, and *pollis*, *flour*, G. -inis.

caro, f., G. *carnis* (for *carin-is*); G. pl. *carnium*, *flesh*.

iter, *itineris*, n., *way*, *route*.

jecur, *jecoris* and *jecinoris*, n., *liver*. *femur*, -oris and *feminis*, n., *thigh*.

fel, *fellis*, n. *gall*. *mel*, *mellis*, n., *honey*. *fār*, *farris*, n., *meal*.

as, *assis*, m. *assium*. *os*, *ossis*, n., *bone*, *ossium*. *ōs*, *ōris*, n., *mouth*.

nix, *nivis*, f., *snow*. (from *NIGVS*. See *vīvo*, p. 86).

bōs, *bovis*, c.; G. Pl. *boum*; D. *būhus*, *bōbus*, *ox*, *bullock*, *cow*.

auceps, *aucupis*, *fowler*.

senex, *senis*, *old man*.

supellex, *supellectilis*, f., *furniture*.

caput, *capitis*, n., *head*, *anceps*, *double*, *praeceps*, *headlong*, G. -cipitis.

Anio, *Aniēnis*. *Jūpiter*, *Jovis*. *Venus*, *Veneris*. *Cerēs*, *Cereris*.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The declension of the adjectives of the Third Declension follows the rules given for the substantives.

Most of the adjectives of the Third Declension are vowel-stems in *i*. They form the masculine and feminine alike, with Nominative in *s*; but the neuter Nominative weakens the characteristic *i* into *e*. (Compare *mare sea*.)

Adjectives of Two Endings.

Several stems in *i*, preceded by *r* (*cr*, *tr*, *br*), form the Nominative masculine, not by affixing *s*, but by dropping the *i* and inserting *e* short before the *r*, *e. g.* : stem *âcri*, *sharp*, Nom. Masc. *âcer*, Nom. Fem. *âcris*. (Compare p. 23, *c*.)

The *e* belongs to the stem only in *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*, *swift*.

	MASC. and FEM.	NEUTER.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
Sing. N.	facili -a, <i>easy</i> .	facile,	âcer,	âcri-a,	âcre,
G.	facilia,		âcris,		
D.	facili,		âcri,		
Ac.	facilem,	facile,	âcrem,		âcre,
V.	facilia,	facile.	âcer,	âcris,	âcre.
Abl.	facili.		âcri.		
Pl. N.	facilēs,	facili-a,	âcrēs,		âcri-a,
G.	facili-um,		âcri-um,		
D.	facili-bus,		âcri-bus,		
Ac.	facilēs,	facili-a,	âcrēs,		âcri-a,
V.	facilēs,	facili-a.	âcrēs,		âcri-a.
Abl.	facili-bus.		âcri-bus.		

The consonant-stems have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the Accusative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Sing. N.	fēlix, <i>lucky</i> ,	fēlix,	prūdēna, <i>wise</i> ,	prūdēna,	vetus, <i>old</i> ,	vetus,
G.	fēlic-ia,		prūdēt-ia,		veter-ia,	
D.	fēlic-i,		prūdēt-i,		veter-i,	
Ac.	fēlic-em,	fēlix,	prūdēt-em,	prūdēna,	veter-em,	vetus,
V.	fēlix,		prūdēna,		vetus,	
Abl.	fēlici (and -e).		prūdēt-i and e,		veter-e or i.	
Pl. N.	fēlic-ēs,	fēlicia,	prūdēt-ēs,	prūdētia,	veter-ēs,	veter-a,
G.	fēlic-ium,		prūdēt-ium,		veter-um,	
D.	fēlic-ibus,		prūdēt-ibus,		veter-ibus,	
Ac.	fēlic-ēs,	fēlicia,	prūdēt-ēs,	prūdētia,	veter-ēs,	veter-a,
V.	fēlic-ēs,	fēlicia,	prūdēt-ēs,	prūdētia,	veter-ēs,	veter-a,
Abl.	fēlic-ibus.		prūdēt-ibus.		veter-ibus.	

Adjectives of One Ending.

Adjective stems of one ending close with l, r, s, or a P, K, or T mute.

vigil, <i>alert</i> , vigil-ia.	memor, <i>mindful</i> , memor-ia, Abl. i, e.	pauper, <i>poor</i> , pauper-ia, Abl. e.	cleur, <i>tame</i> , cleur-ia, Abl. e.	pūbēs, <i>adult</i> , pūber-ia, Abl. e.	vetus, <i>old</i> , veter-ia.
particip-ēs, <i>sharing</i> , particip-ia, Abl. e.		caeleb-s, <i>unmarried</i> , caelib-ia, Abl. e.		inop-s, <i>poor</i> , inop-ia, Abl. i (e).	
audāx, <i>bold</i> , audāc-ia.	fālix, <i>lucky</i> , felix-ia.	duplex, <i>double</i> , duplic-ia.	ferōx, <i>ferce</i> , ferēc-ia.	trux, <i>savage</i> , truc-ia.	
dīves, <i>rich</i> , dīvit-ia, Abl. e.	dēsea, <i>slotful</i> , dēsidiā, Abl. e.	compos, <i>possessed of</i> , comput-ia, Abl. e.	prūdēns, <i>wise</i> , prudent-ia.	concorā, <i>harmonious</i> , concord-ia, Abl. e (i).	

REMARKS.

The adjectives of one ending, including the present participle, follow in part the declension of vowel stems :

1. In the neuter Plural they have -ia ; only *vetus, old*, has *vetera*. Many have no neuter.

2. In the Ablative Singular they have i and e—when used as adjectives commonly i ; when used as substantives, commonly e.

The participles, as such, have e ; but used as nouns or adjectives, either e or i, with tendency to i.

3. In the Genitive Plural the consonant-stems have—
-ium, when the characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant ;
-um, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel, *e. g.* :

audāx, <i>bold</i> , audācium.	prūdēns, <i>wise</i> , prudentium.	Samnitēs, <i>Samnites</i> , Samnitium.
supplex, <i>suppliant</i> , supplicium.	dīves, <i>rich</i> , dīvitum or dītum.	
caelebs, <i>unmarried</i> , caelibum.	compos, <i>possessed of</i> , computum.	memor, <i>mindful</i> , memorum.

Exceptions occur, *e. g.* :—

multiplex, *manifold*, multiplicium.

Phoenicēs, *Phoenicians*, Phoenicium.

The participles have -ium, *e. g.*, amans, *loving*, amantium.

Used as nouns, they have sometimes -um, *e. g.* :

sapiēns, *a sage*, sapientum,

parēns, *a parent*, parentum.

4. Compound adjectives follow the declension of the word from which they are formed, *e. g.* :

concora, *harmonious*,
concordum.

anceps, *double*,
incipitum.

quadrupēs, *four-footed*,
quadrupedum.

Even these, however, have the neuter plural commonly in -ia, *e. g.* :
incipitia, quadrupedia.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The Degrees of comparison are: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant-stems the endings -ior for the masculine and feminine, and -ius for the neuter.

The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant-stems the endings -issimus, -a, -um.

Vowel-stems, before forming the Comparative and Superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.
	M. and F.	N.	
altus, -a, -um, <i>high</i> ,	alt-ior, <i>higher</i> ,	alt-ius,	alt-issimus, a, um, <i>highest</i> .
fortis, -e, <i>brave</i> ,	fort-ior,	fort-ius,	fort-issimus.
ūtilis, -e, <i>useful</i> ,	ūtil-ior,	ūtil-ius,	ūtil-issimus.
audāx, <i>bold</i> ,	audāc-ior,	audāc-ius,	audāc-issimus.
prūdēns, <i>wise</i> ,	prūdēt-ior,	prūdēt-ius,	prūdēt-issimus.

	M. and F.	N.
Sing. N.	altior,	altius,
G.	altioris,	altioris,
D.	altiori,	altiori,
Ac.	altiorem,	altius,
V.	altior,	altius,
Abl.	altiore and -i.	altiore and -i.
Pl. N.	altiores,	altiora,
G.	altiorum,	altiorum,
D.	altioribus,	altioribus,
Ac.	altiores,	altiora,
V.	altiores,	altiora,
Abl.	altioribus,	altioribus.

PECULIARITIES.

1. Adjectives in -er add the Superlative-ending -rimus directly to the Nominative masculine.

POSITIVE.
miser, -a, -um, *wretched*,
celer, -is, -e, *swift*,
ācer, ācria, ācre, *sharp*,
vetus, *old*,

COMPARATIVE.
miser-ior, miser-ius,
celer-ior, celer-ius,
ācer-ior, ācer-ius,
veterior, vetustior,

SUPERLATIVE.
miser-rimus.
celer-rimus.
ācer-rimus.
veter-rimus.

2. Six adjectives in -ilis add -limus to the stem, after dropping -i, to form the Superlative :

facilis, *easy*; difficilis, *hard*; similis, *like*; dissimilis, *unlike*; gracilis, *slender*; and humilis, *low*.

a. g. facilis, Comp. facilior, Sup. facilissimus.

3. The adjectives in dicus, ficus, volus, borrow the Comparative and Superlative from the participial forms in -dicens, -ficens, and -volens.

a. g. benevolus, Comp. benevolentior, Sup. benevolentissimus.

In like manner :

egēnus, <i>needy</i> ,	egentior,	egentissimus.
prōvidus, <i>far-sighted</i> ,	prōvidentior,	prōvidentissimus.

4. Adjectives in -us, preceded by a vowel, form the Comparative and Superlative by means of magis and maximē, *more* and *most*, e. g. :

idōneus, *fit*, Comp. magis idōneus, Sup. maximē idōneus.

REMARK.—Adjectives in -quus and -uis are not included under this last rule.

antiquus, <i>old</i> ,	Comp. antiquior,	Sup. antiquissimus.
pinguis, <i>fat</i> ,	pinguior,	pinguissimus.
tenuis, <i>thin</i> ,	tenuior,	tenuissimus.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

bonus, <i>good</i> ,	mellior,	melius,	optimus.
malus, <i>bad</i> ,	pejor,	pejus,	pessimus.
magnus, <i>great</i> ,	major,	majus,	maximus.
parvus, <i>small</i> ,	minor,	minus,	minimus.
multus, <i>much</i> ,	S. —	plūs,	plūrimus,
	Pl. plūrēs,	plūra, G. Pl. plūrium,	
	complūrēs,	complūra and -ia,	
nēquam, <i>worthless</i> ,	nēquior,	nēquius,	nēquissimus.

REMARK.—Some Comparatives and Superlatives are in use, whilst the corresponding Positive is either lacking or rare.

dēterior, *worse*, dēterrimus, dēior, *swifter*, dēciſsimus.

potior, *better*, potissimus.

exterior, *outer*, extrēmus, extimus, from exterus, *on the outside*, and prep. extrā, *without*.

superior, *upper*, suprēmus, or summus, from superus, *on the top*, and prep. suprā, *above*.

inferior, *lower*, infimus, from inferus, *below*, prep. infrā, *below*,

posterior, *hinder*, later, postrēmus and postumus, from posterus, *coming after*, prep. post, *after*.

Again, the Positive stem of existing Comparatives is met with only in a preposition or an adverb, e. g., ante, *before*; anterior, *that is before*; prope, *near*; propior, proximus; citior, *on this side*; citimus, from citrā; ulterior, *further*; ultimus, from ultrā, *beyond*; interior, *inner*; intimus, from intus, *within*; prior, *former*; primus, *first*, from prae, *before*.

On the other hand, many adjectives lack one or both of the degrees of comparison, e. g. :

Diversus, *different*, novus, *new*, falsus, *untrue*, meritus, *deserved*, have no Comparative.

Longinquus, *afar*, propinquus, *near*, salūtāris, *healthful*, juvenis, *young* (Comparative junior), and senex, *old* (Comparative senior), have no superlative.

ADVERBS.

Adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of the adjectives.

1. Adjectives in -us and -er form the adverb in ē (mutilated Ablative).

altus, *lofty*, altē. pulcher, *beautiful*, pulchrē. miser, *wretched*, miserē.

2. The adjectives of the Third Declension form their adverbs by adding -ter to the stem; stems in -nt dropping the t, and stems in a K-mute inserting the connecting vowel i before the ending.

fortis, *brave*, fortiter. ferōx, *wild*, ferōc-i-ter. prudens, *foreseeing*, pruden-ter.

Exceptions:—

audāx, *bold*, audāc-ter. difficilis, *hard to do*, difficulter and difficiliter.

But instead of these, generally, nōn facile, vix, aegrē.

REMARKS.—1. The Ablative of some adjectives serves as an adverb:—

tūtus, *safe*, tūtō; falsō, *falsely*; perpetuō, *ceaselessly*; continuō, *forthwith*; improvīso, *unexpectedly*, primō, *at first*.

consultē and consultō, *purposely*; certē, *at least*, and certō, *certainly*.

rārē, *thinly*, and rārō, *seldom*; vērē, *in truth*, and vērō, *true but*.

rectē, *correctly*, and rectā, *straightway*; dexterā or dextrā, *to the right*, and dexterē, *skillfully*.

sinistrā and laevā, *to the left hand*.

2. The Accusative neuter of many adjectives is used as an adverb. *This is true of all Comparatives.*

Multum, *much*; paulum, *a little*; nimium, *too much*; ceterum, *for the rest*; primum, *first*; postrimum, *finally*; potissimum, *chiefly*; facile, *easily*; dulce, *sweetly*; triste, *sadly*; impune, *scot-free*.

Comparison of Adverbs.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
altē, <i>loftily</i> ,	altius,	altissimē.
pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i> ,	pulchrius,	pulcherrimē.
miserē, <i>poorly</i> ,	miserius,	miserimē.
fortiter, <i>bravely</i> ,	fortius,	fortissimē.
audācter, <i>boldly</i> ,	audācius,	audācissimē.
tūtō, <i>safely</i> ,	tūtius,	tūtissimē.
facile, <i>easily</i> ,	facilius,	facillimē.
bene, <i>well</i> ,	melius,	optimē.
male, <i>ill</i> ,	pejus,	pessimē.
[parvus], <i>small</i> ,	minus, <i>less</i> ,	minimē, <i>least</i> .
[magnus], <i>great</i> ,	magis, <i>more</i> ,	maximē, <i>most</i> .
multum, <i>much</i> ,	plūs, <i>more</i> ,	plūrimū,
cito, <i>quickly</i> ,	citius,	citissimē.
diū, <i>long</i> ,	diūtius,	diutissimē.
saepe, <i>often</i> ,	saepius,	saeptissimē.
nūper, <i>recently</i> ,	—	nūperrimē.
satī, <i>enough</i> ,	satius,	

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

The Cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except: *ūnus, one, duo, two, trēs, three*, the hundreds beginning with *ducenti, two hundred*, and the plural *milia, thousands*, which forms *mīlium* and *mīlibus*.

N. duo, <i>two</i> ,	duae,	duo,	trēs,	tria,
G. duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	triūm,	
D. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	tribus,	
A. duōa, duo,	duāa,	duo,	trēs,	tria,
Ab. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	tribus.	

Like duo is declined ambo, -ae, -o, *both*.

	CARDINAL NUMERALS.	ORDINAL NUMERALS.
1 I	ūnus, ūna, ūnum (p. 16).	primus, -a, -um (prior)
2 II	duo, duae, duo	secundus (alter)
3 III	trēs, tria	tertius
4 IV	quattuor	quartus
5 V	quinque	quintus
6 VI	sex	sextus
7 VII	septem	septimus
8 VIII	octo	octāvus
9 IX	novem	nōnus
10 X	decem	decimus
11 XI	undecim	undecimus
12 XII	duodecim	duodecimus
13 XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus
14 XIV	quattuordecim	quartus decimus
15 XV	quindecim	quintus decimus
16 XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17 XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus
18 XVIII	duodēvigintī	duodēvicesimus
19 XIX	undēvigintī	undēvicesimus
20 XX	vigintī	vicesimus
21 XXI	vigintī ūnus	vicesimus primus
22 XXII	vigintī duo	vicesimus secundus
23 XXIII	vigintī trēs	vicesimus tertius
24 XXIV	vigintī quattuor	vicesimus quartus
25 XXV	vigintī quinque	vicesimus quintus
26 XXVI	vigintī sex	vicesimus sextus
27 XXVII	vigintī septem	vicesimus septimus
28 XXVIII	duodētrīgintā	duodētricesimus
29 XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētricesimus
30 XXX	trīgintā	tricesimus
40 XL	quadrāgintā	quadragesimus
50 L	quinqūāgintā	quingagesimus
60 LX	sexāgintā	sexagesimus
70 LXX	septuāgintā	septuagesimus
80 LXXX	octōgintā	octogésimus
90 XC	nōnāgintā	nōnagesimus
100 C	centum	centésimus

CARDINAL NUMERALS.		ORDINAL NUMERALS.
101	CI centum et ūnus	centēsimus primus
115	CXV centum et quindecim	centēsimus et quintus decimus
120	CXX centum et viginti	centēsimus vicēsimus
121	CXXI centum et viginti ūnus	centēsimus vicēsimus primus
200	CC ducenti, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300	CCC trecenti	trecentēsimus
400	CCC quadringenti	quadringentēsimus
500	D (Id) quingenti	quingentēsimus
600	DC sexcenti	sexcentēsimus
700	DCC septingenti	septingentēsimus
800	DCCC octingenti	octingentēsimus
900	DCCCC nongenti	nongentēsimus
1000	M (cId) mille	millēsimus
1001	MI mille et ūnus	millēsimus primus
1101	MCI mille centum ūnus	millēsimus centēsimus primus
1120	MCXX mille centum viginti	millēsimus centēsimus vicēsimus
1121	MCXXI mille centum viginti ūnus	millēsimus centēsimus vicēsimus primus
1200	MCC mille ducenti	millēsimus ducentēsimus
2000	MM duo milia (millia)	bis millēsimus
	bina milia	
2222	duo milia ducenti viginti duo	bis millēsimus ducentēsimus vicēsimus secundus
5000	Icō quinque milia	quinquies millēsimus
	quina milia	
10,000	ccIcō decem milia	decies millēsimus
	dēna milia	
21,000	ūnum et viginti milia	semel et vicies millēsimus
100,000	centum milia	centies millēsimus
	centēna milia	
1,000,000	decies centēna milia	decies centies millēsimus

The compound numerals can be expressed in two ways :

From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as the English : *twenty-one*, viginti ūnus ; or *one and twenty*, ūnus et viginti.

From 100 on, et is inserted after the first numeral, or omitted altogether : mille et centum unus, or mille centum ūnus=1101.

CARDINALS.

21-27	viginti ūnus	or ūnus et viginti
101	centum et ūnus	centum ūnus
120	centum et viginti	centum viginti
121	centum et viginti ūnus	centum viginti ūnus
1001	mille et ūnus	mille ūnus
1101	mille et centum ūnus	mille centum ūnus
1125	mille et centum viginti quinque	mille centum viginti quinque
2222	duo milia et ducenti viginti duo	duo milia ducenti viginti duo

ORDINALS.

13-17	tertius decimus	or	decimus et tertius
18	duodēvicesimus		octāvus decimus
19	undēvicesimus		nōnus decimus
21	vicesimus primus		ūnus et vicesimus
22	vicesimus secundus		alter et vicesimus
23	vicesimus tertius		tertius et vicesimus

DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS.

1	singulī, -ae, -a, <i>one each</i> .	29	undētricenī
2	binī, -ae, -a, <i>two each</i> .	30	tricenī
*3	ternī	40	quadrāgēnī
4	quaternī	50	quinqūāgēnī
5	quinī	60	sexāgēnī
6	senī	70	septuāgēnī
7	septēnī	80	octōgēnī
8	octōnī	90	nōnāgēnī
9	novēnī	100	cēntēnī
10	dēnī	200	ducēnī
11	undēnī	300	trēcēnī
12	duodēnī	400	quadrīngēnī
13	ternī dēnī	500	quīngēnī
14	quaternī dēnī	600	sexcēnī
15	quinī dēnī	700	septīngēnī
16	senī dēnī	800	octīngēnī
17	septēnī dēnī	900	nongēnī
18	octōnī dēnī, duodēvicesnī	1000	singula millia
19	novēnī dēnī, undēvicesnī	2000	binā millia
20	vicesnī	3000	trinā millia
21	vicesnī singulī	10,000	dēna millia
22	vicesnī binī, binī et vicesnī	100,000	centēna millia
23	duodētricenī		

MULTIPLICATIVE NUMERALS.

1	simplex, <i>single</i> ,	1	simplus, -a, -um, <i>single</i> ,
2	duplex, <i>double</i> ,	2	duplus, <i>double</i> ,
3	triplex, <i>triple</i> ,	3	triplus,
4	quadruplex,	4	quadruplus,
5	quincuplex,	7	septuplus,
7	septemplex,	8	octuplus.
10	decemplex,		
100	centuplex.		

* The distributive numerals are used instead of cardinals with nouns which have a singular meaning in the plural (p. 28): binæ litteræ, *two letters*. Instead of ternī, the form trinī is employed in such combinations: trinæ litteræ, *three letters*; trīna castra, *three camps*. EXCEPTION: Unī - ae - a is used with this class and not singulī: unæ litteræ, *one letter*.

NUMERAL ADVERBS.

1 semel, <i>once</i> ,	22 bis et viciśa, viciśa et bis, viciśa bis,*
2 bis, <i>twice</i> ,	30 triciśa,
3 ter,	40 quadrāgiśa,
4 quater,	50 quinquāgiśa,
5 quinquies, quinquēna,	60 sexāgiśa,
6 sexies,	70 septuāgiśa,
7 septies,	80 octōgiśa,
8 octies,	90 nōnāgiśa,
9 novies,	100 centies,
10 decies,	200 ducenties,
11 undecies,	300 trecenties,
12 duodecies,	400 quadringenties,
13 ter decies, tredecies,	500 quingenties,
14 quater decies, quattuordecies,	600 sexcenties,
15 quinquies decies, quindecies,	700 septingenties,
16 sexies decies, sēdecies,	800 octingenties,
17 septies decies,	900 nongenties,
18 duodēviciśa, octies decies,	1,000 millies,
19 undēviciśa, novies decies,	2,000 bis millies,
20 viciśa,	100,000 centies millies,
21 semel et viciśa, viciśa et semel, viciśa	1,000,000 millies millies, decies centies millies.
semel,*	

PRONOUNS.

Pronouns designate without describing.

I.—*Personal Pronouns of the First Person.*

	SUBSTANTIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
Sing. N.	ego, <i>I</i> ,	
G.	meī, <i>of me</i> ,	
D.	mihi, <i>to, for me</i> ,	meus, -a, -um, <i>mine or my</i> .
Ac.	mē, <i>me</i> ,	
Abl.	mē, <i>from, with, by me</i> .	
Pl. N.	nōs, <i>we</i> ,	
G.	nōstri, <i>of us</i> ,	
	nōstrum,	nōster, nōstra, nōstrum, <i>our or ours</i> .
D.	nōbis, <i>to, for us</i> ,	
Ac.	nōs, <i>us</i> ,	
Abl.	nōbis, <i>from, with, by us</i> .	

* Not semel viciśa, bis viciśa, &c., because that would be, once twenty times—20 times; twice twenty times—40 times.

II.—*Personal Pronouns of the Second Person.*

	SUBSTANTIVE	POSSESSIVE
Sing. N.	tū, <i>thou</i> ,	
G.	tui, <i>of thee</i> ,	
D.	tibi, <i>to, for thee</i> ,	tuus, a, um, <i>thy or thine</i> .
Ac.	tū, <i>thee</i> ,	
Abl.	tē, <i>from, with, by thee</i> ,	
Pl. N.	vōs, <i>ye or you</i> ,	
G.	vestri, <i>of you</i> ,	
	vestrum,	vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your or yours</i> .
D.	vōbīs, <i>to, for you</i> ,	
Ac.	vōs, <i>you</i> ,	
Abl.	vōbīs, <i>from, with, by you</i> .	

REMARK.—The forms of the Genitive Plural, nostrum and vestrum, are used as partitive genitives in reference to number.

III.—*Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.*

A. The personal pronoun of the third person varies in the Nominative, and is represented by the determinative in the oblique cases, with special forms for the reflexive.

	Determinative.	
	SUBSTANTIVE	POSSESSIVE
Sing. N.	[is, ea, id], <i>he, she, it</i> ,	(supplied by the genitive.)
G.	ejus, <i>of him, &c.</i>	
D.	ei, <i>to, for him</i> ,	
Ac.	eum, eam, id, <i>him, her, it</i> ,	ejus, <i>his, hers, its</i> .
Abl.	eō, eā, eo, <i>from, with, by him, &c.</i>	
Pl. N.	[ei, or ii, eae, ea], <i>they</i> ,	
G.	eōrum, eārum, eōrum, <i>of them</i> ,	eōrum, eārum, eōrum, <i>their, or theirs</i> .
D.	eis, or iis, <i>to, for, them</i> ,	
Ac.	eōs, eās, ea, <i>them</i> ,	
Abl.	eis, or iis, <i>from, with, by them</i> .	

Reflexive.

	SUBSTANTIVE	POSSESSIVE
Sing. N.	—	
G.	suī, <i>of him, her, it (self)</i> ,	suus, -a, -um, <i>his, her(s), its</i>
D.	sibi, <i>to, for, him (self), her (self)</i> ,	(own).
Ac.	sē (sēsē), <i>him (self), her (self)</i> ,	
Abl.	sē (sēsē), <i>from, with, by him (self)</i> .	
Pl. N.	—	
G.	suī, <i>of them (selves)</i> ,	suus, -a, -um, <i>their (own),</i>
D.	sibi, <i>to, for them (selves)</i> ,	<i>theirs</i> .
Ac.	sē (sēsē), <i>them (selves)</i> ,	
Abl.	sē (sēsē), <i>from, with, by them (selves)</i> .	

B. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

1.—*is, he, that, &c.*

Sing. N.	is,	ea,	id,	Pl. N.	eī, or īī,	eac,	ea,
G.	ējus,				eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
D.	eī,				eīa, or īīa,		
Ac.	eum,	eam,	id,		eōa,	eāa,	ea,
Abl.	eō,	eā,	eō.		eīa, or īīa.		

2.—*Idēm, the same.*

Sing. N.	Idem,	eadem,	idem,	Pl. N.	eīdem, or īīdem,	eacodem,	eadem,
G.	ējusdem,				eōrundem,	eārundem,	eōrundem,
D.	eīdem,				eīsdem, or īīsdem,		
Ac.	eundem,	eandem,	idem,		eōsdem,	eāsdem,	eadem,
Abl.	eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem.		eīsdem, or īīsdem.		

3.—*ipse, he, self.*

Sing. N.	ipse,	ipsa,	ipsum,	Pl. N.	ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsa,
G.	ipsius,				ipsōrum,	ipsārum,	ipsōrum,
D.	ipsī,				ipsīa,		
Ac.	ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum,		ipsōa,	ipsāa,	ipsa,
Abl.	ipō,	ipsā,	ipō.		ipsīa.		

C. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

I.—*Demonstrative Pronoun for the First Person.**hic, this.*

Sing. N.	hic,	haec,	hōc,	Pl. N.	hī,	hae,	haec, these, &c.
G.	hūjus,				hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum,
D.	huīc,				hīa,		
Ac.	hunc,	hanc,	hōc,		hōa,	hāa,	haec,
Abl.	hōc,	hāc,	hōc.		hīa.		

II.—*Demonstrative Pronoun for the Second Person.**iste, that.*

Sing. N.	iste,	ista,	istud,	Pl. N.	istī,	istae,	ista,
G.	istius,				istōrum,	istārum,	istōrum,
D.	istī,				istīa,		
Ac.	istum,	istam,	istud,		istōa,	istāa,	ista,
Abl.	istō,	istā,	istō.		istīa.		

III.—*Demonstrative Pronoun for the Third Person.*

Sing. N.	ille,	illa,	illud,	Pl. N.	illī,	illae,	illa,
G.	illius,				illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
D.	illī,				illīa,		
Ac.	illum,	illam,	illud,		illōa,	illāa,	illa,
Abl.	illō,	illā,	illō.		illīa.		

D. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

	qui, <i>who</i> .					
Sing. N.	qui,	quae,	quod,	Pl. N. qui,	quae,	quae,
G.	ejus,			quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D.	cui,			quibus,		
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quod,	quos,	quas,	quas,
Abl.	quod,	qua,	quod.	quibus.		

General Relatives are :

<i>Substantive.</i>	quisquis,	quidquid, <i>whoever, whatever.</i>	
<i>Adjective.</i>	quique,	quaequae,	quodquod, <i>whosoever.</i>
	quicunque,	quaecunque,	quodcunque, <i>whichever.</i>

E. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

<i>Substantive.</i>	quis? <i>who?</i>	quid? <i>what?</i>	
<i>Adjective.</i>	qui?	quae?	quod? <i>which?</i>
<i>Subst. & Adj.</i>	uter?	utra?	utrum? <i>who, which of two?</i>

Sing. N.	quis?	quid?	<i>who? what?</i>
G.	cujus?	—	<i>whose?</i>
D.	cui?	—	<i>to, for whom?</i>
Ac.	quem?	quid?	<i>whom? what?</i>
Abl.	quod?		<i>from, with, by whom or what?</i>

REMARK.—The plural of the substantive interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the adjective interrogative pronoun coincide with the forms of the relative qui, quae, quod, *who, which*.

STRENGTHENED INTERROGATIVES.

<i>Substantive.</i>	quisnam? <i>who pray?</i>	quidnam? <i>what pray?</i>
<i>Adjective.</i>	quidnam?	quoniam? <i>which pray?</i>

F. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. *Substantive.* aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, } *somebody, some one or other.*
 quis, qua, quid, }
Adjective. aliqui, aliquae (or aliqua*), aliquod, } *some, any.*
 qui, quae (or qua*), quod, }
2. quidam, quaedam, quiddam (and quoddam), *a certain, certain one.*
3. quispiam, quaeplam, quidpiam (and quodpiam), *some one, some.*
4. quisquam, ——— quidquam, *any one.*
5. quisvis, quaevis, quidvis (and quodvis), } *any one you please.*
 quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (and quodlibet), }
6. quisque, quaeque, quidque and quodque, } *each one, every one.*
 unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquidque and unumquodque, }

The distinction between the substantive and adjective form is observed rigorously only in the neuter.

* In neuter plural, aliquae or aliqua, quae or qua.

Quisquam is used only as a substantive: the corresponding adjective is ullus, -a, -um, *any*. ullus, -a, -um, *any*, nullus, -a, -um, *no one, not one*. The corresponding substantive is nemo: see p. 80.

nōnullus, -a, -um, *some, many a*.

alius, -a, -ud, *another*; alter, -era, -erum, *the other, one (of two)*, neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither of two*.

alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, *the one or the other of the two*. Gen. alterutrius.
(or alter uter, altera utra, alterum utrum. Gen. alterius utrius.)

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each of two, either*. ambo, -ae, -o, *both*.

utervis, utravīs, utrumvis,

uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, } *whichever you please of the two*.

Correlative Pronominal Adjectives.

INTERROGATIVES.	DEMONSTRATIVES.	RELATIVES.
quis? <i>who?</i>	is, <i>that</i> ,	quī, <i>who</i> ,
quālis? <i>of what kind?</i>	tālis, <i>such (of that kind)</i> ,	quālis, <i>as (of which kind)</i> ,
quantus? <i>how much?</i>	tantus, <i>so much</i> ,	quantus, <i>as much</i> ,
quot? <i>how many?</i>	tot, <i>so many</i> .	quot, <i>as many</i> .

Correlative Pronominal Adverbs.

1. Pronominal adverbs of place.

ubi? <i>where?</i>	ibi, <i>there</i> ,	ubi, <i>where</i> .
quā? <i>where? which way?</i>	hic, hāc, <i>here, this way</i> ,	quā, <i>where, which way</i> .
	istic, istāc, <i>there, that way</i> ,	
	illic, illāc, <i>there, yonder way</i> .	
unde? <i>whence?</i>	inde, <i>thence</i> ,	unde, <i>whence</i> .
	hinc, <i>hence</i> .	
	istinc, <i>thence</i> .	
	illinc, <i>thence, from yonder</i> .	
quō? <i>whither?</i>	eō, <i>thither</i> ,	quō, <i>whither</i> .
	hūc, <i>hither</i> .	
	istūc, <i>thither</i> .	
	illūc, <i>thither, yonder</i> .	

2. Pronominal adverbs of time.

quandō? <i>when?</i>	tūc, <i>then</i> ,	quandō,
	tūc, <i>at that time</i> ,	quum.
	nunc, <i>now</i> .	
quotiēs? <i>how often?</i>	totiēs, <i>so often</i> .	quotiēs, <i>as often as</i> .

3. Pronominal adverbs of manner.

quōmodo? <i>how?</i>	ita, sic, <i>so, thus</i> ,	ut, utī, <i>as</i> .
quam? <i>how much?</i>	tam, <i>so much</i> ,	quam, <i>as</i> .

The relative pronouns become indefinite by prefixing ali:-

aliquantus, *somewhat great*; aliquot, *several, some*; alicubi, *somewhere*; alicunde, *from somewhere*; aliquandō, *at some time*.

The simple relatives become general by doubling themselves, or by suffixing -cunque:—
 quantuscunque, *however great*; qualiscunque, *of whatever kind*; quotquot, *however many*.
 ubicunque, *wheresoever*; quandocunque, *whenever*; quotiescunque, *however often*.
 utut, *in whatever way*; utencunque, *howsoever*; quamquam, *however, although*.

Many of the relatives are further compounded with -vis or -libet:—

quantuslibet, *as great as you please*; ubivis, *where you will*; quamvis, *as you please, though*.

THE VERB.

CONJUGATION.

The Inflection given to the verbal stem expresses:—

1. Person and Number;
2. Voice—Active or Passive;
3. Tense—Present, Imperfect, Future,
Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect;
4. Mood—Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.

These forms belong to the Finite Verb. Outside of the Finite Verb, and akin to the noun, are the verbal forms called:—

Infinitive, Supine, Participle, Gerund.

The Inflection of the Verb (Conjugation) is effected by means of—

1. Personal endings,
2. Connecting vowels,
3. Tense-signs.

e. g., in amā-b-i-t, *he will love*, t is the personal ending, i the connecting vowel, and b the tense-sign. M is the characteristic letter of the First Person (but often lost), S of the Second Person (from T, which reappears in the Plural), T of the Third.

Several parts of the verb are formed with the verb *esse*, *to be*.

The Verb esse, to be.

INDICATIVE.	<i>Present.</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Sing. 1. sum, <i>I am</i> , 2. es, <i>thou art</i> , 3. est, <i>he, she, it is</i> .	sim, <i>I be</i> , sis, <i>thou be</i> , sit, <i>he, she, it be</i> .	
Pl. 1. sumus, <i>we are</i> , 2. estis, <i>you are</i> , 3. sunt, <i>they are</i> .	simus, <i>we be</i> , sitis, <i>you be</i> , sint, <i>they be</i> .	

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

Sing. 1. eram, <i>I was,</i>	essem, <i>I were (forem),</i>
2. erās, <i>thou wast,</i>	essēs, <i>thou wert (forēs),</i>
3. erat, <i>he was.</i>	esset, <i>he were (foret).</i>
Pl. 1. erāmus, <i>we were,</i>	essēmus, <i>we were,</i>
2. erātis, <i>you were,</i>	essētis, <i>you were,</i>
3. erant, <i>they were.</i>	essent, <i>they were (forent)</i>

Futura.

Sing. 1. erō, <i>I shall be,</i>
2. eris, <i>thou wilt be,</i>
3. erit, <i>he will be.</i>
Pl. 1. erimus, <i>we shall be,</i>
2. eritis, <i>you will be,</i>
3. erunt, <i>they will be.</i>

Perfect.

Sing. 1. fui, <i>I have been, I was,</i>	fuerim, <i>I have, may have, been,</i>
2. fuisti, <i>thou hast been, thou wast,</i>	fueris, <i>thou have, mayst have, been,</i>
3. fuit, <i>he has been, he was.</i>	fuerit, <i>he have, may have, been.</i>
Pl. 1. fuimus, <i>we have been, we were,</i>	fuerimus, <i>we have, may have, been,</i>
2. fuistis, <i>you have been, you were,</i>	fueritis, <i>you have, may have, been,</i>
3. fuerunt, <i>they have been, they were.</i>	fuerint, <i>they have, may have, been.</i>

Pluperfect.

Sing. 1. fueram, <i>I had been,</i>	fuissem, <i>I had, might have, been,</i>
2. fuerās, <i>thou hadst been,</i>	fuisēs, <i>thou hadst, mightst have, been,</i>
3. fuerat, <i>he had been.</i>	fuisset, <i>he had, might have, been.</i>
Pl. 1. fuerāmus, <i>we had been,</i>	fuissemus, <i>we had, might have, been,</i>
2. fuerātis, <i>you had been,</i>	fuissetis, <i>you had, might have, been,</i>
3. fuerant, <i>they had been.</i>	fuisSENT, <i>they had, might have, been.</i>

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. fuerō, <i>I shall have been,</i>
2. fueris, <i>thou wilt have been,</i>
3. fuerit, <i>he shall have been.</i>
Pl. 1. fuerimus, <i>we shall have been,</i>
2. fueritis, <i>you will have been,</i>
3. fuerint, <i>they will have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE.

Sing. 1. —,	Pres. esse, <i>to be,</i>
2. es, <i>be thou, estō, thou shalt be,</i>	Perf. fuisse, <i>to have been,</i>
3. est, <i>estō, he shall be.</i>	Fut. futurum (-am, -um), esse (fore), <i>to be about to be.</i>
Pl. 1. —,	
2. estē, <i>be ye, estōte, you shall be,</i>	
3. sunt, <i>suntō, they shall be.</i>	

PARTICIPLE.

Fut. futurus, -a, -um, *about to be.*

*Compounds of sum, I am.*ab-sum, *I am away, absent.**Perf.* abful, āful.dō-sum, *I am wanting.*ad-sum, *I am present.**Perf.* afful.in-sum, *I am in.*inter-sum, *I am between.*ob-sum, *I am against, I hurt.**Perf.* obful or offul.prō-sum, *I am for, I profit.*prae-sum, *I am over, I superintend.*sub-sum, *I am under.*super-sum, *I am, or remain, over.*

Only absum and praesum form present participles, viz. : absens, *absent*, and praesens, *present*.

In the forms of prōsum, prōd is used before vowels.

PRESENT,	<i>Ind.</i>	prō-sum, prōd-es, prōd-est, prō-sumus, prōd-estis, prō-sunt,
	<i>Subj.</i>	prō-sim, prō-sis, prō-sit, etc.
	<i>Inf.</i>	prōd-esse,
IMPERFECT,	<i>Ind.</i>	prōd-eram,
		<i>Subj.</i> prōd-essem,
FUTURE,	"	prōd-ero,
PERFECT,	"	prō-fui,
		" prō-fuerim,
PLUPERFECT,	"	prō-fueram,
		" prō-fuissem,
FUT. PERF.,	"	prō-fuerō.

Possum, *I am able, I can.*

Possum is compounded of pot and sum. T becomes s before s.

INDICATIVE.*Present.***SUBJUNCTIVE.**

- Sing. 1. pos-sum, *I am able, can,*
 2. pot-es, *thou art able, canst,*
 3. pot-est, *he is able, can.*

- pos-sim, *I be able,*
 pos-sis, *thou be able,*
 pos-sit, *he be able.*

- Pl. 1. pos-sumus, *we are able, can,*
 2. pot-estis, *you are able, can,*
 3. pos-sunt, *they are able, can.*

- pos-simus, *we be able,*
 pos-sitis, *you be able,*
 pos-sint, *they be able.*

Imperfect.

- Sing. 1. pot-eram, *I was able, could,*
 2. pot-erās, *thou wast able, couldst,*
 3. pot-erat, *he was able, could.*

- pos-sem, *I were, might be, able,*
 pos-sēs, *thou wert, mightst be, able,*
 pos-set, *he were, might be, able.*

- Pl. 1. pot-erāmus, *we were able, could,*
 2. pot-erātis, *you were able, could,*
 3. pot-erant, *they were able, could.*

- pos-sēmus, *we were, might be, able,*
 pos-sētis, *you were, might be, able,*
 pos-sent, *they were, might be, able.*

Future.

- Sing. 1. pot-erō, *I shall be able,*
 2. pot-eris, *thou wilt be able,*
 3. pot-erit, *he will be able.*

- Pl. 1. pot-erimus, *we shall be able,*
 2. pot-eritis, *you will be able,*
 3. pot-erunt, *they will be able.*

INDICATIVE.	<i>Perfect.</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Sing. 1. pot-uf, <i>I have been able,</i> 2. pot-ulstī, <i>thou hast been able,</i> 3. pot-ult, <i>he has been able.</i> Pl. 1. pot-uimus, <i>we have been able,</i> 2. pot-ulistis, <i>you have been able,</i> 3. pot-uērunt, <i>they have been able.</i>	pot-uērīm, <i>I have, may have, been able,</i> pot-uēris, <i>thou have, mayest have, been able,</i> pot-uērit, <i>he have, may have, been able.</i> pot-uērīmus, <i>we have, may have, been able,</i> pot-uēritis, <i>you have, may have, been able,</i> pot-uērint, <i>they have, may have, been able.</i>	
<i>Pluperfect.</i>		
Sing. 1. pot-ueram, <i>I had been able,</i> 2. pot-uērās, <i>thou hadst been able,</i> 3. pot-uerat, <i>he had been able.</i> Pl. 1. pot-uērāmus, <i>we had been able,</i> 2. pot-uērātis, <i>you had been able,</i> 3. pot-uērāt, <i>they had been able.</i>	pot-ulissem, <i>I had, might have, been able,</i> pot-ulissēs, <i>thou hadst, mightst have, been able,</i> pot-ulisset, <i>he had, might have, been able.</i> pot-ulissēmus, <i>we had, might have, been able,</i> pot-ulissētis, <i>you had, might have, been able,</i> pot-ulissent, <i>they had, might have, been able.</i>	
<i>Future Perfect.</i>		
Sing. 1. pot-uērō, <i>I shall have been able,</i> 2. pot-uēris, <i>thou wilt have been able,</i> 3. pot-uērit, <i>he will have been able.</i> Pl. 1. pot-uērīmus, <i>we shall have been able,</i> 2. pot-uērītis, <i>you will have been able,</i> 3. pot-uērint, <i>they will have been able.</i>		

SYSTEMS OF CONJUGATION.

There are two Systems of Conjugation, distinguished by the stem-characteristic, viz., the Vowel-Conjugation, and the Consonant Conjugation.

Vowel verbal stems end in ā, ē, ī (First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations).

Consonant verbal stems end in one of the consonants (Third Conjugation).

Stems in U follow the Consonant-Conjugation.

The Stem-Forms.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
I. amō,	amār-e,	amā-vī,	amā-tum,	<i>to love.</i>
II. dēle-ō, mone-ō,	dēlē-re, monē-re,	dēlē-vī, mon-vī,	dēlē-tum, mon-i-tum,	<i>to blot out.</i> <i>to remind.</i>
III. em-ō, statu-ō, scrib-ō,	em-e re, statu-e-re, scrib-e-re,	ēm-ī, statū-ī, scrip-sī,	em-tum, statū-tum, scrip-tum,	<i>to buy.</i> <i>to settle.</i> <i>to write.</i>
IV. audi-ō,	audī-re,	audī-vī,	audī-tum,	<i>to hear.</i>

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Active.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

<p>Sing. 1. amā, <i>I am loving, do love, love,</i> 2. amā-s, <i>thou art loving, dost love, lovest,</i> 3. ama-t, <i>he is loving, does love, loves.</i></p>	<p>ame-m, <i>I be loving, I may love,</i> amē-s, <i>thou be loving, thou mayest love,</i> ame-t, <i>he be loving, he may love.</i></p>
<p>Pl. 1. amā-mus, <i>we are loving, do love, love,</i> 2. amā-tis, <i>you are loving, do love, love,</i> 3. ama-nt, <i>they are loving, do love, love.</i></p>	<p>amē-mus, <i>we be loving, we may love,</i> amē-tis, <i>you be loving, you may love,</i> ame-nt, <i>they be loving, they may love.</i></p>

Imperfect.

<p>Sing. 1. amā-ba-m, <i>I was loving, I loved,</i> 2. amā-bā-s, <i>thou wast loving, thou lovedst,</i> 3. amā-ba-t, <i>he was loving, he loved.</i></p>	<p>amā-re-m, <i>I were loving, I might love,</i> amā-rē-s, <i>thou wert loving, thou mightest love.</i> amā-re-t, <i>he were loving, he might love.</i></p>
<p>Pl. 1. amā-bā-mus, <i>we were loving, we loved,</i> 2. amā-bā-tis, <i>you were loving, you loved,</i> 3. amā-ba-nt, <i>they were loving, they loved.</i></p>	<p>amā-rē-mus, <i>we were loving, we might love,</i> amā-rē-tis, <i>you were loving, you might love,</i> amā-re-nt, <i>they were loving, they might love.</i></p>

Future.

<p>Sing. 1. amā-bō, <i>I shall be loving, I shall love,</i> 2. amā-bi-s, <i>thou wilt be loving, thou wilt love,</i> 3. amā-bi-t, <i>he will be loving, he will love.</i></p>	
<p>Pl. 1. amā-bi-mus, <i>we shall be loving, we shall love,</i> 2. amā-bi-tis, <i>you will be loving, you will love,</i> 3. amā-bu-nt, <i>they will be loving, they will love.</i></p>	

IMPERATIVE.

<p>Sing. 1. — 2. amā, <i>love thou,</i> 3. —</p>	<p>amā-tō, <i>thou shalt love,</i> amā-tō, <i>he shall love.</i></p>
<p>Pl. 1. — 2. amā-te, <i>love ye,</i> 3. —</p>	<p>amā-tōte, <i>ye shall love,</i> ama-ntō, <i>they shall love.</i></p>

PARTICIPLE.

Present: N. amā-n-s, G. ama-nt is, *loving.*

Future: amā-tūrus, -a, -um, *being about to love.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Active.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

Sing. 1. amā-vī, <i>I have loved, I did love,</i>	amā-ve-rim, <i>I have, may have, loved,</i>
2. amā-vī-stī, <i>thou hast loved, thou didst love,</i>	amā-ve-ria, <i>thou have, mayst have, loved,</i>
3. amā-vī-t, <i>he has loved, he did love.</i>	amā-ve-rit, <i>he have, may have, loved.</i>
Pl. 1. amā-vī-mus, <i>we have loved, we did love,</i>	amā-ve-rīmus, <i>we have, may have, loved,</i>
2. amā-vī-stis, <i>you have loved, you did love,</i>	amā-ve-rītis, <i>you have, may have, loved,</i>
3. amā-vē-runt, <i>they have loved, they did love.</i>	amā-ve-rint, <i>they have, may have, loved.</i>

Pluperfect.

Sing. 1. amā-ve-ram, <i>I had loved,</i>	amā-vī-ssēm, <i>I had, might have, loved,</i>
2. amā-ve-rās, <i>thou hadst loved,</i>	amā-vī-ssēs, <i>thou hadst, mightest have, loved.</i>
3. amā-ve-rat, <i>he had loved.</i>	amā-vī-ssēt, <i>he had, might have, loved.</i>
Pl. 1. amā-ve-rāmus, <i>we had loved,</i>	amā-vī-ssēmus, <i>we had, might have, loved,</i>
2. amā-ve-rātis, <i>you had loved,</i>	amā-vī-ssētis, <i>you had, might have, loved,</i>
3. amā-ve-rant, <i>they had loved.</i>	amā-vī-ssent, <i>they had, might have, loved.</i>

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. amā-ve-rō, <i>I shall have loved,</i>
2. amā-ve-ria, <i>thou wilt have loved,</i>
3. amā-ve-rit, <i>he will have loved.</i>
Pl. 1. amā-ve-rīmus, <i>we shall have loved,</i>
2. amā-ve-rītis, <i>you will have loved,</i>
3. amā-ve-rint, <i>they will have loved.</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres. amā-re, *to love.**Perf.* amā-vī-sse, *to have loved.**Fut.* amā-tūrum, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to love.**Gerund.**Supine.*N. [amāre], *loving.*G. amandī, *of loving.*D. amandō, *to loving.*Ac. [amare], (ad) amandum, *loving, to love.*Abl. amandō, *by loving.*1. amā-tum, *to love.*2. amā-tū, *to love, in the loving.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Passive.

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present.

- Sing. 1. amō-r, *I am loved,*
 2. amā-ria, *thou art loved,*
 3. amā-tur, *he is loved.*

- amē-r, *I be, may be, loved,*
 amā-ria, *thou be, mayest be, loved,*
 amā-tur, *he be, may be, loved,*

- Pl. 1. amā-mur, *we are loved,*
 2. amā-mini, *you are loved,*
 3. ama-ntur, *they are loved.*

- amē-mur, *we be, may be, loved,*
 amē-mini, *you be, may be, loved,*
 ame-ntur, *they be, may be, loved.*

Imperfect.

- Sing. 1. amā-be-r, *I was loved,*
 2. amā-bā-ria, *thou wast loved,*
 3. amā-bā-tur, *he was loved.*

- amā-re-r, *I were, might be, loved,*
 amā-rē-ria, *thou wert, mightest be, loved,*
 amā-rē-tur, *he were, might be, loved.*

- Pl. 1. amā-bā-mur, *we were loved,*
 2. amā-bā-mini, *you were loved,*
 3. amā-ba-ntur, *they were loved.*

- amā-rē-mur, *we were, might be, loved,*
 amā-rē-mini, *you were, might be, loved,*
 amā-re-ntur, *they were, might be, loved.*

Future.

- Sing. 1. amā-bo-r, *I shall be loved,*
 2. amā-be-ria, *thou wilt be loved,*
 3. amā-bi-tur, *he will be loved.*

- Pl. 1. amā-bi-mur, *we shall be loved,*
 2. amā-bi-mini, *you will be loved,*
 3. amā-bu-ntur, *they will be loved.*

Imperative.

Sing. 1. —

2. amā-re, *be thou loved.*
 3.

- amā-tor, *thou shalt be loved,*
 amā-tor, *he shall be loved.*

Pl. 1. —

2. amā-mini, *be ye loved.*
 3.

- ama-ntor, *they shall be loved.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Passive.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

Sing. 1. amātus, -a, -um, sum,
I have been loved, etc.

amātus, -a, -um, sim,
I have, may have, been loved, etc.

Pl. 1. amāti, -ae, -a, sumus,
We have been loved.

amāti, -ae, -a, simus,
We have, may have, been loved, etc.

Pluperfect.

Sing. 1. amātus, -a, -um, eram,
I had been loved, etc.

amātus, -a, -um, essem,
I had, might have, been loved, etc.

Pl. 1. amāti, -ae, -a, erāmus,
We had been loved.

amāti, -ae, -a, essemus,
We had, might have, been loved.

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. amātus, -a, -um, erō, *I shall have been loved.*

Pl. 1. amāti, -ae, -a, erimus, *we shall have been loved.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. amā-rī, *to be loved.*

Perf. amā-tum, -am, -um, esse, *to have been loved.*

Fut. amātum, Irī, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLE.

Perfect: amā-tus, -a, -um, *loved.*

Gerund: amā-ndus -a, -um, *(one) to be loved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*Sing. 1. dēle-ō, *I destroy.*dēle-a-m, *I be destroying, I may destroy.*

2. dēlē-a,

dēle-ā-a,

3. dēle-t.

dēle-a-t.

Pl. 1. dēlē-mus,

dēle-ā-mus,

2. dēlē-tis,

dēle-ā-tis,

3. dēle-nt.

dēle-a-nt.

*Imperfect.*Sing. 1. dēlē-ba-m, *I was destroying.*dēlē-re-m, *I were destroying, I might destroy.*

2. dēlē-bā-a,

dēlē-rē-a,

3. dēlē-ba-t.

dēlē-re-t.

Pl. 1. dēlē-bā-mus,

dēlē-rē-mus,

2. dēlē-bā-tis,

dēlē-rē-tis,

3. dēlē-ba-nt.

dēlē-re-nt.

*Future.*Sing. 1. dēlē-bō, *I shall destroy,*2. dēlē-bi-s, *thou wilt destroy,*3. dēlē-bi-t, *he will destroy.*Pl. 1. dēlē-bi-mus, *we shall destroy,*2. dēlē-bi-tis, *you will destroy,*3. dēlē-bu-nt, *they will destroy.*

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. 1. —

2. dēlē, *destroy thou,* dēlē-tō, *thou shalt destroy,*
dēlē-tō, *he shall destroy.*

Pl. 1. —

2. dēlē-te, *destroy ye,* dēlē-tōte, *ye shall destroy,*
dēle-ntō, *they shall destroy.*

PARTICIPLE.

Present: N. dēlē-n-a, G. dele-nt-is, *destroying.**Future:* dēlē-tūrus, -a, -um, *about to destroy.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

Sing. 1. dēlē-vī, <i>I have destroyed, I destroyed.</i>	dēlē-ve-rim, <i>I have, may have, destroyed.</i>
2. dēlē-vī-stī,	dēlē-ve-ris,
3. dēlē-vī-t.	dēlē-ve-rit.
Pl. 1. dēlē-vī-mus,	dēlē-ve-rīmus,
2. dēlē-vī-stis,	dēlē-ve-rītis,
3. dēlē-vē-runt.	dēlē-ve-rint.

Pluperfect.

Sing. 1. dēlē-ve-ram, <i>I had destroyed.</i>	dēlē-vī-ssem, <i>I had, might have, destroyed.</i>
2. dēlē-ve-rās,	dēlē-vī-ssēs,
3. dēlē-ve-rat.	dēlē-vī-ssēt.
Pl. 1. dēlē-ve-rāmus,	dēlē-vī-ssēmus,
2. dēlē-ve-rātis,	dēlē-vī-ssētis,
3. dēlē-ve-rant.	dēlē-vī-ssent.

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. dēlē-ve-rē, <i>I shall have destroyed,</i>	
2. dēlē-ve-ris, <i>thou wilt have destroyed,</i>	
3. dēlē-ve-rit, <i>he will have destroyed.</i>	
Pl. 1. dēlē-ve-rīmus, <i>we shall have destroyed,</i>	
2. dēlē-ve-rītis, <i>you will have destroyed,</i>	
3. dēlē-ve-rint, <i>they will have destroyed.</i>	

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	dēlē-re, <i>to destroy.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	dēlē-vī-ssē, <i>to have destroyed.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	dēlē-tū-rum, -am, -um, esse, <i>to be about to destroy.</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

N. [dēlēre], <i>destroying, to destroy.</i>	
G. dēlēndī, <i>of destroying.</i>	
D. dēlēndō, <i>to, for destroying.</i>	
Ac. [dēlēre] (ad) dēlēndum, <i>destroying, to destroy.</i>	1. dēlē-tum, <i>to destroy.</i>
Abl. dēlēndō, <i>by destroying.</i>	2. dēlē-tū, <i>to destroy, in the destroying.</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Passive.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. 1. dēle-o-r, <i>I am destroyed.</i>	dēle-a-r, <i>I be, may be, destroyed.</i>
2. dēlē-riā,	dēle-ā-riā,
3. dēlē-tur.	dēle-ā-tur.
Pl. 1. dēlē-mur,	dēle-ā-mur,
2. dēlē-mini,	dēle-ā-mini,
3. dēle-ntur.	dēle-a-ntur.

Imperfect.

Sing. 1. dēlē-bā-r, <i>I was destroyed.</i>	dēlē-re-r, <i>I were destroyed.</i>
2. dēlē-bā-riā,	dēlē-rē-riā,
3. dēlē-bā-tur.	dēlē-rē-tur.
Pl. 1. dēlē-bā-mur,	dēlē-rē-mur,
2. dēlē-bā-mini,	dēlē-rē-mini,
3. dēlē-ba-ntur.	dēlē-re-ntur.

Future.

Sing. 1. dēlē-bo-r, <i>I shall be destroyed,</i>
2. dēlē-be-riā, <i>thou wilt be destroyed,</i>
3. dēlē-bi-tur, <i>he will be destroyed.</i>
Pl. 1. dēlē-bi-mur, <i>we shall be destroyed,</i>
2. dēlē-bi-mini, <i>you will be destroyed,</i>
3. dēlē-bu-ntur, <i>they will be destroyed.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. 1. —	
2. dēlē-re, <i>be thou destroyed,</i>	dēlē-tor, <i>thou shalt be destroyed.</i>
3.	dēlē-tor, <i>he shall be destroyed.</i>
Pl. 1. —	
2. dēlē-mini, <i>be ye destroyed,</i>	
3.	dēle-ntor, <i>they shall be destroyed.</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Passive.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

Sing. 1. dēlētus, -a, -um, sum,

dēlētus, -a, -um, sim,

*I have been destroyed, was
destroyed.**I have, may have, been destroyed.*

Pl. 1. dēlētī, -ae, -a, sumus,

dēlētī, -ae, -a, simus,

*we have been destroyed, were
destroyed.**we have, may have, been destroyed.**Pluperfect.*

Sing. 1. dēlētus, -a, -um, eram,

dēlētus, -a, -um, essem,

*I had been destroyed.**I had, might have, been destroyed.*

Pl. 1. dēlētī, -ae, -a, erāmus,

dēlētī, -ae, -a, essemus,

*we had been destroyed.**we had, might have, been destroyed.**Future Perfect.*Sing. 1. dēlētus, -a, -um, erō, *I shall have been destroyed.*Pl. 1. dēlētī, -ae, -a, erimus, *we shall have been destroyed.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. dēlē-rī, *to be destroyed.**Perf.* dēlē-tum, -am, -um, esse, *to have been destroyed.**Fut.* dēlē-tum irī, *to be about to be destroyed.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect: dēlē-tus, -a, -um, *destroyed.**Gerundive:* dēlē-ndus, -a, -um, *one to be destroyed.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Like *dêlere*, to *destroy*, are conjugated only, *nêre*, to *spin*, *flêre*, to *weep*, and the compounds of *-plêre*, *fill*, and *olêre* (*-olescere*), *grow*.

All other verbs of the Second Conjugation retain the characteristic E in the forms of the Present Stem, and drop it in the rest of the verbal forms.

In the Perfect, the ending *vi* becomes *ui*.

In the Supine, the connecting vowel *I* is used.

INDICATIVE.		Active.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		Present.		
Sing. 1.	mone-ǵ,	mone-a-m,		
	<i>I am reminding, do remind, remind.</i>	<i>I be reminding, I may remind.</i>		
		Imperfect.		
Sing. 1.	monê-ba-m,	monê-re-m,		
	<i>I was reminding, I reminded.</i>	<i>I were reminding, might remind.</i>		
		Future.		
Sing. 1.	monê-bǵ,			
	<i>I shall be reminding, shall remind.</i>			
IMPERATIVE.	Sing. 2. monê, remind thou,	monê-tǵ, thou shalt remind.		
INFINITIVE.	Present: monê-re, to remind.			
PARTICIPLE.	Present: monê-n-a, mone-nt-la, reminding.			
	Future: mon-l-tûrus, about to remind.			
		Perfect.		
Sing. 1.	mon-ui, I have reminded, did remind,	mon-ue-rim I have, may have, reminded,		
2.	mon-ui-sti, thou hast reminded, didst remind,	mon-ue-ri-s, thou hast, mayst have, reminded,		
3.	mon-ui-t, he has reminded, did remind.	mon-ue-rit, he have, may have, reminded,		
Pl. 1.	mon-ui-mus, we have reminded, did remind,	mon-ue-rîmus, we have, may have, reminded.		
2.	mon-ui-stis, you have reminded, did remind,	mon-ue-rîtis, you have, may have, reminded.		
3.	mon-ue-runt, they have reminded, did remind.	mon-ue-rint, they have, may have, reminded,		
		Pluperfect.		
Sing. 1.	mon-ue-ram, I had reminded, etc., etc., etc.	mon-u-issem, I had, might have, reminded, etc., etc., etc.		
		Future Perfect.		
Sing. 1.	mon-ue-rǵ, I shall have reminded.			
INFINITIVE.	Perfect: mon-ui-ase, to have reminded.			
SUPINE.	1. mon-l-tum, to remind. 2. mon-l-tǵ, to remind, in the reminding.			
GERUND.	mone-ndi, of reminding, etc.			

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Five verbs of the Second Conjugation form their Supine without a connecting vowel, viz.:

doceō,	docēre,	docuī,	doctum,	<i>to teach.</i>
teneo,	tenēre,	tenuī,	(tentum),	<i>to hold.</i>
cōnseo,	cōnsēre,	cōnsuī,	cōnsum,	<i>to think.</i>
misceo,	miscēre,	miscuī,	mixtum (mistum),	<i>to mix.</i>
torreo,	torrēre,	torruī,	tostum,	<i>to parch.</i>

Passive.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. 1. moneo-r, *I am reminded, etc.*

monea-r, *I be, may be, reminded, etc.*

Imperfect.

Sing. 1. monēba-r, *I was reminded.*

monēre-r, *I might be reminded.*

Future.

Sing. 1. monēbo-r, *I shall be reminded.*

IMPERATIVE. Sing. monē-re, *be thou reminded,* monē-tor, *thou shalt be reminded.*

INFINITIVE. *Present.* monē-rī, *to be reminded.*

PARTICIPLE. *Perfect.* mon-i-tus, -a, -um, *reminded.*

Gerundive. mone-ndus, -a, -um, *to be reminded.*

Perfect.

Sing. 1. monitus, -a, -um, sum,
I have been, was, reminded.

monitus, -a, -um, sin,
I have, may have, been reminded.

Pluperfect.

Sing. 1. monitus, -a, -um, eram,
I had been reminded.

monitus, -a, -um, essem,
I had, should have, been reminded.

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. monitus, -a, -um, erū, *I shall have been reminded.*

INFINITIVE. *Perfect:* monitum, -am, -um, esse, *to have been reminded.*

Future: monitum iri, *to be about to be reminded.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Active.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present

- Sing. 1. em-a, *I buy.*
 2. em-i-a,
 3. em-i-t.

em-a-m, *I be buying, I may buy.*
 em-i-a,
 em-a-t.

- Pl. 1. em-i-mus,
 2. em-i-tia,
 3. em-u-nt.

em-i-mus,
 em-i-tia,
 em-a-nt.

Imperfect

- Sing. 1. em-ē-ba-m, *I was buying.*
 2. em-ē-bā-s,
 3. em-ē-ba-t.

em-e-re-m, *I were buying, I might buy.*
 em-e-rē-s,
 em-e-re-t.

- Pl. 1. em-ē-bā-mus,
 2. em-ē-bā-tia,
 3. em-ē-ba-nt.

em-e-rē-mus,
 em-e-rē-tia,
 em-e-re-nt.

Future

- Sing. 1. em-a-m, *I shall be buying, I shall buy,*
 2. em-ē-s, *thou wilt be buying, thou wilt buy,*
 3. em-e-t, *he will be buying, he will buy.*

- Pl. 1. em-ē-mus, *we shall be buying, we shall buy,*
 2. em-ē-tia, *you will be buying, you will buy,*
 3. em-e-nt, *they will be buying, they will buy.*

IMPERATIVE.

- Sing. 1. —

2. em-e, *buy thou,* em-i-tō, *thou shalt buy,*
 3. em-i-tō, *he shall buy.*

- Pl. 1. —

2. em-i-te, *buy ye,* em-i-tōte, *ye shall buy,*
 3. em-u-ntō, *they shall buy.*

PARTICIPLE.

Present : N. em-ē-n-a, G. em-e-nt-is, *buying.*

Future : em-tūrus, -a, -um, *about to buy.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Active.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Perfect.</i>	
Sing. 1. Em-I, <i>I have bought, I bought.</i>	Em-e-rim, <i>I have, may have, bought.</i>
2. Em-I-sti,	Em-e-ria,
3. Em-I-t.	Em-e-rit.
Pl. 1. Em-I-mus,	Em-e-rĭmus,
2. Em-I-stis,	Em-e-rĭtis,
3. Em-I-runt.	Em-e-rint.
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
Sing. 1. Em-e-ram, <i>I had bought.</i>	Em-I-ssēm, <i>I had, might have, bought.</i>
2. Em-e-rās,	Em-I-ssēs,
3. Em-e-rat.	Em-I-ssēt.
Pl. 1. Em-e-rāmus,	Em-I-ssēmus,
2. Em-e-rātis,	Em-I-ssētis,
3. Em-e-rant.	Em-I-ssent.
<i>Future Perfect.</i>	
Sing. 1. Em-e-ro, <i>I shall have bought,</i>	
2. Em-e-ria, <i>thou wilt have bought,</i>	
3. Em-e-rit, <i>he will have bought.</i>	
Pl. 1. Em-e-rĭmus, <i>we shall have bought,</i>	
2. Em-e-rĭtis, <i>you will have bought,</i>	
3. Em-e-rint, <i>they will have bought.</i>	

INFINITIVE.

Pres. em-e-re, *to buy.*

Perf. Em-I-sse, *to have bought.*

Fut. em-tūrum, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to buy.*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

M. [emere], *to buy, buying.*

G. emendī, *of buying.*

D. emendō, *to, for buying.*

Ac. [emere] (ad) emendum, *to buy.*

Abl. emendō, *by buying.*

1. em-tum, *to buy.*

2. em-tū, *to buy, in the buying.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Passive.

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present.*Sing. 1. em-o-r, *I am bought.*em-a-r, *I be, may be, bought.*

2. em-e-ri,

em-ā-ri,

3. em-i-tur.

em-ā-tur.

Pl. 1. em-i-mur,

em-ā-mur,

2. em-i-minī,

em-ā-minī,

3. em-u-ntur.

em-a-ntur.

*Imperfect.*Sing. 1. em-ē-ba-r, *I was bought.*em-e-re-r, *I were, might be, bought.*

2. em-ē-bā-ri,

em-e-rē-ri,

3. em-ē-bā-tur.

em-e-rē-tur.

Pl. 1. em-ē-bā-mur,

em-e-rē-mur,

2. em-ē-bā-minī,

em-e-rē-minī,

3. em-ē-ba-ntur.

em-e-re-ntur.

*Future.*Sing. 1. em-a-r, *I shall be bought,*2. em-ē-ri, *thou wilt be bought,*3. em-ē-tur, *he will be bought.*Pl. 1. em-ē-mur, *we shall be bought,*2. em-ē-minī, *you will be bought,*3. em-e-ntur, *they will be bought.*

IMPERATIVE

Sing. 1.

2. em-ere, *be thou bought,*em-i-tor, *thou shalt be bought*

3.

em-i-tor, *he shall be bought.*

Pl. 1.

2. em-i-minī, *be ye bought.*

3.

em-u-ntor, *they shall be bought.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Passive.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

Sing. 1. emtus, -a, -um, sum,

I have been bought, was bought.

emtus, -a, -um, sim,

I have, may have, been bought.

Pl. 1. emti, -ae, -a, sumus,

we have been bought, were bought.

emti, -ae, -a, simus,

*we have, may have, been bought.**Pluperfect.*

Sing. 1. emtus, -a, -um, eram,

I had been bought.

emtus, -a, -um, essem,

I had, might have, been bought.

Pl. 1. emti, -ae, -a, erāmus,

we had been bought.

emti, -ae, -a, essēmus,

*we had, might have, been bought.**Future Perfect.*Sing. 1. emtus, -a, -um, erō, *I shall have been bought.*Pl. 1. emti, -ae, -a, erimus, *we shall have been bought.*

INFINITIVE.

res. em-i, *to be bought.*Perf. emtum, -am, -um, esse, *to have been bought.*Fut. em-tum iri, *to be about to be bought.*

PARTICIPLE.

Perfect: emtus, -a, -um, *bought.**Gerundive:* em-e-ndus, -a, -um, *to be bought.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The stems in *i* follow in several forms the Third Conjugation, and take the same connecting vowels.

		<i>Active.</i>	
		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		<i>Present.</i>	
Sing.	1. audi-ŏ, <i>I hear.</i>	audi-a-m, <i>I be hearing, I may hear.</i>	
	2. audi-s,	audi-ŏ-s,	
	3. audi-t.	audi-a-t.	
Pl.	1. audi-mus,	audi-ŏ-mus,	
	2. audi-tis,	audi-ŏ-tis,	
	3. audi-u-nt.	audi-a-nt.	
		<i>Imperfect.</i>	
Sing.	1. audi-ŏ-ba-m, <i>I was hearing.</i>	audi-re-m, <i>I were hearing, I might hear.</i>	
	2. audi-ŏ-bā-s,	audi-rō-s,	
	3. audi-ŏ-ba-t.	audi-re-t.	
Pl.	1. audi-ŏ-bā-mus,	audi-rō-mus,	
	2. audi-ŏ-bā-tis,	audi-rō-tis,	
	3. audi-ŏ-ba-nt.	audi-re-nt.	
		<i>Future.</i>	
Sing.	1. audi-a-m, <i>I shall hear,</i>		
	2. audi-ŏ-s, <i>thou wilt hear,</i>		
	3. audi-e-t, <i>he will hear.</i>		
Pl.	1. audi-ŏ-mus, <i>we shall hear,</i>		
	2. audi-ŏ-tis, <i>ye will hear,</i>		
	3. audi-e-nt, <i>they will hear.</i>		

IMPERATIVE.

Sing.	1. —		
	2. audi, <i>hear thou,</i>	audi-tŏ, <i>thou shalt hear,</i>	
	3. —	audi-tŏ, <i>he shall hear.</i>	
Pl.	1. —		
	2. audi-te, <i>hear ye,</i>	audi-tōte, <i>ye shall hear.</i>	
	3. —	audi-u-ntŏ, <i>they shall hear.</i>	

PARTICIPLE.

Present: N. audi-ŏ-n-s, G. audi-e-nt-is, *hearing.*

Future: audi-tŭ-rus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Active.

INDICATIVE.	Perfect.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Sing. 1. audi-vi, <i>I have heard, I heard.</i>	audi-ve-rim, <i>I have, may have, heard.</i>	
2. audi-vi-sti,	audi-ve-ris,	
3. audi-vi-t.	audi-ve-rit.	
Pl. 1. audi-vi-mus,	audi-ve-rîmus,	
2. audi-vi-stis,	audi-ve-rîtis,	
3. audi-vē-runt.	audi-ve-rint.	

Pluperfect.

Sing. 1. audi-ve-ram, <i>I had heard.</i>	audi-vi-ssem, <i>I had, might have, heard.</i>
2. audi-ve-rās,	audi-vi-sSES,
3. audi-ve-rat.	audi-vi-sset.
Pl. 1. audi-ve-rāmus,	audi-vi-ssēmus,
2. audi-ve-rātis,	audi-vi-ssētis,
3. audi-ve-rant.	audi-vi-ssent.

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. audi-ve-rō, <i>I shall have heard,</i>
2. audi-ve-ris, <i>thou wilt have heard,</i>
3. audi-ve-rit, <i>he will have heard.</i>
Pl. 1. audi-ve-rîmus, <i>we shall have heard,</i>
2. audi-ve-rîtis, <i>you will have heard,</i>
3. audi-ve-rint, <i>they will have heard.</i>

INFINITIVE.

Present : audi-re, *to hear.**Perfect* : audi-vi-sse, *to have heard.**Future* : audi-tûrum, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to hear.*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

N. [audi-re], *hearing, to hear.*G. audiendî, *of hearing.*D. audiendô, *to, for hearing.*Ac. [audi-rē] (ad) audiendum, *hearing, to hear.*Abl. audiendô, *by hearing.*1. audi-tum, *to hear.*2. audi-tû, *to hear, in the hearing.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Passive.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

- Sing. 1. audi-o-r, *I am heard.*
 2. audi-ri-s,
 3. audi-tur.

- audi-a-r, *I be, may be, heard.*
 audi-ā-ri-s,
 audi-ā-tur.

- Pl. 1. audi-mur,
 2. audi-mini,
 3. audi-u-ntur.

- audi-ā-mur,
 audi-ā-mini,
 audi-a-ntur.

Imperfect.

- Sing. 1. audi-ē-ba-r, *I was heard.*
 2. audi-ē-bā-ri-s,
 3. audi-ē-bā-tur.

- audi-re-r, *I were, might be, heard.*
 audi-rē-ri-s,
 audi-rē-tur.

- Pl. 1. audi-ē-bā-mur,
 2. audi-ē-bā-mini,
 3. audi-ē-ba-ntur.

- audi-rē-mur,
 audi-rē-mini,
 audi-re-ntur.

Future.

- Sing. 1. audi-a-r, *I shall be heard,*
 2. audi-ē-ri-s, *thou wilt be heard,*
 3. audi-ē-tur, *he will be heard.*

- Pl. 1. audi-ē-mur, *we shall be heard,*
 2. audi-ē-mini, *you will be heard,*
 3. audi-e-ntur, *they will be heard.*

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. 1. —

2. audi-re, *be thou heard,* audi-tor, *thou shalt be heard,*
 3. audi-tor, *he shall be heard.*

Pl. 1. —

2. audi-mini, *be ye heard,*
 3. audi-u-ntor, *they shall be heard.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Passive.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

Sing. 1. audītus, -a, -um, sum, <i>I have been heard, was heard.</i>	audītus, -a, -um, sim, <i>I have, may have, been heard.</i>
Pl. 1. audīti, -ae, -a, sumus, <i>we have been heard, were heard.</i>	audīti, -ae, -a, simus, <i>we have, may have, been heard.</i>

Pluperfect.

Sing. 1. audī-tus, -a, -um, eram, <i>I had been heard.</i>	audītus, -a, -um, essem, <i>I had, might have, been heard.</i>
Pl. 1. audīti, -ae, -a, erāmus, <i>we had been heard.</i>	audīti, -ae, -a, essemus, <i>we had, might have, been heard.</i>

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. audītus, -a, -um, erō, <i>I shall have been heard.</i>
Pl. 1. audīti, -ae, -a, erimus, <i>we shall have been heard.</i>

INFINITIVE.

Present: audī-rī, *to be heard.*

Perfect: audī-tum, -am, -um, esse, *to have been heard.*

Future: audī-tum Irī, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLE.

Perfect: audī-tus, -a, -um, *heard.*

Gerundive: audī-e-ndus, -a, -um, *about to be heard.*

APPENDIX TO THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Several verbs of the Third Conjugation in the Present-stem add *i* to the stem before *a*, *o*, *u*, or *ë*, and before *ëm*, *ën*, and *ët*.

Active.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*Sing. 1. capī-ŏ, *I take.*capī-am, *I be taking, I may take.*

2. cap-is,

capī-ās,

3. cap-it.

capī-at.

Pl. 1. cap-imus,

capī-āmus,

2. cap-itis,

capī-ātis,

3. capi-unt.

capī-ant.

*Imperfect.*Sing. 1. capī-ēbam, *I was taking.*cap-erem, *I were taking, I might take.*

2. capī-ēbās,

cap-erēs,

3. capī-ēbat.

cap-eret.

Pl. 1. capī-ēbāmus,

cap-erēmus,

2. capī-ēbātis,

cap-erētis,

3. capī-ēbant.

cap-erent.

*Future.*Sing. 1. capī-em, *I shall take, etc.*2. capī-es, *thou wilt take,*3. capī-et, *he will take.*Pl. 1. capī-ēmus, *we shall take,*2. capī-ētis, *you will take,*3. capī-ent, *they will take.*

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE.

Sing. 2. cap-e, *take thou,**Pres.* cap-ere, *to take.*cap-itō, *thou shalt take,*3. cap-itō, *he shall take.*

PARTICIPLE.

Pl. 2. cap-i-te, *take ye,**Pres.* capī-ēns, *taking.*cap-itōte, *ye shall take,*

GERUND.

3. capi-untō, *they shall take.*G. capī-endi, *of taking, etc.*

Passive.

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*Sing. 1. capi-or, *I am taken.*capi-ar, *I be, may be, taken.*

2. cap-eris,

capi-āris,

3. cap-itur.

capi-ātur.

Pl. 1. cap-imur,

capi-āmur,

2. cap-imini,

capi-āmini,

3. cap-untur.

capi-antur.

*Imperfect.*Sing. 1. capi-ēbar, *I was taken.*cap-erer, *I were, might be, taken.*

2. capi-ēbāris,

cap-erēris,

3. capi-ēbātur.

cap-erētur.

Pl. 1. capi-ēbāmur,

cap-erēmur,

2. capi-ēbāmini,

cap-erēmini,

3. capi-ēbantur.

cap-erentur.

*Future.*Sing. 1. capi-er, *I shall be taken,*2. capi-eris, *thou wilt be taken,*3. capi-etur, *he will be taken.*Pl. 1. capi-ēmur, *we shall be taken,*2. capi-ēmini, *you will be taken,*3. capi-entur, *they will be taken.*

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE.

Sing. 2. cap-ere, *be thou taken,*Pres. cap-I, *to be taken.*cap-itor, *thou shalt be taken,*3. cap-itor, *he shall be taken.*Pl. 2. cap-imini, *be ye taken, ye shall be**taken,*

GERUND.

3. capi-untor, *they shall be taken.*capi-endus, -a, -um, *to be taken.*

DEPONENT OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Active.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. 1. hortō-r, <i>I exhort.</i>	hortē-r, <i>I be exhorting, I may exhort.</i>
2. hortā-riā,	hortē-riā,
3. hortā-tur.	hortē-tur.
Pl. 1. hortā-mur,	hortē-mur,
2. hortā-minī,	hortē-minī,
3. hortā-ntur.	hortē-ntur.

Imperfect.

Sing. 1. hortā-ba-r, <i>I was exhorting.</i>	hortā-re-r, <i>I were exhorting, I might exhort.</i>
2. hortā-bū-riā,	hortā-rē-riā,
3. hortā-bā-tur.	hortā-rē-tur.
Pl. 1. hortā-bā-mur,	hortā-rē-mur,
2. hortā-bā-minī,	hortā-rē-minī,
3. hortā-bā-ntur.	hortā-rē-ntur.

Futura.

Sing. 1. hortā-bo-r, <i>I shall exhort,</i>
2. hortā-be-riā, <i>thou wilt exhort,</i>
3. hortā-bi-tur, <i>he will exhort.</i>
Pl. 1. hortā-bi-mur, <i>we shall exhort,</i>
2. hortā-bi-minī, <i>you will exhort,</i>
3. hortā-bi-ntur, <i>they will exhort.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE FORMS.

Sing. 2. hortāre, <i>exhort thou,</i>	PART. Pres. hortā-na, <i>exhorting.</i>
hortā-tor, <i>thou shalt exhort,</i>	Fut. hortātūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to exhort.</i>
3. hortā-tor, <i>he shall exhort.</i>	INF. Fut. hortātūrum, -am, -um, esse, <i>to be about to exhort.</i>
Pl. 2. hortā-minī, <i>exhort ye, ye shall exhort,</i>	PASSIVE IN MEANING.
3. hortā-ntor, <i>they shall exhort.</i>	GERUND. hortandus, -a, -um, <i>one to be exhorted.</i>

DEPONENT OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

Sing. 1. hortātus, -a, -um, sum, *I have exhortēd, I exhorted.* hortātus, -a, -um, sim, *I have, may have, exhortēd.*

2. hortātus es,

3. hortātus est.

Pl. 1. hortāti, -ae, -a, sumus,

hortāti, -ae, -a, simus.

2. hortāti estis,

3. hortāti sunt.

Pluperfect.

Sing. 1. hortātus, -a, -um, eram, *I had exhortēd.* hortātus, -a, -um, essem, *I had, might have, exhortēd.*

Pl. 1. hortāti, -ae, -a, erāmus.

hortāti, -ae, -a, essēmus.

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. hortātus, -a, -um, erō, *I shall have exhorted.*

Pl. 1. hortāti, -ae, -a, erimus, *we shall have exhorted.*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. hortārī, *to exhort.*

Perfect: hortātus, -a -um, *having exhorted.*

Perf. hortātum, -am, -um, esse, *to have exhortēd.*

SUPINE. 1. hortātum, *to exhort, for exhorting.* 2. hortātū, *to exhort, in the exhorting.*

GERUND. [hortārī], *to exhort, exhorting.* G. hortandī, *of exhorting, etc., etc.*

DEPONENT OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. 1. vere-o-r, <i>I fear.</i>	vere-a-r, <i>I be fearing, I may fear.</i>
2. verē-riā,	vere-ā-riā,
3. verē-tur.	vere-ā-tur.
Pl. 1. verē-mur,	vere-ā-mur,
2. verē-minī,	vere-ā-minī,
3. vere-ntur.	vere-a-ntur.

Imperfect.

Sing. 1. verē-ba-r, <i>I was fearing.</i>	verē-re-r, <i>I were fearing, I might fear.</i>
2. verē-bā-riā,	verē-rē-riā,
3. verē-bā-tur.	verē-rē-tur.
Pl. 1. verē-bā-mur,	verē-rē-mur,
2. verē-bā-minī,	verē-rē-minī,
3. verē-ba-ntur.	verē-re-ntur.

Future.

Sing. 1. verē-bo-r, <i>I shall fear,</i>
2. verē-be-riā, <i>thou wilt fear,</i>
3. verē-bi-tur, <i>he will fear.</i>
Pl. 1. verē-bi-mur, <i>we shall fear,</i>
2. verē-bi-minī, <i>you will fear,</i>
3. verē-bu-ntur, <i>they will fear.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE FORMS.

Sing. 2. verē-re, <i>fear thou,</i>	PART. Pres. verē-na, <i>fearing.</i>
verē-tor, <i>thou shalt fear,</i>	Fut. ver-i-tūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to fear.</i>
3. verē-tor, <i>he shall fear.</i>	INF. Fut. veritūrum, -am, -um, esse, <i>to be about to fear.</i>
Pl. 2. verē-minī, <i>fear ye, ye shall fear,</i>	PASSIVE IN MEANING.
3. vere-ntor, <i>they shall fear.</i>	GERUND. vere-ndus, -a, -um, <i>one to be feared.</i>

DEPONENT OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

Sing. 1. ver-i-tus, -a, -um, sum,

veritus, -a, -um, sim,

*I have feared, I feared.**I have, may have, feared.*

Pl. 1. veritī, -ae, -a, sumus.

veritī, -ae, -a, simus.

Pluperfect.

Sing. 1. veritus, -a, -um, eram,

veritus, -a, -um, essem,

*I had feared.**I had, might have, feared.*

Pl. 1. veritī, -ae, -a, erāmus.

veritī, -ae, -a, essemus.

*Future Perfect.*Sing. 1. veritus, -a, -um, erō, *I shall have feared.*

Pl. 1. veritī, -ae, -a, erimus.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. verē-ri, *to fear.**Perfect:* ver-i-tus, -a, -um.*Perf.* veritum, -am, -um, esse, *to have feared.*SUPINE. 1. ver-i-tum, *to fear, for fearing.* 2. ver-i-tū, *to fear, in fearing.*GERUND. [vereri], *to fear, fearing.* G. verē-ndī, *of fearing, etc.*

DEPONENT OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. 1. loqu-o-r, *I speak.*
2. loqu-e-ria,
3. loqu-i-tur.

loqu-a-r, *I be speaking, I may speak.*
loqu-ā-ria,
loqu-ā-tur.

Pl. 1. loqu-i-mur,
2. loqu-i-mini,
3. loqu-u-ntur.

loqu-ā-mur,
loqu-ā-mini,
loqu-a-ntur.

Imperfect.

Sing. 1. loqu-ū-ba-r, *I was speaking.*
2. loqu-ē-bā-ria,
3. loqu-ē-bā-tur.

loqu-e-re-r, *I were speaking, I might speak.*
loqu-e-rē-ria,
loqu-e-rē-tur.

Pl. 1. loqu-ē-bā-mur,
2. loqu-ē-bā-mini,
3. loqu-ē-ba-ntur.

loqu-e-rē-mur,
loqu-e-rē-mini,
loqu-e-re-ntur.

Future.

Sing. 1. loqu-a-r, *I shall speak,*
2. loqu-ē-ria, *thou wilt speak,*
3. loqu-ē-tur, *he will speak.*

Pl. 1. loqu-ē-mur, *we shall speak,*
2. loqu-ē-mini, *you will speak,*
3. loqu-e-ntur, *they will speak.*

IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE FORMS.

Sing. 2. loqu-e-re, *speak thou,*
loqu-i-tor, *thou shalt speak,*
3. loqu-i-tor, *he shall speak.*

Pl. 2. loqu-i-mini, *speak ye,*
3. loqu-u-ntor, *they shall speak.*

PART. Pres. loqu-ē-na, *speaking.*

Fut. locū-tūrus, -a, -um, *about to speak.*

INF. Fut. locūtūrum, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to speak.*

PASSIVE IN MEANING.

GERUND. loqu-e-ndus, -a, -um, *to be spoken.*

DEPONENT OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

Sing. 1. locū-tus, -a, -um, sum,
I have spoken, I spoke.

locūtus, -a, -um, sim,
I have, may have, spoken.

Pl. 1. locūtī, -ae, -a, sumus.

locūtī, -ae, -a, simus.

Pluperfect.

Sing. 1. locūtus, -a, -um, eram,
I had spoken.

locūtus, -a, -um, essem,
I had, might have, spoken.

Pl. 1. locūtī, -ae, -a, erāmus.

locūtī, -ae, -a, essēmus.

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. locūtus, -a, -um, erō, *I shall have spoken.*

Pl. 1. locūtī, -ae, -a, erimus, *we shall have spoken.*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. loquī, *to speak.*

Perfect. locū-tus, -a, -um,

Perf. locūtum, -am, -um, esse,
to have spoken.

having spoken.

1. locū-tum, *to speak, for speaking.* 2. locūt-ū, *to speak, in speaking.*

SUPINE.

ī, *to speak, speaking.* G. loqu-e-ndī, *of speaking etc.*

GERUND. [loqu-

DEPONENT OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. 1. menti-o-r, <i>I lie.</i>	menti-a-r, <i>I be lying, I may lie.</i>
2. menti-ri-a,	menti-ri-a,
3. menti-tur.	menti-tur.
Pl. 1. menti-mur,	menti-mur,
2. menti-mini,	menti-mini,
3. menti-ntur.	menti-ntur.

Imperfect.

Sing. 1. menti-ba-r, <i>I was lying.</i>	menti-re-r, <i>I were lying, I might lie.</i>
2. menti-ba-ri-a,	menti-ré-ri-a,
3. menti-ba-tur.	menti-ré-tur.
Pl. 1. menti-ba-mur,	menti-ré-mur,
2. menti-ba-mini,	menti-ré-mini,
3. menti-ba-ntur.	menti-re-ntur.

Futura.

Sing. 1. menti-a-r, <i>I shall lie.</i>
2. menti-ri-a,
3. menti-tur.
Pl. 1. menti-mur,
2. menti-mini,
3. menti-ntur.

IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE FORMS.

Sing. 2. menti-re, <i>lie thou,</i> menti-tor, <i>thou shalt lie,</i>	PART. Pres. menti-ens, <i>lying.</i>
3. menti-tor, <i>he shall lie.</i>	Perf. menti-turus, -a, -um, <i>about to lie.</i>
	INF. Fut. mentitūrum, -am, -um, <i>case, to be about to lie.</i>
Pl. 2. menti-mini, <i>lie ye,</i>	PASSIVE.
3. menti-ntor, <i>they shall lie.</i>	GERUND. menti-endus, -a, -um.

DEPONENT OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Perfect.

Sing. 1. menti-tus, -a, -um, sum,
I have lied, I lied.

mentitus, -a, -um, sim,
I have, may have, lied.

Pl. 1. mentiti, -ae, -a, sumus.

mentiti, -ae, -a, simus.

Pluperfect.

Sing. 1. mentitus, -a, -um, eram,
I had lied.

mentitus, -a, -um, essem,
I had, might have, lied.

Pl. 1. mentiti, -ae, -a, erāmus.

mentiti, -ae, -a, essēmus.

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. mentitus, -a, -um, erō, *I shall have lied.*

Pl. 1. mentiti, -ae, -a, erimus, *we shall have lied.*

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLE

Pres. menti-ri, *to lie.*

Perfect: menti-tus, -a, -um, *having lied.*

Perf. mentitum, -am, -um, esse, *to have lied.*

SUPINE. 1. menti-tum, *to lie, for lying.* 2. menti-tū, *to lie, in lying.*

GERUND. [mentiri], *to lie, lying.* G. menti-ē-ndi, *of lying, etc.*

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

Active.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. amātūrus, -a, -um, sum,
I am about to love.

amātūrus, -a, -um, sim,
I be about to love.

Imperf. amātūrus eram,
I was about to love.

amātūrus essem,
I were about to love.

Fut. amātūrus erō, *I shall be about to love.*

Perf. amātūrus fui,
I have been, was, about to love.

amaturus fuerim,
I have, may have, been about to love.

Pluperf. amātūrus fueram,
I had been about to love.

amātūrus fulsem,
I had, might have, been about to love.

Fut. Perf. amātūrus fuero.

INFINITIVE *Present*: amātūrum, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to love.*

Perfect: amātūrum fuisse, *to have been about to love.*

Passive.

Pres. amandus, -a, -um, sum,
I have to be loved.

amandus, -a, -um, sim,
I have to be loved.

Imperf. amandus eram,
I had to be loved.

amandus essem, forem,
I had to be loved.

Fut. amandus erō, *I shall have to be loved.*

Perf. amandus fui,
I have had to be loved.

amandus fuerim,
I have had to be loved.

Pluperf. amandus fueram,
I had had to be loved.

amandus fulsem,
I should have had to be loved.

INFINITIVE *Present*: amandum, -am, -um, esse, *to have to be loved.*

Perfect: amandum fuisse, *to have had to be loved.*

ABBREVIATIONS OCCURRING IN CERTAIN FORMS OF THE VERB.

1. The Perfects in -āvi, -ēvi, -īvi, drop the V before S or R, and contract the vowels throughout, except those in -īvi, which admit the contraction only before S.

<i>Perfect.</i>		
Sing. 1. —	—	—
2. amāvistī, amāstī, <i>thou hast loved, etc.</i>	dēlēvistī, dēlēstī, <i>thou hast destroyed, etc.</i>	audīvistī, audistī, <i>thou hast heard, etc.</i>
8. —	—	—
Pl. 1. —	—	—
2. amāvistis, amāstis,	dēlēvistis, dēlēstis,	audīvistis, audistis.
8. amāvērunt, amārunť.	dēlēvērunt, dēlērunt.	audīvērunt, audīrunt.
SUBJ. amāverim, amārim.	dēlēverim, dēlērim.	audīverim, audīrim.
<i>Pluperfect.</i>		
IND. amāveram, amāram.	dēlēveram, dēlēram.	audīveram, audīeram.
SUBJ. amāvissem, amāssem.	dēlēvissem, dēlēsem.	audīvissem, audīsem.
<i>Future Perfect.</i>		
amāvero, amāro.	dēlēvero, dēlēro.	audīvero, audīero.
<i>Infinitive Perfect.</i>		
amāvisse, amāsse.	dēlēvisse, dēlēsse,	audīvisse, audisse.

In like manner, nōvi, *I know*, and mōvi, *I have moved*, are, in their compounds especially, contracted:

Sing. 2. nōsti. Pl. 2. nōstis, 8. nōrunt. SUBJ. nōrim, etc.

Pluperfect. nōram. SUBJ. nōssem, etc. INF. nōsse. But the Future is nōvero, uncontracted.

REMARK.—In *peters*, *to fall upon*, *dēsiner*, *to give over*, and in the compounds of *Ire*, *to go*, the V of the Perfect is dropped in 1 and 2 Pers. Sing., and in 1 Pers. Pl., but no contraction ensues, *e. g.*:

petīvi, petīi; petīvit, petīit. So dēsīvi, dēsīi; dēsīvit, dēsīit, etc.
And redīi, redīit, from *redire*, *to go back*.

2. In 8 Pl. Perf. Act., instead of the ending -ērunt, -ēre is often found, but never in the contracted Perfects mentioned above: amāvēre, *they have loved*; dēlēvēre, *they have destroyed*; ēmēre, *they have bought*; audīvēre, *they have heard*. But amāre, for amārunť, is not admissible.

3. Instead of -ris in 2 Sing. Pass. we find often -re:

amābāre, *thou wast loved*; amārēre, *thou mightest be loved*; amābere, *thou wilt be loved*.

This is rare, however, in Present Indicative.

4. The Imperatives of *dicere*, *to say*, *dūcere*, *to lead*, *facere*, *to make*, and *ferre*, *to bear*, are *dic*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*. These shortened forms occur in their respective compounds, except in those compounds of *facio* which change a into i, *e. g.*: *perſice*, *achieve thou* (p. 100).

5. The Gerund and Gerundive of the 3d and 4th Conjugations, instead of -endi, -endus, etc., may, especially after I, end in -undi and -undus, *e. g.*:

ſaciundus, *to be done*; *gerundus*, *to be carried*.

THE STEM.

I. *In the Present.*

The stem of many verbs appears in the Present, not in the pure, but in a strengthened form.

1. The Liquids L and R may be doubled: PEL, pello, *I drive*; OUR, curro, *I run*.

So T is doubled in MIT, mitto, *I send*.

2. The stem may be strengthened by N:

a. in vowel-stems: SI, sino, *I let*; LI, lino, *I besmear*.

b. after the characteristic R or M: CER, cerno, *I sift, separate*; TEM, temno, *I scorn*.

c. before the characteristic mute: VIN, vinco, *I conquer*; FRAG, frango, *I break*; FUD, fundo, *I pour*.

Before a P-mute N becomes M: RUP, rumpo, *I rend*; CUM, cumbo, *I lie down*.

3. The stem strengthened by T: FLEC, flecto, *I bend*.

4. The stem strengthened by SO or ISC:

IRA, irascor,	CRE, crê-sco,	DORMI, obdormi-scor,
<i>I am in a rage.</i>	<i>I groan.</i>	<i>I fall asleep.</i>
AP, ap-iscor,	FAO, profic-iscor,	NAC, nanc-iscor,
<i>I reach.</i>	<i>I set out.</i>	<i>I get.</i>

5. Reduplication in the Present stem: GEN, gi-gno, *I beget* (for GIGENO); STA, si-sto, sistere, *to set, stand*. Compare stâre, *to stand*.

6. U suffixed to the stem: TING, tinguo, *I soak*.

7. I suffixed to the stem: CAP, capio, *I take*. See pp. 67, 68.

8. Many consonant-stems assume in the Present the characteristic of one of the three vowel-conjugations:

VID, vide-o, *I see, vidēre*. VEN, veni-o, *I come, venire*.

II. *In the Perfect.*

The Perfect is formed from the pure stem. For exceptions see change of conjugation.

1. The vowel-stems take -vī: amā-vī, *I have loved*; dēlē-vī, *I have destroyed*; audi-vī, *I have heard*.

However, most verbs of the 2d Conjugation drop the vowel-characteristic, and change -vī into -uī. See p. 57.

2. Consonant-stems with *short* stem-syllable take *i* in the Perfect, before which the stem-syllable becomes long, and *ā* is changed into *ē*.

lego, *I read*, vid-eo, *I see*, fod-io, *I dig*, fug-io, *I flee*, ag-o, *I do*,
lēg-l. vid-l. fōd-l. fug-l. ēg-l.

3. Consonant-stems with *long* stem-syllable take *si* in the Perfect:

rēp-o, *I creep*, rēp-sī. scribo, *I write*, scrip-sī. dic-o, *I say*, dixī=dic-sī.
aug-eo, *I increase*, auxī=aug-sī. rād-o, *I scrape*, rāsī=rād-sī.

Even when the stem-syllable is *long by position* only:

carp-o, *I pluck*, carp-sī. ping-o, *I paint*, plaxī=ping-sī.

Exceptions are stems in -nd, which take *i* in the Perfect: dēfend-o, *I strike (ward) off*, dēfend-ī; perhaps because the stems in -nd formed originally a *reduplicated perfect*, *e. g.*:

mand-o, *I chide*, mandidi; so fefendi, *I have struck*.

4. The stems in U have *i* in the Perfect: acu-o, *I sharpen*, acu-ī.

5. Several verbs reduplicate in the Perfect, *i. e.*, repeat the initial consonant of the stem with the vowel following it:

pend-o, *I weigh*, pe-pend-l. posc-o, *I demand*, po-posc-l. curr-o, *I run*, cu-curr-l.

When a change of vowel occurs in the stem, *e* is always found in the syllable of reduplication:

cad-o, *I fall*, ce-cid-l. caed-o, *I fell*, ce-cid-l.
parc-o, *I spare*, pe-perc-l. pel-lo, *I push*, pe-pul-l.

These reduplicated Perfects are always formed in -i. They do not lengthen the stem-vowel, but change *a* into *i*, *ae* into *ī*, *a* before two consonants into *e*, and *e* and *o* into *u* before *l*.

III. THE SUPINE.

The Supine is formed from the *pure stem*.

1. Vowel-stems and stems in U take -tum in the Supine:

am-o, *I love*, amā-tum. dēle-o, *I destroy*, dēlē-tum.
audi-o, *I hear*, audī-tum. tribu-o, *I allot*, tribū-tum.

Most verbs of the Second Conjugation drop, however, their own characteristic vowel before -tum, and insert the connecting-vowel *i*: mone-o, *I remind*, moni-tum. Some have no connecting-vowel. See p. 58.

2. Consonant-stems in a P- or K-mute take -tum in the Supine:

cap-io, *I take*, cap-tum. rēp-o, *I creep*, rēp-tum.
fac-io, *I do*, fac-tum. dic-o, *I say*, dic-tum.

EXCEPTIONS.—Among the P-stems; only *lābor*, *I slip*, lāp-sus.

Among the K-stems the Supine in -sum occurs:

a. In verbs whose Present-stem is strengthened by T, *e. g.*:

flect-o, *I bend*, flexum. plect-o, *I plait*, plexum.
pect-o, *I comb*, pexum. nect-o, *knot, bind*, nexum.

b. Some, whose characteristic is preceded by a Liquid: *merg-o, I dip*, *mer-sum*; *terg-o, I wipe*, *ter-sum*; *parc-o, I spare*, *parsum*; *sparg-o, I sow*, *scatter*, *spar-sum*; *mulce-o, I stroke*, *mul-sum*.

c. In some the ending -sum prevents confusion with other words: *figo, I shape*, makes *fic-tum*; but *figo, I fasten*, *fix-um*. So *mulsum*, from *mulc-eo, I stroke*, distinguishes it from *multum, much*.

REMARK.—The K-mutes are dropped in the Perfect and Supine between L-S, L-T, R-S, R-T: *fulc io, I prop*, *ful(c)-si, ful(c)-tum*; *torqu-eo, I twist*, *tor(qu)-si, tor(qu)-tum*. See p. 85.

3. Consonant-stems in a T-mute take -sum in the Supine:

ed-o, I eat, ē-sum (for *ed-sum*); *lūd-o, I play*, *lū-sum*; *dēfend-o, I ward off*, *dēfēsum*.

4. Liquid-stems have partly -tum, partly -sum. Stems in **m** and **n** take -tum; stems in **l** and **r** take -sum:

em-o, I buy, *em-tum*; *veni-o, I come*, *ventum*; *can-o, I sing*, *can-tum*.

versum, from *verro, I nceep*; *falsum*, from *fall-o, cheat*; *vulsum*, from *voll-o, I pluck*.

EXCEPTIONS.—a. Liquid-stems which in the Perfect pass over to the 2d Conjugation have -tum, with or without connecting-vowels: *alo, I nourish*, *alitur* or *altum*.

b. To be distinguished from other forms: *par-tum*, from *pario, I bring forth*; but *parsum*, from *parcere, to spare*; *saltum*, from *sal-io, I leap*; and *salsum*, from *salio, I salt*.

c. *Mansum*, from *man-eo, I remain*.

REMARK.—The Future Active Participle is formed regularly from the Supine; in some verbs, however, from the Present-stem: *juvātūrus*, about to help, from *juvāre*; *secātūrus*, from *secāre, to cut*; *sonātūrus*, from *sonāre, to sound*; *lavātūrus*, from *lavāre, to wash*; but *adjūtūrus*, from *adjuvāre, to help*; *moritūrus*, from *morior, I die*; *oritūrus*, from *orior, I rise*; *paritūrus*, from *pario, I bring forth*; *agnōtūrus*, from *agnosco, I recognize*; *nascitūrus*, from *nascor, I am born*.

In some U-stems it is formed by means of the connecting-vowel I: *arguitūrus*, from *arguo, I accuse*; *abnuitūrus*, from *abnuo, I refuse*; *luitūrus*, from *lu-o, wash off*; *ruitūrus*, from *ruo, I rush*; *fruitūrus*, from *fuor, I enjoy*.

EUPHONIC LAWS

IN THE CONVERSION OF THE CONSONANT-CHARACTERISTIC.

Characteristic **b** before **s** and **t** becomes **p**:

scribo, I write, *scripsī, scriptum*.

Characteristic **g** and **qu** before **t** become **c**:

lego, I read, *lectum*; *coqu-o, I bake*, *coo-tum*.

Characteristic **c**, **g** and **qu** with **s** become **x**:

dic-o, I say, *dixī* (= *dic-si*).

jung-o, I join, *junxī* (= *jung-si*).

coqu-o, I cook, *coxī* (= *coqu-si*).

stingu-o, I poke (out), *stinxī*.

Characteristic **t** and **d** before **s** are dropped, or become by assimilation **ss**:

ed-o, I eat, *ē-sum* (= *ed-sum*); *cēd-o, I go*, *cēs-sī* (= *ced-si*).

mitto, I send, *mīsī* (= *mit-si*), *missum* (= *mit-sum*).

CHANGE OF CONJUGATION.

A change of Conjugation arises when a vowel (e, i, a), or one of the strengthening suffixes of the Present is added to the pure stem. The following instances occur :

1. Consonant-stems, regular in the Perfect and Supine, pass over in the Present-stem into one of the vowel-conjugations.

sēpio,	sēpire,	sēp-sī,	sēp-tum,	<i>to hedge in.</i>
augeo,	angēre,	auxī,	auc-tum,	<i>to increase.</i>
vinclo,	vincire,	vinxi,	vinc-tum,	<i>to bind.</i>
video,	vidēre,	vid-i,	vi-sum,	<i>to see.</i>
sentio,	sentire,	sēn-sī,	sēn-sum,	<i>to feel.</i>
venio,	venire,	vēn-i,	ven-tum,	<i>to come.</i>

N. B.—As these verbs form Perfect and Supine from the pure stem regularly, like the others of the 3d or Consonant-Conjugation, they are placed among the verbs of the 3d Conjugation in the list below.

2. Vowel-stems, in consequence of a strengthened Present, pass over into the 3d Conjugation, but form Perfect and Supine from the vowel-stem.

li-n-o,	linere,	li-vī (lē-vī),	li-tum,	<i>to besmear.</i>
crē-sc-o,	crēscere,	crē-vī,	crē-tum,	<i>to grow.</i>

3. Consonant-stems form the Present regularly according to the 3d Conjugation, but pass in the Perfect and Supine into the 2d or 4th Conjugation.

fremo,	fremere,	frem-vī,	frem-ītum,	<i>to growl.</i>
peto,	petere,	petī-vī,	petī-tum,	<i>to fall upon.</i>

4. Vowel-stems vary among the Vowel-Conjugations.

crepo, I.	crepāre, I.	crepuī, II.	crepitum, II.	<i>to crackle.</i>
aperio, IV.	aperire, IV.	aperuī, II.	apertum,	<i>to uncover.</i>

5. dare, *to give*, and stāre, *to stand*, in the Perfect, in consequence of reduplication, pass over to the 3d Conjugation.

N. B.—Verbs mentioned under 2, 3, 4, and 5 as suffering change of Conjugation, are specially marked in pp. 92-4.

STEMS IN A P-MUTE.

Supine : -tum.

PERFECT.—1. After a short stem-syllable, Perfect in -I.

capio (cap),	capere,	cēp-I,	cap-tum,	<i>to take.</i>
accipio,	accipere,	accēp-I,	acceptum,	<i>to receive.</i>
rumpo (rup),	rumpere,	rūp-I,	rup-tum,	<i>to break.</i>

2. After a long stem-syllable, Perfect in -sI.

rēpo,	repere,	rēp-sI,	rēp-tum,	<i>to creep.</i>
carpo,	carpere,	carp-sI,	carp-tum,	<i>to pluck.</i>
serpo,	serpere,	serp-sI,	serp-tum,	<i>to creep.</i>
scalpo,	scalpere,	scalp-sI,	scalp-tum,	<i>to scrape.</i>
sculpo,	sculperē,	sculp-sI,	sculp-tum,	<i>to chisel.</i>
scribo,	scribere,	scrip-sI,	scrip-tum,	<i>to write.</i>
nūbo,	nūbere,	nūp-sI,	nūp-tum,	<i>to marry (of the woman).</i>

With change of Conjugation.

sorbeo,	sorbere,	(sorp-sI) sorbuI,	sorp-tum,	<i>to sup up.</i>
sēpio (sacpio),	sēpire,	sēp-sI,	sēp-tum,	<i>to hedge in.</i>

Exceptions.

I. clepo,	clepere,	clep-sI (clēp-I),	clep-tum,	<i>to flick.</i>
II. lambo,	lambere,	lamb-I,	(lamb-i-tum),	<i>to lick.</i>

STEMS IN A K-MUTE.

Supine : -tum.

PERFECT.—1. After a short stem-syllable, Perfect in -I.

a. Pure stem.

lego,	legere,	lēg-I,	lec-tum,	<i>to read.</i>
colligo (ēligo),	colligere.	collēg-I,	collec-tum.	<i>to gather.</i>

Except diligo, intelligo, nēligo, below, p. 85.

ago,	agere,	ēg-I,	ao-tum,	<i>to do.</i>
red-igo,	redigere,	redēg-I,	redac-tum,	<i>to bring back.</i>
cōgo	cōgere,	coēg-I,	conc-tum,	<i>to compel.</i>
dēgo	dēgere,	dēg-I,	—	<i>to pass (time).</i>
jacio,	jacere,	jēc-I,	jac-tum,	<i>to cast.</i>
con-jicio,	con-jicere,	conjēc-I,	conjec-tum,	<i>to gather.</i>
facio,	facere,	fēc-I,	fac-tum,	<i>to make.</i>
perficio,	perficere,	perfēc-I,	perfec-tum,	<i>to achieve.</i>
calefacio (calf.),	caleficere,	calefēc-I,	calefic-tum,	<i>to make warm.</i>
fugio,	fugere,	fūg-I,	fug-i-tum,	<i>to flee.</i>

b. Stem strengthened by N.

vinco (vic),	vincere,	vic-I,	vic-tum,	<i>to conquer.</i>
frango,	frangere,	frēg-I,	frac-tum,	<i>to break.</i>
perfringo,	perfringere,	perfrēgī,	perfractum,	<i>to shiver.</i>
(pango),	(pangere),	(pēg-I),	(pac-tum),	comp. 2 b & 3, <i>to drive in.</i>
compingo,	compingere,	compēgī,	compactum,	<i>to drive tight.</i>
re-linquo,	relinquere,	reliqu-I,	relic-tum,	<i>to leave behind.</i>

2. After long stem-syllable, Perfect in -sī.

a. Pure stem.

dīco,	dīcere,	dīxi (dic-sī),	dīc-tum,	<i>to say.</i>
lūco,	lūcere,	lūxi,	lūc-tum,	<i>to lead.</i>
sūgo,	sūgere,	sūxi,	sūc-tum,	<i>to suck.</i>
frigo,	frigere,	frīxi,	fric-tum,	<i>to parch.</i>
-fīgo (con-, af-, in-),	-fīgere,	-fīxi,	-fic-tum,	<i>to strike.</i>
fīgo,	fīgere,	fīxi	fīxum,*	<i>to fusten.</i>

With change of Conjugation.

augeo,	augēre,	auxī,	auc-tum,	<i>to make grow.</i>
lūceo,	lūcēre,	lūxi,	—	<i>to give light.</i>
lūgeo,	lūgēre,	lūxi,	—	<i>to be in mourning.</i>
frigeo,	frigēre,	(frīxi),	—	<i>to be chilled.</i>

h. Stem strengthened by N, which is retained in Perfect and generally in Supine; the stem-syllable is therefore long by position.

Supine without N.

finco,	finere,	finxi,	fic-tum,	<i>to form.</i>
pingo,	pingere,	pinxi,	pic-tum,	<i>to paint.</i>
stringo,	stringere,	strinxi,	stric-tum,	<i>to draw tight.</i>

Supine with N.

plango,	plangere,	planxi,	planc-tum,	<i>to smite.</i>
pango,	pangere,	panxi,	panc-tum,	<i>to drive in.</i>
ango,	angere,	anxi,	—	<i>to anguish.</i>
cingo,	cingere,	cinxī,	cinc-tum,	<i>to gird.</i>
jungo,	jungere,	junxi,	junc-tum,	<i>to join.</i>
mungo,	mungere,	munxi,	munc-tum,	<i>to blow the nose.</i>
ningo,	ningere,	ninxi,	—	<i>to snow.</i>
tingo (tinguo),	ting(u)ere,	tinxi,	tinc-tum,	<i>to wet, dye.</i>
lingo,	lingere,	linxi,	linc-tum,	<i>to lick.</i>
-stinguo (ex-, re-, dis-),	-stinguere,	-stinxi,	-stinc-tum,	<i>to poke out.</i>
ungo (unguo),	ung(u)ere,	unxi,	unc-tum,	<i>to anoint.</i>

With change of Conjugation.

vincio,	vincire,	vinxi,	vinc-tum,	<i>to bind.</i>
sancio,	sancire,	sanxi,	sanc-tum and sancitum,	<i>to hallow.</i>

* The exceptions mentioned on pp. 80 and 81 are marked with*.

a. Stem strengthened by T (Supine: -sum).

fecto,	fectere,	flexI,	flexum,*	to bend.
plecto,	plectere,	(plexI),	(plexum),*	to plait.
pecto,	pectere,	pexI,	peum,*	to comb.
necto,	nectere,	nexI (nexui),	neum,*	to knot.

d. The K-mute dropped after L or R, and before S or T.

mergo,	mergere,	mer-sI,	mer-sum,*	to dip in.
tergo (eo),	tergere (ēre),	ter-sI,	ter-sum,*	to wipe.
spargo,	spargere,	spar-sI,	spar-sum,*	to strew.

With change of Conjugation.

algeo,	algēre,	al-sI,	—	to freeze.
fulgeo,	fulgēre,	ful-sI,	—	to glow.
indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indul-sI,	indul-tum,	to give way.
mulceo,	mulcēre,	mul-sI,	mul-sum,*	to stroke.
mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mul-sI,	mul-sum (ctum),*	to milk.
urgeo,	urgēre,	ur-sI,	—	to press.
turgeo,	turgēre,	tur-sI,	—	to swell.
torqueo,	torquēre,	tor-sI,	tor-tum,	to twist.
fulcio,	fulcire,	ful-sI,	ful-tum,	to prop.
farctio, (-fercio),	farctire,	far-sI,	far-tum,	to stuff.
sarcio,	sarcire,	sar-sI,	sar-tum,	to patch.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Stem-syllable short, but Perfect in -sI.

rego,	regere,	rexI,	rec-tum,	to keep right.
dīrigo,	dīrgero,	dīrexI,	dirrec-tum,	to guide.
pergo,	pergere,	perrexI,	perrec-tum,	to go on.
surgo,	surgere,	surrexI,	surrec-tum,	to rise up.
tego,	tegere,	texI,	tec-tum,	to cover.
coquo,	coquere,	coxI,	coc-tum,	to cook.
[-līgo (leg),	-ligere,	-lexI,	-lec-tum,]	
dīlīgo,	dīlligere,	dīlexI,	dīleo-tum,	to love.
intelligo or intellego,	intelligere,	intellexxI,	intellec-tum,	to understand.
nēglīgo or nēglego,	negligere,	neglexI,	neglec-tum,	to neglect.

(col-ligere, ēlligere, p. 88.)

[-līcio (lac),	-licere,	-lexI,	-lectum,]	lure.
(ul-, il-) pel-līcio,	pellicere,	pel-lexI,	pellectum,	to allure.
ēlīcio,	ēllicere,	ēlleuI,	ēllē-i-tum,	to lure forth.
[-spīcio (spec),	-spicere,	-spexI,	-spec-tum,]	to peer.
(ad-, con-, de-, in-) per-spīcio,	perspicere,	per-spexI,	perspectum,	to see through.

2. Stem-syllable long, but Perfect in -I.

Ico (defective),	Icere,	Ic-I,	Ic-tum,	to strike.
------------------	--------	-------	---------	------------

3. With reduplicated Perfect.

posco,	poscere,	po- po -I,	—	<i>to claim.</i>
disco,	discere,	di- die -I,	(discitūrus),	<i>to learn.</i>
parco,	parcere,	pe- pere -I (parsi),	par-sum,*	<i>to spare.</i>
tango (TAG),	tangere,	te- tig -I,	tactum,	<i>to touch.</i>
at-tingo,	attingere,	attig-I,	attactum,	
(pango, p. 80),	(pangere),	pe- pig -I,	pac-tum,	<i>to drive a bargain.</i>
pungo,	pungere,	pu- pug -I,	punc-tum,	<i>to prick.</i>
interpungo,	interpungere,	interpun x -I,	interpunc-tum,	<i>to place points between.</i>

ASPIRATE STEMS IN H AND V.

The stems in H, and some in V, follow the Conjugation of the K-mute stems. (H is hardened into C. In the V-stems an original K-mute reappears, *e. g.* : *vīvo* for *vi(g)vo* ; *vixī* = *vi(g)Vsi*.)

PERFECT, -si. *Supine* : -tum.

traho,	trahere,	trax-I,	trac-tum,	<i>to drag.</i>
veho,	vehere,	vex-I,	vec-tum,	<i>to carry.</i>
vīvo,	vīvere,	vix-I,	vic-tum,	<i>to live.</i>
fluo,	fluere,	flux-I,	(fluxum),	<i>to flow.</i>
struo,	struere,	strux-I,	struc-tum,	<i>to build.</i>

With change of Conjugation.

connīveo,	connīvēre,	connix-I and iv-I,	—	<i>to close the eyes.</i>
-----------	------------	--------------------	---	---------------------------

STEMS IN A T-MUTE.

Supine : -sum.

PERFECT.—1. The stems in D with short stem-syllable and all stems in -nd, have Perfect in -I.
(Many stems in -nd, with reduplicated Perfect, see 4 below.)

edo,	edere,	ēd-I,	ē-sum,	<i>to eat.</i>
fundo (FUD),	fundere,	fūd-I,	fū-sum,	<i>to pour.</i>
mando,	mandere,	mand-I,	mān-sum,	<i>to chew.</i>
scando,	scandere,	scand-I,	scān-sum,	<i>to climb.</i>
ad-, dē-scendo,	dēscendere,	dēscend-I,	dēscēn-sum,	<i>to climb down.</i>
ac-cendo,	accendere,	accend-I,	accēn-sum,	<i>to kindle.</i>
de-fendo,	defendere,	defend-I,	defēn-sum,	<i>to strike away, defend.</i>
prehendo,	prehendere,	prehend-I,	prehēn-sum,	<i>to seize.</i>

With change of Conjugation.

video,	vidēre,	vid-I,	vi-sum,	<i>to see.</i>
prandeo,	prandēre,	prand-I,	prān-sum,	<i>to breakfast.</i>

2. Stems in D and T, with long stem-syllable, have Perfect in -sI.

rādo,	rādere,	rā-sI,	rā-sum,	<i>to scratch.</i>
rūdo,	rūdere,	rū-sI,	rū-sum,	<i>to gnaw.</i>
vādo (in-, e-),	-vādere,	-vā-sI,	-vā-sum,	<i>to go.</i>
lūdo,	lūdere,	lū-sI,	lū-sum,	<i>to play.</i>
trūdo,	trūdere,	trū-sI,	trū-sum,	<i>to push.</i>
laedo,	laedere,	lae-sI,	lae-sum,	<i>to harm.</i>
collido,	collidere,	collī-sI,	collī-sum,	<i>to strike together.</i>
plaudo,	plaudere,	plausI,	plau-sum,	<i>to clap.</i>
claudo,	claudere,	clausI,	clau-sum,	<i>to shut.</i>
con-, ex-clūdo,	exclūdere,	exclū-sI,	exclū-sum,	<i>to shut up, out.</i>

With change of Conjugation.

suādeo,	suādere,	suā-sI,	suā-sum,	<i>to counsel.</i>
rīdeo,	rīdere,	rī-sI,	rī-sum,	<i>to laugh (at).</i>
ardeo,	ardere,	ar-sI,	ar-sum,	<i>to burn.</i>
sentio,	sentire,	sēn-sI,	sēn-sum,	<i>to feel.</i>

3. With assimilation.

a. In the Supine.

sedeo,	sedere,	sēd-I,	sem-sum,	<i>to sit.</i>
fodio,	fodere,	fōd-I,	fōg-sum,	<i>to dig.</i>
pando,	pandere,	pand-I,	pan-sum (pānsūm),	<i>to spread.</i>
mitto,	mittere,	mī-sI,	mis-sum,	<i>to send.</i>

b. In the Perfect and the Supine.

cēdo,	cēdere,	cēs-sI,	cēs-sum,	<i>to yield.</i>
quatio,	quaterere,	quas-sI,	quas-sum,	<i>to shake.</i>
concutio (per-, ex-),	concutere,	concus-sI,	concus-sum,	<i>to shatter.</i>

EXCEPTIONS.

1. With short stem-syllable, but Perfect in -sI.

dīvido,	dīvidere,	dīvī-sI,	dīvī-sum,	<i>to part.</i>
quatio,	quaterere,	quas-sI,	quas-sum,	<i>to shake.</i>

2. With long stem-syllable, but Perfect in -I.

cūdo,	cūdere,	cūd-I,	cū-sum,	<i>to hammer.</i>
sīdo,	sīdere,	sīd-I,	—	<i>to sit down.</i>

In composition sēdI, sessum, from sedeo.

consīdo,	considerere,	consēd-I,	conses-sum,	<i>to settle down.</i>
strīdeo (do),	strīdēre (ere),	strī-dI,	—	<i>to whistle.</i>
verto,	vertere,	vert-I,	ver-sum,	<i>to turn.</i>
revertor,	reverti,	revert-I (active),	rever-sum,	<i>to turn back.</i>

4. With reduplicated Perfect.

N. B.—The reduplication of the Perfect is dropped in compound verbs.

cadō,	cadere,	cecid-I,	cā-sum,	<i>to fall.</i>
occidō,	occidere,	occid-I,	occā-sum,	<i>to perish.</i>
caedō,	caedere,	cecid-I,	cae-sum,	<i>to fell.</i>
occidō,	occidere,	occid-I,	occi-sum,	<i>to kill.</i>
tendō,	tendere,	tetend-I,	ten-sum and -tum,	<i>to stretch.</i>
extendo,	extendere,	extend-I,	exten-sum and -tum,	<i>to stretch out.</i>
ostendo,	ostendere,	ostend-I,	osten-sum,	<i>to stretch at, shew (obs-t.)</i>
pendo,	pendere,	pepend-I,	pen-sum,	<i>to hang (transit.)</i>

With change of Conjugation.

pendeo,	pendēre,	pepend-I,	—	<i>to hang (intr.)</i>
tondeo,	tondēre,	totond-I,	ton-sum,	<i>to shear.</i>
spondeo,	spondēre,	spond-I,	spōn-sum,	<i>to vow.</i>
mordeo,	mordēre,	momord-I,	mor-sum,	<i>to bite.</i>

In some verbs the strengthening N of the Present has been dropped. In two verbs even the reduplicated syllable has been dropped.

tundo,	tundere,	tutud-I,	tūn-sum and tū-sum,	<i>to pound.</i>
findo,	findere,	fid-I,	fis-sum,	<i>to cleave.</i>
scindo,	scindere,	scid-I,	scis-sum,	<i>to split.</i>

LIQUID-STEMS.

All liquid-stems have the stem-syllable short.

(The exceptions arise from contraction: *e. g.*, pōno, *I place*, from po-sino).

Most liquid-stems, by means of the suffix *e*, pass over into the 2d Conjugation, or in the Perfect, at least, suffer change of Conjugation. (See pp. 92, 93.)

Those which follow the 3d Conjugation throughout take *i* in the Perfect, and in the Supine either *-sum* or *-tum*. They lengthen the stem-syllable in the Perfect, or retain the double letter (RR, LL). Some form the reduplicated Perfect.

emo,	emere,	ēm-I,	ein-tum,	<i>to take, to buy.</i>
------	--------	-------	----------	-------------------------

So, too, co-emo, *I buy up*. But the compounds with ad-, ex-, inter-, red-, take -imo.

inter-imo,	interimere,	interēmī,	interemtum,	<i>to make way with.</i>
------------	-------------	-----------	-------------	--------------------------

The other compounds of emo contract: cōmo, sūmo, dēmo, prōmo, and have *-sī* in the Perfect, generally with an inserted P, viz.:

cōmo,	cōmere,	cōmp-sī,	cōmp-tum,	<i>to adorn.</i>
sūmo,	sūmere,	sūmp-sī (sūmsī),	sūmp-tum (sūmtum),	<i>to take.</i>
dēmo,	dēmere,	dēmp-sī,	dēmp-tum,	<i>to take away.</i>
prōmo,	prōmere,	prōmp-sī (prōmsī),	prōmp-tum (prōmtum),	<i>to take out.</i>

The same formation occurs in the stem TEM. Present, temno, *I scorn*.

contemno,	-temnere,	-temp-sī (msī),	-temptum (mtum),	<i>to despise.</i>
-----------	-----------	-----------------	------------------	--------------------

With the characteristic doubled.

verro,	verrere,	verr-I,	ver-sum,	<i>to nocep.</i>
sallo,	sallere,	sall-I,	sall-sum,	<i>to salt.</i>
vello,	vellere,	vell-I (vul-sī),	vul-sum,	<i>to pluck.</i>
psallo,	psallere,	psall-I,	—	<i>to play on the cithern.</i>

With change of Conjugation in the Present.

venio,	venire,	ven-I,	ven-tum,	<i>to come.</i>
--------	---------	--------	----------	-----------------

With reduplicated Perfect.

cano,	canere,	cecin-I,	can-tum,	<i>to sing.</i>
fallo,	fallere,	fec-I-I,	fal-sum,	<i>to cheat.</i>
pello,	pellere,	pepul-I,	pul-sum,	<i>to drive.</i>
percello,	percellere,	percul-I,	percul-sum,	<i>to smite down.</i>
curro,	currere,	cucurr-I,	cur-sum,	<i>to run.</i>
parlo,	parere,	peper-I,	par-tum,*	<i>to bring forth.</i>
comperio,	comperire,	comper-I,	comper-tum,	<i>to find out.</i>
reperio,	reperire,	ruper-I,	reper-tum,	<i>to find.</i>
tollo,	tollere,	sus-tul-I,	sub-lātum,	<i>to raise.</i>

In the liquid-stems in R with long stem-syllable, the R has arisen from S. The original S reappears in the Perfect and Supine, hence the endings **-sī** in the Perfect (or by assimilation **-ssi**), and **-stum** (sum) in the Supine.

haurio,	haurire,	hausī,	haus-tum,	<i>to draw (Auid).</i>
haereo,	haerere,	haesi,	haesum,	<i>to stick (to).</i>
ūro,	ūrere,	ūssi,	ūs-tum,	<i>to burn.</i>
combūro,	combūrere,	combūssi,	combūs-tum,	<i>to burn up.</i>

With short stem-syllable.

gero,	gerere,	gessi,	gestum (see tostum, p. 85),	<i>to carry.</i>
-------	---------	--------	-----------------------------	------------------

STEMS IN S.

The stems in S preceded by a *vowel* have in general changed it to R. Unchanged appears only :

vis-o,	visere,	visī,	visum,	<i>to visit.</i>
--------	---------	-------	--------	------------------

Stems in S preceded by a *consonant* are :

pins-o,	pinsere,	pins-ul, -I,	pins-I-tum (pistum, pinsum)	<i>to pound.</i>
deps-o,	depsere,	deps-nī,	deps-tum,	<i>to knead.</i>
tex-o,	texere,	tex-ul,	tex-tum,	<i>to weave.</i>

These have undergone change of Conjugation in the Perfect. (See p. 92.)

STEMS IN U.

Perfect in -i. Supine in -tum.

1. With characteristic preceded by a consonant.

acuō,	acuere,	acu-I,	acū-tum,	<i>to sharpen.</i>
arguō,	arguere,	argu-I,	argū-tum,	<i>to accuse.</i>
induo,	induere,	indu-I,	indū-tum,	<i>to put on, don.</i>
exuo,	exuere,	exu-I,	exū-tum,	<i>to put off, doff.</i>
linuo,	imbuere,	imbu-I,	imbu-tum,	<i>to dip, dye.</i>
minuo,	minuere,	minu-I,	minū-tum,	<i>to lessen.</i>
tribuo,	tribuere,	tribu-I,	tribū-tum,	<i>to allot.</i>
statuo,	statuere,	statu-I,	statū-tum,	<i>to settle.</i>
suo,	suere,	su-I,	sū-tum,	<i>to sew.</i>
spuo,	spuere,	spu-I,	spū-tum,	<i>to spew.</i>
ad-nuo (annuo),	ad-nuere,	ad-nn-I,	(ad-nū-tum),	<i>to assent.</i>
ab-luo,	ab-luere,	ab-lu-I,	ab-lū-tum,	<i>to wash off.</i>
luo,	luere,	lu-I,	lū-tum,	<i>to atone for</i>
congruo,	congruere,	congru-I,	—	<i>to agree.</i>
metuo,	metuere,	metu-I,	—	<i>to fear.</i>
sternuo,	sternuere,	sternu-I,	—	<i>to sneeze.</i>
(pluo,	pluere,	plui-I,	—	<i>to rain.</i>
ruo,	ruere,	ru-I,	ru-tum,	<i>to rush down.</i>

2. With characteristic preceded by a vowel.

After a vowel, U appears as V, but in the Supine it suffers, as a vowel, contraction with the vowel preceding it (generally with change of conjugation).

(lavo,)	(lavere,)	lāv-I,	lautum, or lōtum	<i>to wash.</i>
lavo,	lavāre,	(lavā-v-I,)	lavā-tum,	<i>to wash.</i>
juvo,	juvāre,	jūv-I,	jū-tum,	<i>to help.</i>
caveo,	cavēre,	cāv-I,	cau-tum,	<i>to take heed.</i>
faveo,	favēre,	fāv-I,	fau-tum,	<i>to be well-disposed.</i>
paveo,	pavē-re,	pāv-I,	—	<i>to be frightened,</i>
moveo,	movē-re,	mōv-I,	mō-tum,	<i>to move.</i>
foveo,	fovēre,	fōv-I,	fō-tum,	<i>to keep warm.</i>
voveo,	vovēre,	vōv-I,	vō-tum,	<i>to vow.</i>

The same reappearance, of V occurs in

solvo,	solvere,	solv-I,	solū-tum,	<i>to loose.</i>
volvo,	volvere,	volv-I,	volū-tum,	<i>to roll.</i>
ferveo,	fervēre,	ferv-I, (ferbul,)	—	<i>to seethe.</i>

DEPONENTS.

The stems strengthened by *sc* or *isc* have generally an inchoative meaning.

STEMS IN A P-MUTE.

1. adip-isc-or,	adipiscī,	adep-tus sum,	<i>to attain.</i>
2. labor,	lābī,	lāp-sus sum,	<i>to glide.</i>

STEMS IN A K-MUTE.

1. a. profic-isc-or,	proficiscī,	profec-tus sum,	<i>to set out.</i>
2. b. fungor,	fungī,	func-tus sum,	<i>to discharge.</i>
nanc-isc-or,	nanciscī,	nac-tus (nactus) a,	<i>to get.</i>
c. amplex-or,	amplectī,	amplexus sum,	<i>to embrace.</i>
d. ulc-isc-or,	ulciscī,	ul-tus sum,	<i>to avenge.</i>
Ex. experg-isc-or,	expergiscī,	experrec-tus sum,	<i>to awake.</i>
4. paciscor,	paciscī,	pactus sum (pepigī),	<i>to drive (a bargain).</i>

STEMS IN H AND V.

vehor,	vehī	vec-tus sum,	<i>to ride.</i>
fruor,	frui,	fruc-tus, fruitus sum,	<i>to enjoy.</i>

STEMS IN A T-MUTE.

2. nitor,	niti,	ni-sus (nixus) sum,	<i>to be stayed on.</i>
utor,	uti,	ti-sus sum,	<i>to use.</i>
ordior,	ordiri,	or-sus sum,	<i>to begin.</i>
assentior,	assentiri,	asen-sus sum,	<i>to assent.</i>
3. gradior,	gradi,	gressus sum,	<i>to step.</i>
aggredior,	aggredi,	aggressus sum,	<i>to attack.</i>
patior,	pati,	pas-sus sum,	<i>to suffer.</i>
fateor,	fateri,	fas-sus sum,	—
cōnfiteor,	cōnfiteri,	cōnfessus sum,	<i>to confess.</i>

STEMS IN A LIQUID.

commin-isc-or,	comminiscī,	commentas sum,	<i>to think out.</i>
experior,	experiri,	exper-tus sum,	<i>to try.</i>

STEMS IN R FOR S.

queror,	queri,	ques-tus sum,	<i>to complain.</i>
---------	--------	---------------	---------------------

STEMS IN U.

1. loquor,	loqui,	locū-tus sum,	<i>to speak.</i>
sequor,	sequi,	secū-tus sum,	<i>to follow.</i>
2. obliv-isc-or,	obliviscī,	obli-tus sum,	<i>to forget.</i>

CHANGE OF CONJUGATION.

(Compare p. 82. Nos. 2, 3, 4, 5.)

A.

1. Verbs of the 1st Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

WITH CONNECTING-VOWEL.

crepo,	crepāre,	crepui,	crepĭtum,	<i>to creak.</i>
cubo,	cubāre,	cubui,	cubitum,	<i>to lie.</i>
domo,	domāre,	domui,	domĭtum,	<i>to tame.</i>
sono,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonĭtum,	<i>to sound.</i>
tono,	tonāre,	tonui,	—	<i>to thunder.</i>
veto,	vetāre,	vetui,	vetĭtum,	<i>to forbid.</i>
mico,	micāre,	micui,	—	<i>to glitter.</i>
dīmico,	dīmīcāre,	dīmīcāvī,	dīmīcātum,	<i>to fight.</i>
plico (explico),	plicāre,	plicui (plicāvī),	plicĭtum (plicātum),	<i>to fold.</i>

WITHOUT CONNECTING-VOWEL.

seco,	secāre,	secul,	sectum,	<i>to cut.</i>
frico,	fricāre,	fricui,	frictum, fricātum,	<i>to rub.</i>
[neco,	neccāre,	neccāvī,	neccātum,	<i>to kill.</i>
ēneco,	ēnecāre,	ēnecui and ēnecāvī,	ēnectum,	<i>to kill off.</i>

2. Verbs of the 3d Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

WITH CONNECTING-VOWEL.

fremo,	fremere,	fremui,	fremĭtum,	<i>to growl.</i>
gemo,	gemere,	gemui,	gemĭtum,	<i>to groan.</i>
vomo,	vomere,	vomui,	vomĭtum,	<i>to vomit.</i>
gigno (GEN),	gignere,	genui,	genĭtum,	<i>to beget.</i>
molo,	molere,	molui,	molĭtum,	<i>to grind.</i>
strepo,	strepere,	strepui,	strepĭtum,	<i>to roar.</i>
ac-cumbo,	ac-cumbere,	ac-cubui,	ac-cubitum,	<i>to lie down.</i>

WITHOUT CONNECTING-VOWEL.

alo,	alere,	alui,	altum, alitum,	<i>to nourish.</i>
colo,	colere,	colui,	cultum,	<i>to cultivate.</i>
cōnsulo,	cōnsulere,	cōnsului,	cōnsultum,	<i>to advise.</i>
occulo,	occulere,	occului,	occulĭtum,	<i>to conceal.</i>
sero,	serere,	—	—	<i>to string (out.)</i>
dē-sero,	dē-serere,	dē-serui,	dē-sertum,	<i>to abandon.</i>
rapio,	rapere,	rapui,	raptum,	<i>to snatch.</i>
corripio,	corripere,	corripui,	corruptum,	<i>to seize.</i>
frendo (co),	frendere,	(frendui),	frēsum, fressum,	<i>to gnash.</i>

So, too, depso, *I knead*, texo, *I weave*, and pinso, *I pound*. See p. 89.

WITHOUT SUPINE.

tremo,	tremere,	tremui,	<i>to tremble.</i>
sterto,	stertere,	stertui,	<i>to snore.</i>
excello, ante-, prae-,	ex-cellere,	ex-cellui, excelsus,	<i>to surpass.</i>
compesco,	compescere,	compescul,	<i>to curb in.</i>
con-cino, oc-, prae-,	con-cinere,	con-cinui,	<i>to sing together.</i>

3. Verbs of the 4th Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

amiclo,	amicire,	(amicni, amixi,	amiclum,	to clothe.
aperio,	aperire,	aperui,	apertum,	to open.
operio,	operire,	operui,	opertum,	to cover up.
salio,	salire,	salui,	saltum,	to leap.
désilio,	désillire,	désilui,	désaultum,	to leap down.

4 Verbs of the 3d Conjugation which pass over into the 4th in the Perfect and Supine.

peto,	petere,	petivi,	petitum,	to seek.
rudo,	rudere,	rudivi,	ruditum,	to roar.
cupio,	cupere,	cupivi,	cupitum,	to desire.
sapio,	sapere,	sapivi. sapui,	—	to taste.
quaero, quaeso,	quaerere,	quaesivi,	quaesitum,	to seek.
conquiro,	conquirere,	conquisivi,	conquistum,	to hunt up.
arcesso,	arcessere,	arcessivi,	arcessitum,	to send for.

Sq, too, lacesto, *I tease*, capesso, *I lay hold of*.

incesso,	incessivi, incessi,	to attack.
----------	---------------------	------------

5. Verbs which vary between the 2d and the 4th Conjugation.

cileo, or cio,	cière, ciere,	ci-vi,	citum, ci-tum,	to arouse.
concitus,	percitus,	excitus, or excitus,	but accitus.	

6. Verbs which pass over into the 3d Conjugation in the Supine.

sepello,	sepellire,	sepelivi,	sepultum,	to bury.
poto,	pôtare,	pôtâ-vi,	pô-tum (PO) or pôtâtum,	to drink.

B.

Change of Conjugation as result of Reduplication.

do,	dare,	dedi,	datum,	to give, put.
-----	-------	-------	--------	---------------

N. B. Everywhere a-short, except in dâs, *thou givest*, and dâ, *give thou*. Like do, are conjugated the compounds with dissyllabic words, such as :

circum-do, <i>I surround</i> ;	satisdo, <i>I give bail</i> ;	pessum-do, <i>I ruin</i> ;	vénum-do, <i>I sell</i> ;	a.g. :
circumdo,	circumdare,	circumdedit,	circumdatum,	to surround.

But the compounds of dare with monosyllabic words pass over wholly into the 3d Conjugation.

abdo,	abdere,	abdidi,	abditum,	to put away.
addo,	addere,	addidi,	additum,	to put to.
condo,	condere,	condidi,	conditum,	to put up (found).
dêdo,	dêdere,	dêdidi,	dêditum,	to give up.
êdo,	êdere,	êdidi,	êditum,	to put out.
îndo,	îndere,	îndidi,	înditum,	to put in.
perdo,	perdere,	perdididi,	perditum,	to ruin.
prôdo,	prôdere,	prôdidi,	prôditum,	to betray.
reddo,	reddere,	reddidi,	redditum,	to give back.
trâdo,	trâdere,	trâdidi,	trâditum,	to give over.
vêndo,	vêdere,	vêdidi,	vêditum,	to put up to sale.
crêdo,	crêdere,	crêdidi,	crêditum,	to put forth.
abscondo,	abscondere,	abscondidi, -didi,	absconditum,	to put far away.

sto,	stāre,	steti,	stātum,	to stand.
adsto,	adstāre,	adsteti,	—	to stand by.
cōsto,	cōstāre,	cōsteti,	—	to stand fast.
insto,	instāre,	insteti,	—	to stand upon.
obsto,	obstāre,	obsteti,	—	to stand out against.
persto,	perstāre,	persteti,	—	to stand firm.
praesto,	praestāre,	praesteti,	—	to stand ahead.
resto,	restāre,	resteti,	—	to stand over.
disto,	distāre,	—	—	to stand apart.
exsto,	exstāre,	—	—	to stand out.
circumsto,	circumstāre,	circumsteti,	—	to stand round.

Like circumsto, all compounds of stāre with dissyllabic prepositions have -steti in the Perfect, *e.g.* :

antesto, *I am superior*; intersto, *I am between*; supersto, *I stand upon*.

In other compounds the reduplicated form sisto is used, which, as a simple verb, has the transitive meaning, *I (cause to) stand*, but in its compounds, the intransitive, *I stand*.

sisto,	sistere,	(stiti),	statum,	to (cause to) stand.
cōsisto,	cōsistere,	cōstiti,	cōstitum,	to come to a stand.
dēsisto (ab-),	dēsistere,	dēstiti,	dēstitum,	to desist.
exsisto,	exsistere,	exstiti,	exstitum,	to stand up.
obsisto,	obsistere,	obstiti,	obstitum,	to take a stand against.
resisto,	resistere,	restiti,	restitum,	to resist.
assisto,	assistere,	adstiti,	—	to stand near.
īnsisto,	īnsistere,	īnstiti,	—	to persevere.
circumsisto,	circumsistere,	circumsteti,	—	to surround.

C.

Change of conjugation as result of strengthened Present.

1. Present strengthened by N.

li-n-o,	linere,	li-vi, or lēvi,	li-tum,	to besmear.
si-n-o,	sinere,	si-vi,	si-tum,	to let.
dē-si-no,	dēsīnere,	desivi (ii),	desitum.	to leave off.
pō-no (po-si-no),	pōnere,	pos-uī,	posi-tum,	to place.

2. Present strengthened by sc-: compare E.

pa-sc-o,	pascere,	pā-vi,	pas-tum,	to grass (transitively).
crē-sc-o,	crēscere,	crē-vi,	crē-tum,	to grow.
quīē-sc-o,	quīēscere,	quīē-vi,	quīē-tum,	to rest.
sue-sc-o, as-, con-,	suescere,	suē-vi,	suē-tum,	to accustom one's self.
nō-sc-o,	nōscere,	nō-vi,	(Adj. nōtus),	to learn to know.
cognōsco,	cognōscere,	cognōvi,	cognitum,	to recognize.

So the other compounds of nōsco, except ignōsco, *I pardon, take no notice of*, which has Sup. ignōtum (ignōtus, unknown).

D.

Some Stems in R (-er) experience change of conjugation as result of Metathesis, which also is a strengthening of the Present.

ter-o,	terere,	tri-vi,	tri-tum,	to rob.
ser-o,	serere,	sē-vi,	sē-tum,	to sow.
cōsero,	cōserere,	cōsēvi,	cōnsitum,	—
sper-n-o,	spernere,	sprē-vi,	sprē-tum,	to despise.
cer-n-o,	cernere,	(crē-vi),	(crē-tum),	to separate.
dēcerno,	dēcernere,	dēcrēvi,	dēcrētum,	to decide.
ster-n-o,	sternere,	strā-vi,	strā-tum,	to strew.

E.

INCHOATIVE VERBS.

The inchoatives are formed } by adding to the vowel-stems sc.
 " " consonant-stems isc.

Their Perfect and Supine are formed from the pure stem.

inveterā-sco,	inveterāscere,	inveterā-vī,	inveterā-tum,	to grow old.
nā-scor,	nāscī	—	nā-tus sum,	to be born.
exolē-sco,	exolēscere,	exolē-vī,	exolē-tum,	to get one's growth.

Like exolēscō, decline obolēscō, *I grow old*; but abolēscō, *I disappear*, has abolitum.

adolē-sco,	adolescere,	adolē-vī,	adol-tum,	to grow up.
convale-sco,	convalescere,	convale-vī,	convale-tum,	to get well.
incalē-sco,	incalēscere,	incal-vī,	—	to get warm.
exardē-sco,	exardēscere,	exar-sī,	exar-sum,	to take fire.
sci-sco,	sciscere,	sci-vī,	sci-tum,	to decree.
adsci-sco,	adsciscere,	adsci-vī,	adsci-tum,	to take on.
obdormi-sco,	obdormiscere,	obdormi-vī,	obdormi-tum,	to fall asleep.
concup-isco,	concupiscere,	concup-ivī,	concupi-tum,	to long for.
(cup-ere),				
resip-isco,	resipiscere,	resipivī,	—	to come to one's senses.
(sap-ere),				
ingem-isco,	ingemiscere,	ingem-vī,	—	to sigh.
reviv-isco,	reviviscere,	revi-xī,	revi-tum,	to come to life again.

Inchoative Verbs may be formed likewise from Nouns or Adjectives.

nōtē-sco,	nōtēscere,	nōtū,	(nōtus),	to become known.
ēvānē-sco,	ēvānēscere,	ēvānū,	(vānus),	to disappear.
vesperā-sco,	vesperāscere,	—	(vesper),	to become evening.
irā-scor,	irāscī,	irātus sum,	(ira),	to grow angry.

CHANGE OF VOICE.

Neuter-Passive Verbs.

audio,	audīre,	ausus sum,	to dare.
gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gāvīsus sum,	to rejoice.
soleo,	solēre,	solitus sum,	to be wont.
fido,	fidere,	fisus sum,	to trust.
[revertor,	revertī,	reverti, reversus sum],	to turn back.

REMARKS.—1. Some Active Verbs have a Perfect Passive Participle with Active meaning, e.g. : coenātus, *one who has dined*, from coenāre, *to dine*; pransus, *having breakfasted*, from prandeo, *I breakfast*; pōtus, *drunken*, from pōto, *I drink*; jūrātus, *having taken the oath, sworn*, from jūro, *I swear*; conjūrātus, *a conspirator*, from conjūro, *I conspire*. Many such are used purely as Adjectives: considerātus, *circumspect*, from considero; cautus, *wary*, from caveo, *I beware*.

2. The Perfect Participle of many Deponent Verbs has both Active and Passive meaning: adeptus, adipiscor, *having acquired, or being acquired*; comitātus, comitor, *I accompany*; expertus, experior, *I try*; exsecrātus, exsecror, *I curse*; imitātus, imitor, *I copy*; meritus, mereor, *I deserve*; opinātus, necopinātus, opinor, *I think*; pactus, paciscor, *I contract*; partītus, partior, *I distribute*; sortītus, sortior, *I cast lots*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

A.

Irregular in the formation of the tense-stems are :

1. Two Verbs in a P-mute of the 3d conjugation, viz. :

clepo, *I filch.*

lambo, *I lark.* See p. 88.

2. Six Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a K-mute, which have, in spite of the short stem-syllable, the Perfect in -sī, viz. :

rego, *I keep right.*

tego, *I cover in.*

coquo, *I bake,* and the compounds.

lego, *I read.*

lacio, *I lure.*

specio *I spy,* (-ligo, -licio, -spicio).

From lego, however, only diligo, *I love* ; intellego, *I understand* ; and nêgligo, *I neglect* ; are irregular. The other compounds are regular. See p. 85.

3. Two Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a T-mute, which, in spite of the short stem-syllable, have the Perfect in -sī, viz. :

divido, *I part.*

quatio, *I shake.* See p. 87.

4. Four Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a T-mute, which, in spite of long stem-syllable, have the Perfect in -ī, viz. :

cūdo, *I hammer* ; sīdo, *I sit* ; strīdeo, *I whistle* ; verto, *I turn.* See p. 87.

5. Assimilation between MS and BS occurs in the Perfect and Supine of

premo,

premere,

pressī,

pressum,

to press.

jubeo,

jubēre,

jussī,

jussum,

to order.

6. Special irregularities occur in :

bibo,

bibere,

bibī,

(bibitum),

to drink.

rauco,

raucēre,

rausī,

rausum,

to be hoarse.

maneo,

manēre,

mansī,

mansum,

to remain.

meto,

metere,

messī,

messum,

to mow.

reor,

rērī,

ratus sum,

to think.

moriōr,

morī,

mortuus sum,

to die.

mētior,

mētīrī,

mēnsus sum,

to measure.

7. Formed from different tense-stems, are

fero,

ferre,

tulī,

lātum,

to bear.

tollo,

tollere,

austulī,

sublātum,

to lift

See p. 98.

B.

Irregular in the conjugation of the Present-stem.

1. orior, oriri, ortus sum, to *arise*.

Present: orior, oreris, oritur, orimur, orimini, oriuntur.

The other forms of the Present-stem follow the Fourth Conjugation. *Gerund:* oriundus. The compounds follow the simple verb, except adoriri, *rise up at, attack*, which follows the Fourth Conjugation throughout.

2. ire, to *go*. Stem I, which, before a, o, u, becomes e.

INDICATIVE.	<i>Present.</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Sing. 1. eo, <i>I go</i> .		eam, <i>I be going</i> .
2. Ia,		ea,
3. it.		eat.
Pl. 1. Imus,		eamus,
2. Itis,		eatīs,
3. eunt.		eant.

	IMPERATIVE.	
Sing. 2. I, <i>go thou</i> .		Ito, <i>thou shalt go</i> .
3.		Ito, <i>he shall go</i> .
Pl. 2. Ite, <i>go ye</i> .		Itōte, <i>ye shall go</i> .
3.		eunto, <i>they shall go</i> .

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
I-bam, <i>I went</i> .	<i>Imperfect.</i>	I-rem, <i>I were going</i> .
Ibo, <i>I shall go</i> .	<i>Future.</i>	
	<i>Perfect.</i>	
Ivi (Compos. II, a. g., exil), <i>I have gone</i> .		Iverim, <i>exierim</i> .
	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
Iveram, <i>exieram</i> .		Ivissem, <i>exissem</i> .
	<i>Future Perfect.</i>	
Ivero, <i>exiero</i> .		

SUPINE: i-tum, to *go*.

PARTICIPLES: *Pres. lens.* G. euntis. *Fut. Act.* iturus.

GERUND: eundū.

The Passive occurs in some of the compounds: circumiri.

Compounds of eo are: vëneo, *I am for sale*, and pereō, *I perish*, which serve as passives to vëndo and perdo, whose regular passives occur only in the forms venditus, vendendus, and perditus.

The compound ambio, *I solicit*, follows the Fourth Conjugation throughout.

Like ire, to *go*, are conjugated quire, to *be able*, and nequire, to *be unable*, which, however, are usual only in Present Indicative and Subjunctive.

3. ferre, to bear.

The connecting-vowel E is dropped before T, S, and R.

Active.

INDICATIVE

Sing.	1. fer-o, <i>I bear.</i>
	2. fer-a,
	3. fer-t,
Pl.	1. fer-i-mus,
	2. fer-tis,
	3. fer-u-nt.

Present. •

SUBJUNCTIVE.

fer-a-m, <i>I be bearing.</i>
fer-ā-a,
fer-a-t,
fer-ā-mus,
fer-ā-tis,
fer-a-nt.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing.	2. fer, <i>bear thou.</i>
	3.
Pl.	2. fer-te, <i>bear ye.</i>
	3.

fer-to, <i>thou shalt bear.</i>
fer-to, <i>he shall bear.</i>
fer-tōte, <i>ye shall bear.</i>
fer-u-nto, <i>they shall bear.</i>

PARTICIPLE: fer-ē-ns, *bearing.*

INFINITIVE: fer-re, *to bear.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

fer-ē-bam, *I was bearing.*

Imperfect.

fer-rem, *I were bearing.*

fer-a-m, *I shall bear.*

Future.

Perfect.

tuli, *I have borne.*

SUPINE: lātum,

PARTICIPLE, Future Active: lātūrus.

INDICATIVE.

Passive.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Sing.	1. fer-o-r, <i>I am borne.</i>
	2. fer-ri-a,
	3. fer-tur,
Pl.	1. fer-i-mur,
	2. fer-i-mini,
	3. fer-u-ntur.

Present.

fer-a-r, <i>I be borne.</i>
fer-ā-ri-a,
fer-ā-tur,
fer-ā-mur,
fer-ā-mini,
fer-a-ntur.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing.	2. fer-re, <i>be thou borne.</i>
	3.
Pl.	2. fer-i-mini, <i>be ye borne.</i>
	3.

fer-tor, <i>thou shalt be borne.</i>
fer-tor, <i>he shall be borne.</i>
fer-u-ntor, <i>they shall be borne.</i>

INFINITIVE: fer-ri, *to be borne.*

GERUND: fer-e-ndus.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

fer-ē-bar.

Imperfect.

fer-fer.

Future: fer-a-r. Perfect: lātus sum.

COMPOUNDS.

affero,	afferre	attuli,	allātum,	<i>to bear to.</i>
aufero,	auferre	abs-tuli,	ab-lātum,	<i>to bear away.</i>
cōnfero,	cōnferre	con-tuli,	collātum,	<i>to collect.</i>
differo,	differre	dis-tuli,	di-lātum,	<i>to put off.</i>
effero,	efferre	ex-tuli,	ē-lātum,	<i>to carry out.</i>
offerō,	offerre	ob-tuli,	ob-lātum,	<i>to offer.</i>
suffero, <i>I undergo</i> , has the Perfect sustinui (sustuli, sublātum, being appropriated to tollō. See p. 96).				

4. *edere, to eat.*

In certain forms the connecting-vowels I and E are dropped before S, T, and R. D before S (R) is dropped or assimilated as SS, and before T becomes S.

INDICATIVE.		Present.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Sing.	1. edo, <i>I eat.</i>		edam, <i>I be eating.</i>
	2. edis, <i>thou.</i>		edās,
	3. edit, <i>est.</i>		edat.
Pl.	1. edimus,		edāmus,
	2. editis, <i>estis,</i>		edātis,
	3. edunt.		edant.
IMPERATIVE.			
Sing.	2. ede, <i>thou.</i>	edito, <i>esto, thou shalt eat.</i>	
	3.	edito, <i>esto, he shall eat.</i>	
Pl.	2. edito, <i>esto, eat ye.</i>	editōte, <i>estōte, ye shall eat.</i>	
	3.	edunto, <i>they shall eat.</i>	

INFINITIVE.
edere, esse, to eat.

INDICATIVE.	Imperfect.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
edēbam, <i>I ate.</i>		ederem, <i>essem, I were eating.</i>

5. *fieri, to become,*

Is conjugated in the Present, Imperfect, and Future, according to the 4th Conjugation, but receives a connecting-vowel in the Subjunctive Imperfect and in the Infinitive, viz., *fi-e-rem, I were becoming; fi-e-rī, to become.* In these forms the I is short, but elsewhere it is long, even before another vowel.

The Infinitive ends in *-rī*, and the whole Verb in the Present-stem is treated as the Passive to *facio, I make.* The rest of the Passive is formed regularly from *facio.*

Active.

Pres. facio, I make.

Imperf. faciēbam, I made.

Future. faciam, I shall make.

Perfect. feci.

Pluperf. feceram.

F. Perf. fecero.

Passive.

IND. fio, I am made, I become.

fis, fit, (fimus, fitis) fiunt.

SUB. fiam, fias, fiat, etc.

IND. fiēbam, I was made, I became.

SUB. fierem, fierēs, etc.

fiam, I shall be made or become.

factus sum.

factus eram.

factus ero.

INF. Perf. factum esse, to have become.

Fut. futurum esse or fore.

REMARK.—The compounds of *facio*, with Prepositions, change the *a* of the stem into *i*, and form the Passive regularly from the same stem: perficio, *I achieve*, Pass. perficior; interficio, Pass. interficior, *I am destroyed*. But when compounded with words other than prepositions, *facio* retains its *a*, and uses *fio* as its Passive:

patefacio, *I lay open*, Pass. pateffio; calefacio, *I warm*, Pass. caleffio.

The accent remains the same as in the simple verb: calefaciā, *thou warmest*.

6. Velle, *to be willing*; nolle, *to be unwilling*; malle, *to be willing rather*.

INDICATIVE—Present.

volo,	nōlo,	mālo,
vīs,	nōn vīs,	māvīs,
vult.	nōn vult.	māvult.
volumus,	nolumus,	mālumus,
vultis,	nōn vultis,	māvultis,
volunt.	nolunt.	mālunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE—Present.

velim,	nōlim,	mālim,
vellā,	nōllā,	māllā,
velit.	nōllit.	māllit.
velimus,	nōllimus,	māllimus,
vellitis,	nōllitis,	māllitis,
velint.	nōllint.	māllint.

INDICATIVE—Imperfect.

volēbam.	nōlēbam.	mālēbam.
----------	----------	----------

SUBJUNCTIVE—Imperfect.

vellem.	nōllem.	māllem.
---------	---------	---------

Future.

volam,	nōlam,	mālam,
volēs.	nōlēs.	mālēs.

Perfect.

volui.	nōlui.	mālui.
--------	--------	--------

IMPERATIVE: Sing. nōli, nōllito. Pl. nōllite, nōllitōte, nōlanto.

PARTICIPLE: volēns. nōlēns.

C.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1. ajo, *I say, ay*.

Pres. IND. 1. ajo, 2. ais, 3. ait. Pl. 3. ajunt.

SUBJ. ajās, ajat. ajant.

Imperf. IND. ajēbam, &c. PART. ajēns (as adj.), affirmative.

2. *inquam, I say, quoth I.*

<i>Pres. IND.</i>	Sing. 1. <i>inquam,</i>	2. <i>inquis,</i>	3. <i>inquit.</i>
	Pl. 1. <i>inquimus,</i>	2. <i>inquitis,</i>	3. <i>inquunt.</i>
<i>Imperf. IND.</i>	3. <i>inquirebat.</i>	<i>Fut. Sing.</i>	2. <i>inquies,</i> 3. <i>inquolet.</i>
<i>Perf. Sing.</i>	2. <i>inquisti,</i>	3. <i>inquit.</i>	Pl. 2. <i>inquistis.</i>

3. *fārī, to speak.*

<i>Pres. fatur.</i>	<i>Fut. fabor, fabitur.</i>	<i>Perf. fatus sum, &c.</i>	<i>SUP. fātū.</i>
<i>IMPER. fāre.</i>	<i>GERUND. fandī, fandō.</i>	<i>PART. Pres. fāns, fantis.</i>	

4. *avēre, salvēre, valēre.*

<i>avē,</i>	<i>salvē, hail thou!</i>	<i>valē, farewell.</i>
<i>avēte,</i>	<i>salvēte, hail ye!</i>	<i>valēte, farewell.</i>
<i>avēre,</i>	<i>salvēre.</i>	<i>valēre.</i>
	<i>age, agite, come!</i>	<i>apage, begone!</i>

5.

In use only in the Perfect-stem are *coepl, I have begun*, to which *incipio* serves as a Present; *meminī, I remember*; *ōdī, I hate*; *nōvī, I know*; *consuēvī, I am wont*.

<i>coepl, I have begun.</i>	<i>SUBJ. coeperim.</i>
<i>coeperam,</i>	<i>coepissem.</i>
<i>coepero,</i>	<i>INF. coepisse, to have begun.</i>
<i>meminī, I remember.</i>	<i>meminerim.</i>
<i>memineram,</i>	<i>meminissem.</i>
<i>meminero,</i>	<i>meminisse, to remember.</i>

IMPERATIVE. Sing. mementō. Pl. mementōte.

<i>ōdī, I hate.</i>	<i>ōderim.</i>
<i>ōderam,</i>	<i>ōdissem.</i>
<i>ōdero,</i>	<i>ōdisse, to hate.</i>

coepl and *ōdī* have passive forms of the same meaning:

<i>coeptus sum, I have begun.</i>	<i>ōsus sum, I hate.</i>
<i>nōvī (from nōsco, see p. 94), I know, am aware.</i>	
<i>cōnsuēvī cōnsuesco, I am wont.</i>	

PART SECOND.

SYNTAX OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE.

BY

BASIL L. GILDERSLEEVE.

SYNTAX.

SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

§ 1. SYNTAX treats of the formation and combination of sentences.

Sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound*.

A simple sentence is one in which the necessary parts occur but once.

The necessary parts of the sentence are *the subject* and *the predicate*.

The predicate is that which is said of the subject. .

The subject is that of which the predicate is said.

The most simple form of the sentence is the finite verb: su-m, *I am*; docē-s, *thou teachest*; scrib-i-t, *he writes*.

§ 2. The subject of the finite verb is always in the Nominative Case.

REMARKS.—1. The use of the Nominative in Latin is the same as in English.

2. The Vocative Case (the case of direct address) is not influenced by the structure of the sentence, and does not enter as an element into Syntax, except in the matter of Concord. The form differs from the Nominative in the Second Declension only, and even there the Nominative is sometimes used instead, especially in poetry. The interjection Ō is prefixed to give emphasis to the address.

§ 3. The subject may be a noun or pronoun, or some word or phrase used as a noun:

Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe; ego vōbīs vērūm dicam, I will tell you what is true; victi in

servitūtem rediguntur, the vanquished are reduced to slavery; sapiens rēs adversās nōn timet, the wise man does not fear adversity; contendisse decōrum est (Ov.), it is honorable to have struggled; magnum est beneficium nātūrae, quod necesse est mori, it is a great boon of nature that it is absolutely necessary (for us) to die; vidēs habet duās syllabās, "vides" has two syllables.

REMARKS.—1. Masculine and Feminine adjectives and participles are used as substantives, chiefly in the plural number: *pauperēs, the poor; divitēs, the rich; doctī, the learned*; whereas, in the singular, the substantive is generally expressed: *vir bonus, a good man; homo doctus, a learned person; mulier peregrina, a foreign woman*. When persons are not meant, a substantive is understood: *cānī (capilli), grey hairs; calida (aqua), warm water; dextra (manus), right hand*.

2. Neuter adjectives and participles are freely employed as substantives in both numbers: *medium, the midst; extrēmum, the end; reliquum, the residue; futūrum, the future; bonum, good; bona, blessings, possessions; malum, evil; mala, misfortunes*.

3. Adjectives of the Second Declension are sometimes used as neuter substantives in the Genitive case, after words of quantity or pronouns: *aliquid bonī, something good; nihil malī, nothing bad*. Adjectives of the Third Declension are thus employed only in combination with those of the Second. (§ 168, R. 1.)

* *Vixque tenet lacrimās quia nīl lacrimabile cernit.*—Ov.

She scarcely keeps back her tears, because she desries nothing to shed tears for.

4. Instead of the neuter adjective, the word *rēs, thing*, is frequently used, and especially in the Genitive Plural, in order to avoid ambiguity. *Bonōrum* might be Masculine or Neuter. Hence, *bonārum rērum, of blessings*.

5. In Latin, the Plural of abstract nouns occurs more frequently than in English: *adventūs imperātōrum, the arrival(s) of the generals* (because there were several generals, or because they arrived at different times). Pluralizing abstract nouns makes them concrete: *fortitūdīnēs, gallant actions; formidīnēs, bugbears; irae, quarrels*.

6. Other plural expressions to be noted are: *nivēs, snow-flakes; granīnēs, hail-stones; pluviae, streams of rain; ligna, billets of wood; carnēs, pieces of meat; aera, articles of bronze*; also symmetrical parts of the human body: *cervicēs, neck; pectora, breast*.

The Plural is freely used in poetry :

* *Ōia si tollās, periēre.* Cupīdinis arcūs.—Ov.

If you abolish holidays, Cupid's bow (and arrows) are ruined.

* *Corpora magnanimō satis est prōstrāsse leōni.*—Ov.

It is enough to prostrate the body before the great-hearted lion.

7. Very common is the First Person Plural for the First Person Singular: *librum de senectute ad te misimus*, *we (I) have sent you a treatise on old age*:

* *Sitque memor nostri necne, referte mihi.*—Ov.

Bring me back (word) whether she remembers us (me) or no.

8. The Singular, in a collective sense, is also used for the Plural, but more rarely: *fāba*, *beans*; *porcus*, *pig* (meat); *gallina*, *fowl* (as articles of food); *vestis*, *clothing*; *hostis*, *the enemy*; *miles*, *the soldiery*; *pedes*, *infantry*; *eques*, *cavalry*.

COPULA.

§ 4. When the predicate is not in the form of a verb, the so-called Copula is generally employed, in order to couple the adjective or substantive with the subject. The chief copula is the verb *SUM*, *I am*.

REMARK.—Strictly speaking, the copula is itself a predicate, as is shown by the translation when it stands alone or with an adverb: *est Deus*, *there is a God*, *God exists*; *recte semper erunt res*, *things will always be (go on) well*. Other copulative verbs are: *videri*, *to seem*; *apparere*, *to appear*; *manere*, *to remain*; *nasci*, *to be born*; *fieri*, *to become*; *evadere*, *to turn out*; *creari*, *to be created*; *diligī*, *to be chosen*; *putari*, *to be thought*; *haberi*, *to be held*; *dicti*, *to be said*; *appellari*, *to be called*; *nominari*, *to be named*.

RULE.

Verbs of SEEMING, REMAINING, BECOMING, with the Passiv of verbs of MAKING and CHOOSING, SHOWING, THINKING, and CALLING, take the same case after them as before them: *nemo perfectus nascitur*, *no one is born perfect*; *Aristides iustus appellatur*, *Aristides is called just*; *fortissimus vir cognitus es*, *you are known as a gallant man*; *Servius Tullius rex est declaratus*, *Servius Tullius was declared king*.

§ 5. The person is not expressed, unless it is emphatic, as

for example in contrasts: *amāmus parentēs, we love our parents; ego rēgēs ējēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis, I drove out kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*

§ 6. Verbs that have no definite subject are called *Impersonal Verbs*, chiefly relating to the state of the weather: *tonat, it thunders; fulgurat, fulminat, it lightens; pluit, it rains; ningit, it snows.*

REMARKS.—1. The passive of intransitive verbs (§§ 11, 15) is often used impersonally: *vivitur, people live; curritur, there is a running.* The subject is contained in the verb itself: *sic vivitur=sic vīta vivitur, such is life.* In the same way explain *taedet, it wearies; miseret, it moves to pity; piget, it disgusts; pudet, it puts to shame; interest, refert, it concerns; oportet, it behooves.*

2. All other so-called Impersonal Verbs have an Infinitive for a subject.

§ 7. The Copula is often omitted in saws and proverbs, in short questions, in rapid changes, and in tenses compounded with participles:

Summum jūsum summa injūria, the height of right is the height of wrong (compare: “the greater the truth, the greater the libel);” **nēmo malus fēlix* (Juv.), *no bad man is happy; quid dulcius? what sweeter?*

CONCORD.

RULE.

§ 8. The verbal predicate	} agrees with its subject	{ in number and person.
The adjective predicate		
	} agrees with its subject	{ in number, gender, and case.

The substantive predicate agrees with its subject in case.

Substantiva mōbilia are treated as adjectives, and follow the number and gender of the subject.

Ego rēgēs ējēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis (§ 5); *vērae amicitiae sempiternae sunt*, true friendships are abiding; *dōs est decem talenta*, the dowry is ten talents; *ūsus magister est optimus*, practice is the best teacher; *Athēnae sunt omnium doctrinārum inventricēs*, Athens is the inventor of all branches of learning.

REMARK.—The natural relation may be preferred to the artificial, the nearer to the more remote. Hence—

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Nouns of multitude often take the predicate in the plural: *cētera clāssis fūgērunt*, the rest of the fleet fled. •

2. The adjective predicate often follows the natural gender of the subject: *capita conjuratiōnis virgīs caesi sunt*, the heads of the conspiracy were flogged.

3. The copula often agrees with the number of the predicate (the wages of sin is death): * *Amantium irae* (§ 3, R. 5,) *amōris integratio est* (TER.), lovers' quarrels are love's renewal.

§ 9. The neuter adjective is often used as the substantive predicate of a masculine or feminine subject: *triste lupus stabulis* (VIRG.), the wolf is destruction to the folds; *omnium rerum* (§ 3, R. 4) *mors est extrēmum*, death is the end of all things.

§ 10. The demonstrative pronoun is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate: *hic mūrus ahēneus esto* (HOR.), let this be a wall of brass; *ea erat cōfessio*, that was an acknowledgment. But when the pronoun is the predicate: *id sum quod fui*, I am what I was.

FORMS OF THE VERBAL PREDICATE.

VOICES OF THE VERB.

§ 11. The Active Voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject.

Verbs are called *Transitive* when their action goes over to an object; *Intransitive* when their action does not go beyond the subject: *occidere*, to fell — to kill (Transitive); *occidere*, to fall (Intransitive).

REMARK.—Transitive verbs are often used intransitively, and Intransitive verbs transitively: *suppeditāre*, to supply (Transitive), to be on hand (Intransitive); *queror*, I complain (Intransitive), I complain of (Transitive.)

§ 12. The Passive Voice denotes that *the subject receives the action of the verb*. The instrument is put in the Ablative, the agent in the Ablative with *AB* (*Ā*): *trahimur omnēs studiō laudis*, we are all drawn by the desire of praise; *Pompēus ā Caesare victus est*, Pompey was conquered by Cæsar.

REMARKS.—1. Intransitive verbs of Passive signification are construed as Passives: *famē perire*, to perish of hunger; *ā paucis interire*, to die at the hands of a few.

2. When the instrument is considered as an agent, or the agent as an instrument, the constructions are reversed: *vinci ā Voluptāte*, to be overcome by Pleasure; * *Poenō milite portās frangimus* (Juv.), we break down the gates with the Punic soldiery (as if with a battering-ram).

§ 13. The person in whose interest an action is done is put in the Dative. Hence, the frequent inference that the person interested is the agent. In prose, this construction is found chiefly in the Perfect Passive. With the Gerundive, however, it is the reigning combination: *rēs mihi tōta prōvīsa est*, I have had the whole matter provided for; * *Carmina scripta mihi sunt nulla* (Ov.), poems—I have none written (I have written no poems); *nihil est hominī tam timendum quam invidia*, there is nothing that a man has to fear to the same extent as envy (§§ 150 151).

§ 14. The Direct Object of the Active Verb (the Accusative Case) becomes the Subject of the Passive: *Alexander Dārīum vīcit*, Alexander conquered Darius; *Dārīus ab Alexandrō victus est*, Darius was conquered by Alexander.

§ 15. The Indirect Object of the Active Verb (Dative Case) cannot be properly used as the Subject of the Passive. The Dative remains unchanged, and the verb becomes a Passive in the Third Person Singular (Impersonal Verb).

PARADIGM.

mihi invidetur, <i>I am envied,</i>	} ab aliquo, <i>by some one.</i>
tibi invidetur, <i>thou art envied,</i>	
eī invidetur, <i>he is envied.</i>	
nōbīs invidetur, <i>we are envied,</i>	
vōbīs invidetur, <i>you are envied,</i>	
eīs invidetur, <i>they are envied.</i>	

§ 16. Reflexive relations, when emphatic, are expressed as in English: omne animal sē ipsum diligit, *every living creature loves itself.*

§ 17. When the reflexive relation is more general, the Passive is employed: labor, *I bathe, I bathe myself*; * Cūrā-bar propriis herbis (Ov.), *I was trying to cure myself by my own herbs.*

§ 18. The Passive is often used to express an action which the subject suffers or causes to be done to itself: trahor, *I let myself be dragged*; tondeor, *I have myself shaved.*

* Ipse docet quid agam; fās est et ab hoste docērī.—Ov., *He himself teaches (me) what to do; it is (but) right to let one's self be taught even by an enemy.*

§ 19. The Deponent is a Passive form which has lost, in most instances, its Passive (or Reflexive) signification. It is commonly translated as a Transitive or Intransitive Active: hortor, *I am exhorting* (Trans.); morior, *I am dying* (Intrans.).

§ 20. Reciprocal relations ("one another") are expressed by inter, *among*, and the Personal Pronouns, nōs, *us*; vōs, *you*; sē, *themselves*: inter sē amant, *they love one another.*

TENSES OF THE VERB.

§ 21. The Tenses express the relations of time, embracing:

1. The stage of the action (duration in time).
2. The period of the action (position in time).

The first tells whether the action is *going on*, or *finished*. The second tells whether the action is *past*, *present*, or *future*.

Both these sets of relations are expressed by the tenses of

the Indicative mood. The tenses of the other moods express duration in time only.

§ 22. There are six tenses in Latin :

1. The *Present*, denoting *continuance* in the *present*.
2. The *Future*, denoting *continuance* in the *future*.
3. The *Imperfect*, denoting *continuance* in the *past*.
4. The *Perfect*, denoting *completion* in the *present*.
5. The *Future Perfect*, denoting *completion* in the *future*.
6. The *Pluperfect*, denoting *completion* in the *past*.

§ 23. An action may further be regarded simply as *attained*, without reference to its *continuance* or *completion*. This gives rise to the *indefinite* stage of the action, which has no especial tense-form. It is expressed by the Present tense for the present ; by the Future and Future Perfect tenses for the future ; and by the Perfect tense for the past.

Of especial importance is the *Indefinite* or *Historical Perfect* (Aorist), which differs materially in syntax from the *Definite* or *Pure Perfect*.

§ 24. TABLE OF TEMPORAL RELATIONS.

Indicative Mood.

	CONTINUANCE.	COMPLETION.	[ATTAINMENT.
<i>Present:</i>	scribo, <i>I am writing.</i>	scripsi, <i>I have written.</i>	scribo, <i>I write.</i>
<i>Future:</i>	scribam, <i>I shall be writing.</i>	scripsero, <i>I shall have written.</i>	scribam, (scripsero), <i>I shall write.</i>
<i>Past:</i>	scribēbam, <i>I was writing.</i>	scripseram, <i>I had written.</i>	scripsi, <i>I wrote.]</i>

PRESENT TENSE.

§ 25. The Present Tense is used, as in English, *of that which is going on now*, and *of statements that apply to all time*: *teneo lupum*, *I am holding the wolf*; **Probitās laudatur et alget* (JUV.), *honesty is praised and freezes*.

§ 26. The idea of continuance is sometimes more clearly

brought out by employing the phrases "*trying to*," "*being to*." Hence, we say that the Present is used of *attempted* and *intended* actions: *venditat domum, he is trying to sell the house*; *venditatur domus, the house is to be sold, is for sale*.

§ 27. The Present Tense is used more rarely than in English *in anticipation of the future*: *sī vincimus, omnia tūta erunt, if we conquer (= shall conquer), every thing will be safe*.

§ 28. The Present Tense is used far more frequently than in English, *as a lively representation of the past* (Historical Present): *ille respondet, he answers*; *iste mittit, the fellow sends*; = *respondit, answered, misit, sent*.

REMARK.—DUM, *while*, commonly takes the Historical Present: *dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesari nūntiatum est, while these things were transacting in the conference, word was brought to Caesar*. When DUM can be translated *so long as*, it takes the Perfect: *vixit, dum vixit, bene (TER.), he lived well while (so long as) he lived*. (§ 357).

§ 29. IDIOM.—The Present is used in Latin of actions *that are continued from the past into the present*, especially with JAM, *now*; JAM DIŪ, *now for a long time*; JAM PRIDEM, *now long since*. In English, we translate by a Perfect of continuance: *jam diū flāgitat, he has long been demanding*.

PURE PERFECT TENSE.

§ 30. The Pure Perfect expresses *Completion in the Present*, and is used as in English:

1. Of an action *that is over and gone*: *filium ūnicum habeo imō habuī, I have an only son—nay, I have had one; dixi, I have said, I have done*.

2. Far more frequently of the *present result of a past action*: *mē recondidī et forēs clausī, I have hidden myself, and shut (my) door* [I am still hidden, my door is still shut.].

REMARKS.—1. The Pure Perfect is often translated by the English Present: *nōvī, I have become acquainted with, I know*; *memini, I have recalled,*

I remember ; ōdī, *I have conceived a hatred of, I hate* ; cōnsuēvī, *I have made it a rule, I am accustomed*.

2. As the Present stands for the Future, so the Perfect stands for the Future Perfect: Brūtus sī cōservātus est, vicimus, *Brutus!—if HE is saved, we are victorious, we (shall) have gained the victory*. Ōtia si tollās, periūre Cupīdinis arcūs. Ov. (§ 3, R. 6).

3. HABEO, *I have*, with the Accusative of the Perfect Participle Passive, is not a mere circumlocution for the Perfect, but lays peculiar stress on the maintenance of the result: habeo statūtum, *I have resolved, and hold to my resolution* ; habeo perspectum, *I have perceived, and I have full insight*.

4. On the Perfect in frequentative sentences see §§ 356, 367.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

§ 31 a. The Imperfect Tense denotes *Continuance in the Past*: pugnābam, *I was fighting*.

The Imperfect is employed to represent *manners, customs, situations* ; to describe and to particularize.

The Imperfect and the Historical Perfect serve to illustrate one another. The Imperfect dwells on the *process* ; the Historical Perfect states the *result*. The Imperfect counts out the *items* ; the Historical Perfect gives the *sum*.

The two tenses are often so combined that the general statement is given by the Historical Perfect, the particulars of the action by the Imperfect:

Verrēs in forum vēnit ; ardēbant oculi ; tōtō ex ōre crūdēlitās ēminēbat, *Verrēs came into the forum, his eyes were blazing, cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance*.

§ 31 b. The Imperfect is used of *attempted and interrupted, intended and expected* actions: vēnditābat domum, *he was engaged in selling the house, he was trying to sell the house, he intended to sell the house, he would have sold the house* ; vēnditābātur domus, *the house was for sale, was to be sold, would have been sold* ; ipse Postumius quī dēdēbātur, *that very Postumius, who was to be given up*.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

§ 32. The Pluperfect denotes *Completion in the Past*, and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun.

The Latin Pluperfect does not differ essentially from the English.

REMARK.—On the Pluperfect in frequentative sentences see § 356, 357).

§ 33. When the Perfect is translated by an English Present (§ 30, R. 1), the Pluperfect is translated by an English Imperfect: *nōveram, I had become acquainted with, I knew*; *memineram, I remembered*; *ōderam, I hated*; *cōnuēveram, I was accustomed*.

HISTORICAL PERFECT.

§ 34. The Historical or Indefinite Perfect (Aorist) states a *past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained*; *vēnī, vidī, vīcī, I came, saw, conquered*.

The Historical Perfect is the great narrative tense of the Latin language, and is best studied in long connected passages, and by careful comparison with the Imperfect. (§ 31.)

The Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Historical Perfect are called *Historical Tenses*; the Present, Pure Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect, *Principal Tenses*.

FUTURE TENSE.

§ 35. The Future Tense denotes *Continuance in the Future*: *scrībam, I shall be writing*.

The Future Tense is also used to express indefinite action in the Future: *scrībam, I shall write*.

§ 36. In subordinate clauses the Latin language is more exact than the English in the expression of future relations. * *Dōnec eris fēlix, multōs numerābis amīcōs (Ov.)*; *so long as you shall be (are) happy, you will count many friends*.

* *Quidquid eris, mea semper eris* (Ov.), *whatever you shall be (are), you will always be mine own.*

REMARK.—Observe especially the verbs *VOLO*, *I will*, and *POSsum*, *I can*: * *Ōdero si poterō, si nōn, invitus amābo* (Ov.), *I will hate if I shall be able (can); if not, I shall love against my will*; * *Si qua volet regnāre diū, delūdāt amantem* (Ov.), *if a woman shall wish (wishes), to reign long, she must mock her lover.*

§ 37. The Future is used in an imperative sense, as in English: * *Tū nihil dīcēs* (Hor.), *you shall, are to, say nothing; do you say nothing.* (§ 66, 7.)

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

§ 38. The Future Perfect is the Perfect, both Pure and Historical, transferred to the future, and embraces both *completion* and *attainment*: *fēcero*, *I shall have done it, or I shall do it* (once for all); *vīdero*, *I will see to it*; *prōfēcerit*, *it will prove profitable.*

§ 39. In subordinate sentences, the Latin language is more exact than the English in the use of the Future Perfect.

When one action precedes another in the future, the action that precedes is expressed by the Future Perfect: *quī prior* (§115) *strinxerit ferrum, ejus victōria erit*, *who first draws the sword, his shall be the victory.*

REMARK.—The Future Perfect is frequently used in *VOLO*, *I will*; *nōlo*, *I will not*; *possum*, *I can*; *licet*, *it is left free*; *libet*, *it is agreeable*; *placet*, *it is the pleasure*; whereas the English idiom familiarly employs the Present: *si potuero, faciam vōbis satis*, *if I can, I shall satisfy you.*

§ 40. The Future Perfect in both clauses denotes simultaneous accomplishment or attainment; one action involves the other: *quī Marcum Antōnium oppresserit* is *bellum cōnfecerit*, *he who shall have crushed (crushes) Mark Antony, will have finished (will finish) the war.*

§ 41. When the Perfect is used as a Present, the Future

Perfect is used as a Future: *nōvero, I shall know; cōsuēverō, I shall be accustomed; *Ōdero, sī poterō* (§ 30, R.).

PERIPHRASTIC TENSES.

§ 42. The Periphrastic Tenses are formed by combining the various tenses of *ESSE, to be*, with participles and verbal adjectives.

I. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

§ 43. The Periphrastic Tenses of the Active are chiefly combinations of *ESSE* and its forms with the so-called Future Participle Active. The Future Participle is a verbal adjective denoting *capability* and *tendency*. The translation is very various:

1. *Scriptūrus sum, I am about to write, I am to write, I purpose to write, I am likely to write.*
2. *Scriptūrus eram, I was about to write, &c.*
3. *Scriptūrus fui, I have been or was about to write* (often — *I should have written*). (§ 38†, R, 3).
4. *Scriptūrus fueram, I had been about to write, &c.*
5. *Scriptūrus ero, I shall be about to write, &c.*
6. *Scriptūrus fuero, I shall have made up my mind to write, &c.* (of course very rare).

REMARK.—The Subjunctives and Infinitives, *scriptūrus sim, scriptūrum esse, scriptūrus fuerim, and scriptūrum fuisse*, are of great importance in dependent discourse. (§ 298).

II. PERIPHRASTIC TENSES OF THE PASSIVE.

§ 44.

A.—Of Future Relations.

The phrases:

1. *Futūrum est, it is to be, }
erat, } was to be, } ut, that, with the subjunctive,
fuit, }*

are employed—but rarely: *futūrum erat ut pugnārētur, there was going to be a fight.*

2. Also in *eō est*, *it is on the point*,
 erat, } *was*,
 fuit, } *ut that* (of), with the

subjunctive, to denote the precise moment of time when the action of the verb begins: in *eō erat ut urbs caperetur*, *the city was on the point of being taken*.

Both sets of expressions can be used in the Active as well.

REMARK.—The Infinitive of the first set becomes absolutely necessary when the verb forms no Supine or Future Participle: fore ut discās, *that you will learn*; fore ut discātur, *that it will be learned*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Posse, *to be able*; velle, *to be willing*; which may be used as Future Infinitives.

B.—Of Past Relations.

§ 45. The Perfect Participle Passive is used in combination with *sum*, *I am*, and *fui*, *I have been*, *I was*, to express the Pure Perfect and Historical Perfect of the Passive Voice. *Eram*, *I was*, and *fuera*, *I had been*, stand for the Pluperfect; and *ero*, *I shall be*, and *fuero*, *I shall have been*, for the Future Perfect. See Paradigms.

REMARK.—*Fui* is the *favorite* form when the participle is frequently used as an adjective: *convivium exornatum fuit*, *the banquet was furnished forth*; *fui* is the *necessary* form when the Perfect denotes that the action is over and gone: *amatus fui*, *I have been loved* (but I am loved no longer).

C.—Periphrastic Conjugation—Passive Voice.

§ 46. The combination of the Tenses of *ESSE*, *to be*, with the Gerundive (verbal in *-ndus*), is called the Periphrastic Conjugation of the Passive, and follows the laws of the simple conjugation.

REMARK.—The Gerundive has the form of a Present Participle Passive (*-ndus* for *-ntus*). That which is done (as a rule) is that which is expected. Comp. § 218, R, 4.

amandus sum, *I have to be loved.*
 amandus eram, *I had to be loved.*
 amandus fui, *I have had (had) to be loved.*
 amandus fueram, *I had had to be loved.*
 amandus ero, *I shall have to be loved.*
 amandus fuero, *I shall have had to be loved.*

TENSES IN LETTERS.

§ 47. In letters, the Roman writer takes the point of view of the receiver, and employs the Imperfect or Historical Perfect for the Present, and the Pluperfect for the Perfect: scribēbam, scripsī, *I am writing, I write* [the receiver: scribēbat, scripsit, *he was writing, he wrote*]; scripseram, *I have written* [the receiver: scripserat, *he had written*]; nihil habēbam quod scriberem, *I have nothing to write.*

REMARK.—The rule is not rigidly observed.

MOODS.

§ 48. Mood signifies manner. The mood of a verb signifies the manner in which the predicate is said of the subject.

There are three moods in Latin:

1. The Indicative,
2. The Subjunctive, -
3. The Imperative.

REMARK.—The Infinitive form of the verb is generally, but improperly, called a mood.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 49. The Indicative Mood represents the predicate *as a reality*. Its use coincides, in the main, with the English Indicative.

IDIOMS.

REMARKS.—The Latin language expresses *possibility* and *power*, *obligation* and *necessity*, and abstract relations generally, as *facts*; whereas, our

translation often *implies the failure to realize*. Such expressions are: *dēbeo, I ought, it is my duty*; *oportet, it behooves*; *necesse est, it is absolutely necessary*; *possum, I can, I have it in my power*; *convenit, it is fitting*; *pār, aequum est, it is fair*; *infinitum, endless*; *difficile, hard to do*; *longum, tedious*; and the Indicative form of the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation:

Ad mortem tē dūcī oportēbat, it behoove you to be led to execution (you were not), *you ought to have been led off*; *Volumnia dēbuit in tē officiōsior esse, it was Volumnia's duty to be more attentive to you, V. ought to have been, &c.*; *potuit diligentius facere, it was in her power to do it more carefully, she might have done it more carefully*; *quae conditio nōn accipienda fuit? what terms ought not to have been accepted?* *longum est. utilitatēs persequi asinōrum, it would be tedious to rehearse the useful qualities of asses* (I will not do it).

* *Vulnera quae fecit dēbuit ipse pati* (OV.), *the wounds which he inflicted he ought to have suffered himself*.

* *Nōne fuit melius dominae pervincere mōrēs?* (PROP.) *would it not have been better to conquer your lady-love's habits?*

EXCEPTION.—*Dēbēbam, it was my duty*, and *poteram, it was in my power*, and the like, are sometimes used in opposition to a present state of things: *dēbēbam, I ought* (but do not); *poteram, I could* (but do not).

* *At, inquis, poterās melius mala ferre silendō* (OV.), "*but,*" you say, "*you could* (you do not) *bear your misfortunes better by keeping silent.*"

§ 50. In general relative expressions, such as the double formations, *QUISQUIS, no matter who*, *QUOTQUOT, no matter how many*, and all the forms in *-CUNQUE, -ever*, the Indicative is employed where we may use in English a Subjunctive or its equivalent: *quisquis est, no matter who he is, be, may be*; *quālecunque est, whatever sort of thing it is, be, may be*. * *Quidquid id est, timeo Danaōs et dōna ferentēs* (VIRG.), *whatever it (may) be, I fear the Danai even when they bring presents*; * *Ōre trahit quodcunque potest atque addit acervō* (HOR.), *it drags with its mouth whatever it can, and adds to the heap*; * *Quidquid eris, mea semper eris*.—OV. (§ 36).

§ 51. The Indicative is sometimes used in the leading clause of conditional sentences (the Apodosis), thereby implying the certainty of the result, had it not been for the interruption. The Indicative generally precedes: *perierāmus, we had per-*

ished, were lost, had been lost, should undoubtedly have been lost; praec̄lārē vicerāmus, nisi Lepidus recēpisset Antōnium, we had (should have) gained a brilliant victory, had not Lepidus received Antony. (§ 384, R, 3).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 52. The Subjunctive Mood represents the predicate *as an idea*, as something merely conceived in the mind (abstracts from reality).

REMARK.—The Latin Subjunctive is often translated into English by the auxiliary verbs *may, can, must, might, could, would, should*. When these verbs have their full signification of *possibility* and *power, obligation* and *necessity* (§ 49), they are represented in Latin by the corresponding verbs: *may, can, might, could*, by the forms of *posse, to be able, licet, it is left free*; *will* and *would*, by *velle, to will, to be willing*; *must*, by *dēbeo* or *oportet* (of moral obligation), by *necesse est* (of absolute obligation).

* Cāsibus insultās quōs *potes* ipse patī (Ov.), *you insult misfortune which it is possible for you to suffer yourself (which you may possibly suffer yourself).*

§ 53. The realization of the idea may be *in suspense*, or it may be *beyond control*. The first, or purely Ideal Subjunctive, is represented by the Present and Perfect Tenses; the second, or Unreal, is represented by the Imperfect and Pluperfect.

REMARKS.—1. The Subjunctive, as the name implies (*subjungo, I subjoin*), is largely used in dependent sentences, and will be treated at length in that connection.

2. The following modifications of the above principles must be carefully observed:

a. The Romans, in lively discourse, often represent the unreal as ideal, that which is beyond control as still in suspense. (§ .)

b. In transfers to the past, the Imperfect represents the Present, and the Pluperfect the Perfect Subjunctive (§ 295).

The idea may be a *view*, or a *wish*. Hence, the division of the Subjunctive into the *Potential* and the *Optative*.

POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

§ 54. For the present (or future) time, the Present or Perfect Subjunctive is employed; for the past, the Imperfect; the last chiefly in the ideal second person (an imaginary “you”).

The Potential Subjunctive occurs:

1. In softened assertions.

2. In modest questions, which expect negative answers:

*Velim, I should wish; nōlim, I should be unwilling; mālim, I should prefer; dicās, you would say; crēdās, you would believe; dicat, dixerit aliquis, some one may undertake to say, go so far as to say. * Nil ego contulerim jūcundō sānis amīcō (HOR.), (there is) nothing I should prefer, (while I am) in (my) senses, to an agreeable friend; * quis tulerit Gracchōs dē sēditionē querentēs? (JUV.) who could bear the Gracchi complaining of rebellion? [No one].*

Vellem, I should have wished (it is too late); nōllem, I should have been unwilling; māllem, I should have preferred; crēderēs, you would have believed; putārēs, you would have thought; quid aliud faceret? what else was he to do? [Nothing].

REMARK.—The Potential Subjunctive, as a modified form of the Indicative, is often found where the Indicative would be the regular construction. So after QUAMQUAM (§ 399 R).

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

§ 55. (1.) The Subjunctive is used as an *Optative* or *wishing* mood. The regular negative is *NĒ*. The expression is further strengthened by *UTINAM* (literally = *how*), *would that*, *UTINAM NĒ*, *UTINAM NŌN*, and in poetry, by *ō sī, oh! if—*

§ 56. The Present and Perfect Subjunctive are used *when the decision is in suspense*; the Imperfect and Pluperfect *when the decision is adverse*.

Hoc ōmen āvertat Jūppiter, *may Jupiter avert this omen; utinam modo cōnāta efficere possim, may I but have it in my power to accomplish my endeavors; utinam vĕra invenīre possem, would that it were in my power to find out the truth (but it is not); utinam susceptus nōn essem, would I had not been born.*

* Atque utinam vīvat sed nōn moriatur in illis (Ov.), *may he live, but not die, among them.*

* Ō mihi praeteritōs referat sī Jūppiter ānnōs (VIRG.), *O if Jupiter were to bring me back the years that are gone by!*

Other phases of the Optative Subjunctive.

§ 57. (2.) The Optative Subjunctive is used in *asseverations*; *ita vīvam ut maximōs sūmptūs facio, as I live, I am spending very largely (literally, so may I live as I am making very great outlays).*

§ 58. (3.) The Subjunctive is used as an *Imperative*—

1. In the First Person, which has no Imperative form;

2. In the Second Person, chiefly of an imaginary “you;”

§§ 67, 68.

3. In the Third Person. (The negative is *nē*.)

Amēmus patriam, let us love our country; nē difficilia optēmus, let us not desire what is hard to do; nē trānsieris Ibērum, do not cross the Ebro; suum quisque (§ 107) nōscat ingenium, let each man try to become acquainted with his own turn of mind.

REMARKS.—1. The Present Subjunctive is employed when stress is laid on the *continuance of the action*; the Perfect when stress is laid on the *completion*. Hence, in total prohibitions, the Perfect Subjunctive is the favorite form. (§ 67.)

2. The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are occasionally used in like manner of actions that ought to have been done in the past (§ 49, Rem.): *commovērentur=commovērī dēbēbant, they ought to have been moved; nē poposcissēs, you ought not to have demanded.*

§ 59. (4.) The Subjunctive is used as a *concessive*: *sit fūr, (granted that) he be a thief; fēcerit sī ita vīs, (suppose) he have*

done it, if you will (have it so); *darēs hanc vim Marcō Crassō, suppose you had given this virtue to Marcus Crassus; dedissēs huic animō pār corpus, suppose you had given him a body* (that was) *a match for his mind.*

This use is next of kin to the conditional.

REMARK.—On the Tenses of the Subjunctive, see the Tenses of the Moods (§ 72).

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 60. The Imperative Mood *demands realization*. The tone of the demand varies, and may appear as an *order*, an *exhortation*, a *permission*, an *entreaty*.

§ 61. The Imperative has two forms, commonly known as the Present and the Future Imperative. The Present Imperative has only the Second person; the Future Imperative has both Second and Third persons. The First Person is represented by the Subjunctive.

REMARK.—All Imperatives look forward to the future. Hence, the common nomenclature is unfortunate.

§ 62. The First (or Present) Imperative looks forward to immediate fulfilment (Absolute Imperative):

Special: *patent portae; prōficiscere, the gates are open; depart.*

General: *Jūstitiam cole et pietātem, cultivate justice and piety.*

§ 63. The Second (or Future) Imperative looks forward to contingent fulfilment (Relative Imperative), and is chiefly used in laws, legal documents, maxims, and the like:

* *Signa tibi dicam, tū condita mente tenētō (VIRG.), I will tell you the signs—do thou* (thereupon) *keep them stored in your mind; rēgiō imperiō duo sunt, there shall be two* (officers) *with royal power; cōsulēs appellantor, they shall be called consuls; nēminī parento, they are to obey no one; illis salūs populi suprēma lēx esto, to them the welfare of the people must be the paramount law; coelestia semper spectātō, always look to heavenly things.*

NEGATIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE.

§ 64. The regular negative of the Imperative is **NĒ** (**NĒVE**, **NEU**), which is found with the Second Imperative; with the First Imperative, in poetry only.

* *Tū nē cēde malis sed contrā audentior itō* (VIRG.), *do thou not yield to misfortunes, but go more boldly (than ever) to meet them*; *hominem mortuum in urbe nēve sepelito nēve ūrito, thou shalt not bury nor burn a dead man in the city*; *impius nē audēto plācāre dōnīs iram deōrum, the impious man must not dare attempt to appease by gifts the anger of the gods.*

PERIPHRASES.

§ 65. **CŪRĀ UT**, *take care that*, **FAC UT**, *cause that*, **FAC**, *do*, with the subjunctive, are common circumlocutions for the Positive Imperative.

CAVĒ NĒ, *beware lest*, and **CAVĒ** with the subjunctive, and **NŌLĪ**, *be unwilling*, with the Infinitive for the Negative or Prohibitive Imperative.

Cūrā ut quam primum (§ 117) *veniās, manage to come as soon as possible*; *fac habeās spem bonam, do have good hope*; *cavē festinēs, do not be in a hurry*. * *Nēve puellārum lacrimās moveāre cavētō* (OV.), *beware of letting yourself be moved by girls' tears*. * *Nōlī vexāre: quiescit* (JUV.), *don't disturb her: she's sleeping*.

REPRESENTATIVES OF THE POSITIVE IMPERATIVE.

§ 66. Instead of the Positive Imperative, may be employed:

1. The Second Person of the Future Indicative;
2. The Third Person of the Present Subjunctive:

Faciēs, ut sciam, let me know; *vivēs, live on*. * *Quod quis habet dominae cōferat omne suae* (OV.), *let a man give every thing that he has to his lady-love*. * *Quaedam cum primā resecantur crīmina barbā* (JUV.), *let some faults be trimmed with the first beard*.

REPRESENTATIVES OF THE NEGATIVE IMPERATIVE.

§ 67. Instead of the Negative (Prohibitive) Imperative, may be employed:

The Second Person of the Perfect Subjunctive, with *nē*;

The Second Person of the Future, with *nōn*;

The Third Person of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with *nē*:

Hoc facito, hoc nē fēceris, this do, that leave undone; nōn cessābis, you shall not be idle; puer tēlum nē habeat, a boy is not to have a deadly weapon; nē metus quemquam cēperit, let not fear take possession of any one.

REMARK.—The negative *nōn* is often used in poetry for *nē*, and *neque*, *neq* for *nēve*, *neu*, **Aut nōn tentāris aut perſice* (Ov.), *either do not try* (at all), *or effect* (your object). **Nec, si quem fallēs, tu perjūrāre timēto* (Ov.), *nor if you* (shall try to) *deceive a man, do you fear to forswear yourself.*

§ 68. The Second Person Singular of the Present Subjunctive is used both positively and negatively; but in prose, only of an imaginary subject ("you"):

Injūriās fortūnae dēfugiendō relinquās, the wrongs of fortune you may escape by flight. **"Actum" ajunt "nē agās" (Ter.), "You must not do," they say, "what has been (already) done."*

§ 69. Passionate questions are equivalent to a command: *nōn tacēs? won't you hold your tongue? quīn tacēs? why don't you hold your tongue?*

**Cūr nōn ut plēnus vitāe convīva recēdis?—Lucr. Why do you not withdraw as a guest sated with life?*

§ 70.

SUMMARY OF IMPERATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS.

Positive.

2d P. *audī, hear thou; audīto* (legal); *audiēs; audiās* (ideal 2d Person).

3d P. *audīto* (legal), *let him hear; AUDIAT.*

Negative.

2d P. *nē audi*, *hear not* (poetic); *nē audīto* (legal); *nōn audiēs*; *nē audiās* (ideal); *NĒ AUDĪVERIS*; *NŌLĪ AUDĪRE*.

3d P. *nē audīto* (legal); *NĒ AUDIAT*; *NĒ AUDĪVERIT*.

TENSES OF THE MOODS AND VERBAL NOUNS.

§ 71. The Indicative alone expresses directly the period of time (§ 21). The other moods and verbal nouns express the stage of the action *directly*, the period of time *indirectly*.

§ 72. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive have to do with *continued* action, the Perfect and Pluperfect with *completed* action. The Perfect Subjunctive is also used to express the *attainment*. See § 304.

§ 73. The Subjunctive has no future, owing to its close relationship to that tense, which it often represents in dependent discourse (§ 297).

§ 74. The Imperative is necessarily future. § 61, R.

§ 75. The Present Infinitive has to do with *continued* action. It is the common form of the Infinitive, used as a noun.

The Perfect Infinitive has to do with *completed* action, and is also used to express *attainment*.

§ 76. As a noun, the Perfect Infinitive is comparatively little used. As a subject, it is found chiefly in abstract phrases and fixed expressions: **Contendisse* decōrum est (Ov.), *to have struggled is honorable*; *quiesse* melius erit, *it will be better to have kept, to be, quiet*. So with *decurit*, *it became*; *oportuit*, *it behooved*; and the like (§ 49). *Tunc decuit flēsse*, *that was the time when it would have been becoming to weep*. As an object, it is found only in the poets (after the fashion of the Greek Aorist Infinitive): **Frātrēs tendentēs opācō Pelion imposuisse Olympō* (HOR.), *the brothers striving to pile Pelion on shady Olympus*.

§ 77. The Present Infinitive represents the Present Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Imperfect after a Histori-

cal Tense: dico eum venīre, *I say that he is coming*; dicēbam eum venire, *I said that he was coming*.

The Perfect Infinitive represents the Perfect and Imperfect Indicative after a Principal Tense: dico eum vēnisse, *I say that he came, has come, used to come*; and the Pluperfect Indicative after a Historical Tense: dixi eum vēnisse, *I said that he had come*.

REMARK.—Memini, *I remember*, when use of personal experience commonly takes the present; Memini Pamphilum mihi narrāre, *I remember Pamphilus telling me, that Pamphilus told me*.

§ 78. The Present Participle (Active) denotes *continuance*: the Perfect Passive, *completion* or *attainment*.

REMARK.—The Perfect Participle is often used where we should employ a Present: ratus, *thinking*; complexus, *embracing*; hortātus, *exhorting*.

§ 79. The Future Participle is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with sum, *I am*, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

II.—SIMPLE SENTENCE EXPANDED.

The sentence may be expanded by the *multiplication* or by the *qualification* of the subject.

A.

1. MULTIPLICATION OF THE SUBJECT.

Concord.

RULE.

§ 80. The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the plural number: jū et injūria nātūrā dijūdicantur,

right and wrong are distinguished by nature ; pater et avus mortuū sunt, father and grandfather are dead.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. The common predicate may agree with a singular subject when that subject is the nearest or the most important (My strength and my heart *faileth*—Ps. lxxiii. 26) : *Homērus fuit et Hēsiodus ante Rōmam conditam, Homer lived and (so did) Hesiod before the founding of Rome.*

2. Two abstracts in combination, when they are conceived as a unit, take a singular verb (When distress and anguish *cometh* upon you—Prov. i. 27) : *senātus populusque Rōmānus intelligit, the senate and people of Rome perceives = Rome perceives.*

RULE.

§ 81. When the genders of combined subjects are different, the adjective predicate takes either the strongest gender or the nearest. In things with life, the masculine gender is the strongest; in things without life, the neuter. When things with life and things without life are combined, the gender of the things with life is preferred :

Pater mihi (§ 143) et māter mortuū sunt, father and mother have been lost to me by death ; mūrus et porta dē coelō tacta erant, wall and gate had been struck by lightning ; convicta est Messalina et Silius, Messalina was convicted and (so was) Silius ; rēx rēgiaque clāssis prōfecti sunt, the king and the king's fleet set out.

REMARK.—On the use of the neuter as a predicate see § 9 : *ira et avāritia imperiō potentiōra erant, anger and avarice were stronger (things) than command ; nox atque praeda hostēs remorāta erant, night and plunder (were the things that) had delayed the enemy.*

§ 82. A singular subject combined with another word by *cum, with*, is treated sometimes as a singular, sometimes as a plural : *Māgo cum omnibus ferē armātis refūgerat, Mago with almost all the armed men had retreated ; Taurus cum quinque vaccis unō ictū fulminis exanimāti sunt, a bull and five cows were killed by one stroke of lightning.*

RULE.

§ 83. When the persons of combined subjects are different, the First Person is preferred to the Second, the Second to the Third: *sī tū et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicero valēmus, if Tullia and you are well, Cicero and I are well.*

 Observe the order of the example. 

EXCEPTION.—In contrasts, and when each person is considered separately, the predicate agrees with the person of the nearest subject: *ego tē, tū mē ferēs, I will endure you, you me; et ego et Cicero meus flāgitābit, My Cicero will demand it and (so will) I.*

2. QUALIFICATION OF THE SUBJECT.

§ 84. The subject may be qualified by giving it an attribute. An attribute is that which serves to give a specific character.

The chief forms of the attribute are:

I. The adjective (*amicus certus, a sure friend*) and its equivalents.

II. The substantive in apposition: *Cicero orātor, Cicero the orator.*

REMARK.—The equivalents of the adjective are: 1. The pronouns, *hic, this, ille, that, &c.* 2. Substantives denoting *rank, age, trade*: *servus homo, a slave person; homo senex, an old fellow; homo gladiātor, a gladiator-fellow; mulier ancilla, a servant-wench.* 3. The genitive (§ 155). 4. The ablative (§ 198). 5. Preposition and case: *excessus ē vitā, departure from life.* 6. Adverbs chiefly with participial nouns: *rectē facta, good actions.* 7. Relative clauses (§ 292).

Concord.

RULE.

§ 85. The Adjective Attribute agrees with its substantive, in gender, number, and case: *vir sapiēns, a wise man; mulier pulchra, a beautiful woman; alta moenia, lofty walls; mei honōris, of my honor; filium tuum, thy son, &c.*

RULE.

§ 86. The common attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest: *all lands and seas, omnēs agrī et maria; agrī et maria omnia.*

REMARKS.—1. The Latin language repeats the common attribute more frequently than the English: *omnēs agrī et omnia maria, all lands and (all) seas.* Generally, the Latin language has a strong tendency to rhetorical repetition.

2. A common surname is put in the plural: M. et Q. Cicerōnēs, *Marcus and Quintus Cicero*; G., Gn., M. Carbōnēs, *Gaius, Gnaeus, (and) Marcus Carbo*; otherwise, M. Cicero et Q. Cicero, *Marcus and Quintus Cicero.*

POSITION OF THE ATTRIBUTE.

§ 87. When the Attribute is emphatic, it is commonly put before the substantive: *fugitivus servus, a runaway slave; (servus fugitivus, a slave that is a runaway).*

REMARK.—The superlatives which denote order and sequence in time and space are often used partitively, and then generally precede their substantive: *summa aqua, the surface of the water; summus mōns, the top of the mountain; vēre primō, primō vēre, in the beginning of spring; in mediā urbe, in the midst of the city.* So also, *reliqua, cētera Graecia, the rest of Greece.*

EXCEPTIONS.—Certain expressions have become fixed formulæ; such as, *civis Rōmānus, Roman citizen; populus Rōmānus, people of Rome.*

§ 88. When the Attribute belongs to two or more words, it is placed sometimes before them all, sometimes after them all, sometimes after the first: *all lands and seas, omnēs agrī et maria; agrī et maria omnia; agrī omnēs et maria.*

PECULIAR FORMS OF THE ADJECTIVE ATTRIBUTE.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

The Demonstrative and other Adjective Pronouns present important peculiarities.

REMARK.—For the sake of convenience, the substantive use will be considered at the same time.

§ 89. *Hic*, *this* (the Demonstrative of the First Person), refers to *that which is nearer the speaker*, and may mean: 1. The speaker himself: *hic homo* = *ego*. 2. The judges in a suit at law: *sī ego hōs nōvī*, *if I know these men* (= the bench). 3. The most important subject immediately in hand: *hic sapiēns dē quō loquor*, *this (imaginary) wise man of whom I am speaking*. 4. That in which the speaker is peculiarly interested: *hoc studium*, *this pursuit of mine, of ours*. 5. That which has just been mentioned: *haec hātenus*, *these things thus far* = *so much for that*. 6. Very frequently, that which is about to be mentioned: *hīs conditionibus*, *on the following terms*. 7. The current period of time: *hic diēs*, *to-day*; *haec nox*, *the night just past or just coming*; *hic mēsis*, *the current month*.

§ 90. *Iste*, *that* (of thine, of yours), refers to *that which belongs more peculiarly to the Second Person*. (Demonstrative of the Second Person): *perfer istam militiam*, *endure that military service of yours*; *adventū tuō ista subsēllia vacuē facta sunt*, *at your approach the benches in your neighborhood were vacated*.

REMARK.—The supposed contemptuous character of *Iste* arises from the refusal to take any direct notice of the Second Person.

§ 91. *Ille*, *that* (the Demonstrative of the Third Person), denotes *that which is more remote from the speaker*, and is often used in contrast to *hic*, *this*: * *Heu quantum haec Niobē Niobā distābat ab illā* (Ov.), *Alas! how far this Niobe differed from that Niobe*. *Ille* may mean: 1. That which has been previously mentioned (often: *ILLE QUIDEM*): *illud quod initiō vōbīs proposuī*, *that which I propounded to you at first*. 2. That which is well known, notorious (often put after the substantive): *testula illa*, *that (notorious) potsherd* = *institution of ostracism*; *illud Solōnis*, *that (famous saying) of Solon's*.

3. That which is to be recalled : *illud* imprimis mirābile, *that* (which I am going to remind you of) *is especially wonderful*.

4. That which is expected : * *Ille* diēs veniet mea quā lūgubria pōnam (Ov.), *the day will come when I shall lay aside* (cease) *my mournful strains*.

§ 92. *HIC* and *ILLE* are used together in contrasts ; as, *the latter—the former, the former—the latter*. When both are matters of indifference the natural signification is observed : *HIC, the latter ; ILLE, the former*. When the former is the more important, *HIC* is *the former, ILLE the latter* :

Ignāvia corpus hebetat, labor firmat ; illa mātūram senectūtem, *hic* longam adolēscēntiam reddit, *laziness weakens the body, toil strengthens it ; the one* (the former) *hastens old age ; the other* (the latter) *prolongs youth*. *Melior tūtiorque* (§ 7) *certa pāx quam spērāta victōria ; haec* in nōstrā, *illa* in deūrum manū est, *better and safer the certainty of peace than the hope of victory ; the former is in our power, the latter in the power of the gods*.

§ 93. *HIC ET ILLE ; ILLE ET ILLE ; ILLE AUT ILLE, this man and* (or) *that man = one or two ; nōn dicam hoc signum ablātum esse et illud, hoc dīco, nullum tē signum reliquisse, I will not say that this image was taken off and that ;* (what) *I say* (is) *this, that you left no image at all*.

REMARK.—The derived adverbs retain the personal relations of *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, *hic*, *here* (where I am) ; *hinc, hence* (from where I am) ; *hūc, hither* (where I am) ; *istūc, there* (where you are) ; *illic there* (where he is), &c.

§ 94. *Is, that*, is the most general demonstrative ; and the regular antecedent of the relative : *mihi obviam vēnit tuus puer ; is mihi lītterās abs tē reddidit, I was met by your servant ; he delivered to me a letter from you ; eum quī palam est adversārius facile cavendō vitāre possis* (§ 54), *a man who is an open enemy you can readily avoid by caution*.

REMARKS.—1. *Is*, as the antecedent of the relative, is often omitted,

chiefly in the Nominative, more rarely in an oblique case: *bis dat qui citō dat, he gives twice who gives in a trice.* (§ 414)

2. *Is*, with a copulative or adversative particle, is used as *he* or *that* in English, for the purpose of emphasis: such expressions are; *ET IS, ATQUE IS, ISQUE, and he too, and that too; NEQUE IS, ET IS NŌN, and he not, and that not; SED IS, but he*, further strengthened by *QUIDEM, indeed; exempla quaerimus et ea nōn antiqua, we are looking for examples, and those, too, not of ancient date; ūnā in domō et eā quidem angustā, in one house and that a narrow one.*

3. *Is* does not represent a noun before a Genitive, as in the English *that of*. In Latin the noun is omitted, or repeated, or a word of like meaning substituted: *flēbat pater dē filiī mortē, dē patris filius, the father was weeping for the death of his son, the son for that of his father; nulla est celeritās quae possit (§ 426) cum animī celeritātē contendere, there is no speed that can possibly vie with that of the mind; M. Coelius tribūnāl suū juxtā G. Trēbōnī sēllam collocāvit, Marcus Coelius placed his chair of office near that of Gaius Trebonius.* (But *HIC, ISTE, and ILLE* can be used before Genitives.)

§ 95. *Akin to is* is the Reflexive Pronoun *SUĪ SIBĪ SE*. Instead of the Genitives *ĒJUS, EŌRUM, EARUM, EŌRUM*, the Possessive of the Reflexive *SUUS, SUA, SUUM*, is employed when reference is made to the subject of the sentence: *Alexander moriēns ānnulū suū dederat Perdiccae, Alexander (when) dying had given his ring to Perdiccas.* * *Quod quis habet dominae cōferat omne suae (Ov.).* (§ 66.)

On the other hand: *Deū agnōscis ex operibus ējus, God you recognize by his works.*

The same principle applies to the other cases of *Is* and of the Reflexive. Hence the general

RULE.

§ 96. The forms of the Reflexive Pronoun are used when reference is made to the subject of the sentence: *ipse sē quisque diligit, everybody loves himself.*

REMARKS.—1. *SUUS*, when used in an emphatic sense (*own, peculiar, proper*), may refer to another case than that of the subject: *Hannibalem*

sui cives ē civitate ējēcērunt, *Hannibal's own countrymen exiled him*; *iustitia suum* cuique distribuit, *justice gives each man that is his own = his due*; * *Inque suos* volui cōgere verba pedēs (Ov.), *I wished to force the words into their proper feet* (places in the verse); *suo* tempore, *at the proper, fitting time*; compare: * *Pugna suum* finem quum jacet hostis habet (Ov.), *a fight has reached its real end when the enemy is prostrated.* (§ 101, R.)

2. In dependent sentences the reflexive is used with reference either to the principal or to the subordinate subject. See § 307.

§ 97. *ĪDEM*, *the same*, is used to unite two or more attributes or predicates on a person or thing.

ĪDEM is often to be translated by *at the same time*; *likewise*, *also*; *yet*, *notwithstanding*.

Cimōn incidit in *eandem* invidiam quam pater, *Cimon fell into the same odium as his father*; *quidquid honestum est idem* est ūtile, *whatever is honorable is also* (at the same time) *useful*; * *Nil prōdest* quod nōn laedere possit (§ 425) *idem* (Ov.), *nothing helps that may not likewise hurt*; *Epicūrus*, quum optimam et praestantissimam nātūram deī dicat esse, negat *īdem* esse in deō grātiā, *although Epicurus says that the nature of God is transcendently good and great, yet* (at the same time) *he says that there is no feeling of kindness in God*; * *Difficilis facilis, jūcundus acerbus, es īdem* (MART.), *hard to deal with (and) easy to deal with, sweet (and) sour, are you at once.*

REMARKS.—1. *The same as* is expressed by *IDEM* with *QUI*, with *ATQUE* or *AC*, with *UT*, with *CUM*, and poetically with the Dative: *eandem Rōināni causam belli cum Bocchō habent quam cum Jugurthā*, *the Romans have the same cause for war with Bocchus as with Jugurtha*; *est animus erga te īdem ac fuit* (TER.), *her feelings toward you are the same as they were*; *disputātiōnem expōnimus eīdem* ferē verbis *ut actum disputātumque est*, *we are setting forth the discussion in very much the same words in which it was carried on*; *tibi mēcum in eōdem pistrinō vivendum*, *you have to live in the same treadmill with me*; * *Invitum quī servat idem facit occidētī* (HOR.), *he who saves a man's life against his will, does the same thing as one who kills him* (— as if he killed him).

2. *ĪDEM* cannot be used with *is*, of which it is only a stronger form (*is + dem*).

§ 98. *IPSE*, *self*, is the distinctive pronoun, and separates a subject or an object from all others: *Ipse feci*, *I myself did it and none other, I alone did it, I did it of my own accord, I am the very man that did it*; *nunc ipsum*, *at this very instant; at this precise moment*; *Conon nōn quaesivī* § (415) *ubi ipse tutō viveret, sed unde praesidiō esse posset cīvibus suīs*, *Conon did not seek a place to live in safely himself, but a place from which he could be of assistance to his countrymen*; *valvae subitō sē ipsae aperuērunt*, *the folding-doors suddenly opened of their own accord*; *Cato mortuus est annīs octōgintā sex ipsīs ante Cicerōnem cōsulem*, *Cato died precisely 86 years before Cicero's consulship*.

REMARK.—Owing to this distinctive character, *IPSE* is often used of *persons* in opposition to *things*; *riders* in opposition to *horses*; *inhabitants* in opposition to the *towns* which they inhabit; the *master* of the house in opposition to his *household*: * *Maxima poena mihi est ipsum offendisse* (Ov.), *it is my greatest punishment to have offended HIM* (the Emperor).

§ 99. *IPSE*, *ET IPSE* (= *etiam*) is used when a new subject takes an old predicate, or a new substantive an old adjective: *Locrī urbs dēsciverat et ipsa ad Poenōs*, *the city (of) Locri had likewise (as well as the other cities) fallen over to the Punics*; *Camillus ex Volscīs in Aequōs trāsiit et ipsōs bellum mōlientēs*, *Camillus went across from the Volscians to the Aequians, who were likewise (as well as the Volscians) getting up a war*.

§ 100. *IPSE* is used to lay stress on the reflexive relation; in the Nominative when the subject is emphatic, in the Oblique Cases when the object is emphatic: *sē ipse laudat*, *he (and not another) praises himself*; *sē ipsum laudat*, *he praises himself (and not another)*; *nōn egeo medicinā*; *mē ipse cōsōlor*, *I do not need medicine; I comfort myself* (I am my only comforter); *omnibus potius quam ipsīs nōbīs cōsuluimus*, *we have consulted the interest of all rather than our own*. Exceptions are common: * *Qui, que aliis cāvit nōn cavet ipse sibī* (Ov.), *and he who took precautions for others takes none for himself*.

REMARK.—The Demonstrative Pronouns *HIC, ISTE, ILLE, IS*, are often strengthened by *QUIDEM*, *indeed*. The sentence often requires that either the demonstrative or the particle be left untranslated: *optāre hoc quidem est, nōn docēre, that indeed is wishing, not teaching; nihil perfertur ad nōs praeter rūmōrēs satis istōs quidem cōstantēs sed adhūc sine auctōre, nothing is brought to us except reports, quite consistent, it is true, but thus far not authoritative.*

Possessive Pronouns.

§ 101. The Possessive Pronouns are more rarely used in Latin than in English, and chiefly for the purpose of contrast or clearness: *manūs lavā et coenā, wash (your) hands and dine; praedia mea tū possidēs, ego aliēnā misericordiā vīvo, you are in possession of my estates (while) I live on the charity of others.*

REMARK.—Observe the intense use of the Possessive in the sense of *property, peculiarity, fitness: suum esse, to belong to one's self; tempore tuō pugnāstī, you have fought at your own time (= when you wished); ego ānnō meō cōsul factus sum, I was made consul in my own year (= the first year in which I could be made consul). Comp. § 96, R. 1.*

Indefinite Pronouns.

§ 102. *QUĪDAM* means *one, a, a certain one* (not more particularly designated): *quīdam rhētor, a certain rhetorician.*

QUĪDAM is often used with or without *QUASI*, *as if*, to modify an expression: *quoddam commūne vinculum, a (certain) common bond; nōn sunt istī audiendī quī virtūtem dūram et quasi ferream quandam esse volunt, those friends of yours are not to be listened to who will have virtue to be hard, and as it were made of iron.*

§ 103. *ALIQUIS* (*ALIQŪI*, p. 43) means, *some one, any one, some one or other; fēcit hoc aliquis tuī similis, some one or other like you did this; aliquī scrūpus, some scruple or other; sum aliquis, aliquid, I am somebody = a person of importance, something = of some weight, opposed to: nullus sum, nihil*

sum, *I am a nobody, nothing*; * *Est aliquid fātale malum per verba levāre*, Ov., *it is something to relieve the fated misfortune by words*.

§ 104. QUIS (QUI, p. 43), fainter than ALIQUIS, is used chiefly in relative sentences and after QUUM, *when*, SĪ, *if*, NĒ, *lest*, NUM, *whether*, QUŌ (the . . § 196). *Nē quid nimis! nothing in excess! Sī quid in tē peccāvi, ignōsce, if I have committed any offence against you, forgive.* * *Quod quis habet dominae cōferat omne suae* (§ 95).

§ 105. QUISPĪAM is rarer than ALIQUIS, but not to be distinguished from it, except that QUISPĪAM is never found in negative sentences: *dixerit quispiam, some one may say*.

§ 106. QUIQUE means *each one*: *laudāti sunt omnēs dōnā-tique prō meritō quisque, all were praised and rewarded, each one according to his desert.* QUIQUE is frequently combined with superlatives and ordinals: *optimus quisque, every good man*; *quintō quōque annō, every fifth year*.

§ 107. QUIQUE is always postpositive: *ipse sē quisque diligit* (§ 96); *suum cuique* (§ 95, R. 1).

§ 108. ALTER and ALIUS are both translated *other, another*, but ALTER refers to number (one of two), ALIUS to kind: *sōlus aut cum alterō, alone or with (only) one other*; *alter Nero, a second Nero*; *Āgēsīlāus claudus fuit alterō pede, Agesilaus was lame of one foot*; * *alterā manū fert lapidem, pānem ostentat alterā*, PLAUT., *In one hand he carries a stone, in the other he holds out bread*; *alter alterum quaerit, one (definite person) seeks another (definite person)*; *alius alium quaerit, one person (of one kind) seeks another (of another kind)*; *alterī, —alterī, one party—another party (already defined)*; *aliī—aliī, some—others*: *Mors nec ad vīvōs pertinet nec ad mortuōs: alterī nullī* (§ 110, R. 2) *sunt, alterōs nōn attinget, Death concerns neither the living nor the dead: the latter are not, the former it will not touch.*

§ 109. QUISQUAM and ULLUS (adjective) mean *any one* (at all), and are used chiefly in negative sentences, in sentences

that imply negation, and in sweeping conditions: *Jūstitia nunquam nocet cuiquam, Justice never hurts anybody*; *Quis unquam Graecōrum rhētorum ā Thūcŷdide quidquam duxit? What Greek rhetorician ever drew any thing from Thucydides* [None]; *Sī quisquam, ille sapiēns fuit, If any one at all (was) wise, he was*; *Est ulla rēs tantī, ut virī bonī et splendōrem et nōmen amittās? Is any thing of such importance as that you should lose (for its sake) the splendid title of a good man?*

§ 110. The negative of **QUISQUAM** is **NĒMO**, *nobody*, which, however, is sometimes used as an adjective: *nemo discipulus, no scholar*. The negative of **ULLUS** is **NULLUS**, *no, none*, which is also used regularly as a substantive in the genitive and ablative instead of **NĒMINIS** and **NĒMINE** (p. 30).

REMARK.—1. On **NEQUE QUISQUAM** and **ET NĒMO**, see § 262.

2. **NULLUS** is used in familiar language instead of **NŌN**: *nullus vēnit, he did not come*.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The adjective attribute further presents peculiarities in the way of comparison.

§ 111. The comparative degree generally takes a term of comparison either with **QUAM**, *than*, or with the Ablative (§195): *Ignōrātio futūrōrum malōrum ūtilior est quam scientia, ignorance of future events is better than knowledge (of them)*. *Tullus Hostilius ferōcior etiam Rōmulō fuit, Tullus Hostilius was fiercer even than Romulus*.

REMARK 1.—The Ablative is used only when the word with **QUAM** would stand in the Nom. or Acc.

Caesar minor est { quam Pompējus, *Caesar is younger than Pompey*.
Pompējō.

Caesarem magis amāmus { quam Pompējum, *we love Caesar more than*
Pompey.
Pompējō.

But—

Caesari magis favēmus quam Pompējō, *we favor Caesar more than Pompey* (§ 436).

2. The Ablative is very common in negative sentences, and is used exclusively in negative relative sentences.

* *Nōn adeō oecidī quamvis dējectus ut inf̄rā tē quoque sim, inferius quō nihil esse potest, Ov., I have not fallen so far, however cast down, as to be beneath you, than whom nothing can be lower.*

3. Measure of difference is put in the ablative. § 194.

4. QUAM is often omitted after PLŪS, *more*, and MINUS, *less*.

Homini miserō plūs quingentōs colaphōs inf̄rēgit (§ 129, R. 1) mihi, Ter., He has administered to me, poor wretch, more than five hundred sound boxes on the ear.

5. On the combination of the comparative with opiniōne, *opinion*, sp̄e, *hope*, and the like. § 195 R, 1.

6. Atque for quam is poetical.

Standard of Comparison omitted.

§ 112. When the standard of comparison is omitted, it is supplied

1. By the context.
2. By the usual or proper standard.
3. By the opposite.

1. *By the context*: Solent rēgēs Persārum plūrēs uxōrēs habēre, *The kings of Persia usually have more wives [than one]*.

2. *By the proper standard*: senectūs est nātūrā loquācior, *old age is naturally rather, (or) too, talkative.*

3. *By the opposite*: nōne fuit melius? *Would it not have been better [than otherwise]?*

Disproportion.

§ 113. Disproportion is expressed by the comparative with QUAM PRŌ, *than for*, and the Ablative, or with UT, *that*, or QUĪ, *who*, and the subjunctive: *Minor caedēs quam prō tantā victōriā, the loss was (too) small for so great a victory; ingenium majus quam ut comparētur, a genius too great to be compared; *Major sum quam cui possit Fortūna nocēre, Ov., I am too great for Fortune possibly to hurt me.*

Two Qualities compared.

§ 114. When two qualities of the same substantive are compared, we find either *MAGIS* and *QUAM* with the positive or a double comparative: *Celer tuus disertus magis est quam sapiens*, *your (friend) Celer is eloquent rather than wise—more eloquent than wise*; *Paulli cōcio fuit vēriōr quam grātiōr populō*, *Paullus's speech was more true than popular*.

REMARK.—There is no distinction to be made between the two expressions. In the latter, the second comparative is merely attracted into the same form as the first. The same rule applies to the adverb: *fortius quam fēlicius*, *with more bravery than good luck*.

§ 115. When but two objects are compared, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison, whereas, in English, the superlative is employed, unless the idea of duality is emphatic: *nātū major, the eldest (of two), the elder*; *nātū minor, the youngest, the younger*; *prior, the first*; *posterior, the last*. Exceptions are rare.

REMARK.—The same rule applies to the interrogative *UTER*, *which of two? (whether?)*: *Quæritur uter dignior sit?* *The question is, which of the two (whether of the twain) is the worthier?* (not *quis, who, which?*)

Superlative.

§ 116. The Latin superlative is generally to be rendered by the English positive, unless a standard of comparison is given: *Quintus Fabius Maximus, Q. F. the Great*. **Tam fēlix ēssēs quam formōsissima vellem*, *OV.*, *I could wish you were as happy as (you are) beautiful*.

Superlative strengthened.

§ 117. The superlative is strengthened by *LONGĒ*, *by far*; *MULTŌ*, *much*; *VEL*, *even*; *ŪNUS*, *ŪNUS OMNIUM*, *one above all others*; *QUAM QUANTUS—POTUIT*, *as—as possible*; *longē hūmānisimī*, *by far the most cultivated*; *vel minima*, *even the smallest things*; *quam æquissimus locus*, *as favorable a position as*

possible (= tam aequus quam aequissimus); urbs ūna mihi amīcissima, *a city friendly above all others to me.*

APPOSITION.

By apposition one substantive is placed by the side of another, which contains it: Cicero ōrātor, *Cicero the orator.*

Concord.

RULE.

§ 118. The word in apposition agrees with the principal word in number and case, and as far as it can in gender: Hērodotus pater historiae, *Herodotus the father of History*; Gen. Hērodoti patris; D. Hērodotō patrī historiae, &c.: Athēnae omnium doctrinārum inventricēs, *Athens the inventor of all branches of learning.* Comp. § 8.

REMARKS.—1. The predicate sometimes agrees with the word in apposition: Corioli oppidum captum est, *Corioli-town was taken.*

2. The Possessive Pronoun takes the Genitive in apposition: nōmen meum absentis, *my name (while) absent*; meā ūnius operā, *by my exertions alone.*

Partitive Apposition.

§ 119. Partitive Apposition is that form of apposition in which a part is taken out of the whole: cētera multitūdo sorte decimus quisque ad supplicium lecti sunt, (of) *the rest of the crowd every tenth man was chosen by lot for punishment.*

Distributive Apposition.

§ 120. Distributive Apposition is that form of apposition in which the whole is subdivided into its parts, chiefly with ALTER—ALTER, *the one—the other*; QUISQUE, *each one*; ALII—ALII, *some—others.* Duae filiae altera occisa altera capta est, (of) *two daughters, the one was killed, the other captured.*

The Partitive Genitive is more commonly employed than either of these forms of apposition.

Mihi nomen est.

§ 121. Instead of the apposition with *NŌMEN*, *name*, the name of the person is more frequently attracted into the Dative.

My name is Cicero { 1. *Mihi Cicerōnī nomen est*; most common.
2. *Mihi nōmen Cicero est*; less common.
3. *Mihi nōmen Cicerōnis est*; least common. (§ 156.)

§ 122. Sometimes an accusative stands in apposition to a whole preceding sentence: *admoneor ut aliquid etiam dē sepulchrā dicendum existimem*; *rem nōn diffīcilem*, *I am reminded that something is to be said about burial—an easy matter.*

Predicative Attribution and Predicative Apposition.

§ 123. Any case may be followed by the same case in Predicative Attribution or Apposition, which differ from the ordinary Attribution or Apposition in translation only:

NOMINATIVE: *Filius salvus rediit.*

Ordinary Attribution: *The well son returned.*

Predicative Attribution: *The son returned well—(He was well when he returned).*

Hercules juvenis leōnem interfēcit.

Ordinary Apposition: *Hercules the young man slew a lion.*

Predicative Attribution: *Hercules, when a young man slew a lion—(He was a young man when he slew a lion.)*

GENITIVE: *Potestās ejus adhibendae uxōris*, *The permission to take her to wife.*

DATIVE: *Amicō vivō nōn subvēnistī*, *You did not help your friend (while he was) alive.*

ACCUSATIVE: *Hercules cervam vivam cēpit.*

Ordinary Attribution: *Hercules caught a living doe.*

Predicative Attribution: *Hercules caught a doe alive.*

ABLATIVE: *Athēniēnsēs Miltiade duce ūsī sunt*, *The Athenians employed Miltiades as their leader.*

REMARKS—1. Victōrēs rediērunt may mean, *the conquerors returned*, or *they returned conquerors*; and a similar predicative use is to be noticed in *idem*, *the same*; *Idem abeunt qui vēnerant*, *they go away just as they had come* (literally, *the same persons as they had come*).

2. Notice especially such phrases as: ante Cicerōnem cōsulem, *before Cicero as consul*, i.e., *before Cicero's consulship*.

3. Do not confound the "as" of apposition with the "as" of comparison—UT, QUASI, TANQUAM (comp. § 460).

4. When especial stress is laid on the Adjective or Substantive predicate, in combination with the verbal predicate, it is well to resolve the sentence into its elements: Themistoclēs ūnus restitit, *Themistocles alone withstood*, i. e., *Themistocles was the only one that withstood*. Argonautae primī in Pontum Euxinum intrāvērunt, *the Argonauts first, were the first, who entered the Euxine (Black) Sea—were the first to enter the Black Sea*. *Una salūs victis nullam sperāre salutē, VIRG., *The only safety which the vanquished have, is to hope for none*; *Fragilem trucī commisit pelagō ratē primus, HOR., *He was the first to trust his frail bark to the wild waves*.

5. The English idiom often uses the adverb and adverbial expressions instead of the Latin adjective: so in adjectives of *inclination* and *disinclination*, *knowledge* and *ignorance*, of *order* and *position*, of *time* and *season*, and of temporary condition generally: libēns, *with pleasure*; volēns, *willing(ly)*; nolēns, *unwilling(ly)*; invītus, *against one's will*; prūdēns, *aware*; imprūdēns, *unawares*; sciēns, *knowing(ly)*; primus, *prior, first*; ultimus, *last*; medius, *in the middle*; hodiernus, *to-day*; mātūtīnus, *in the morning*; frequēns, *frequent(ly)*; sublimis, *aloft*. *Ōdero sī poterō, sī nōn, invītus amābo. OV. *Plūs hodiē bonī fēcī imprūdēns quam sciēns ante hunc diē unquam, TER. *I have done more good to-day unawares than I have ever done knowingly before*; Medius pōnor, *I am put in the middle*; quī prior strinxerit ferrum ejus victōria erit, *who draws the sword first, his shall be the victory*; *Vespertīnus pete tectum. HOR., *Seek thy dwelling at eventide*; *Rārus venit in coenācula mīles. JUV., *The soldiery rarely comes into the garret*. So also tōtus, *wholly*; Philosophiae nōs tōtōs trādīmus, *we give ourselves wholly to philosophy*; sōlī hoc contingit sapienti, *this happens to the wise man alone—it is only the wise man who has this good luck*.

6. Carefully to be distinguished are the uses of primus and the adverbs primum, *first, for the first time*, and primō, *at first*:

PRIMUS: Ego primus hanc ōratiōnem lēgī, *I was the first to read this speech*. Hanc primam ōratiōnem lēgī, *this was the first speech that I read*.

PRIMUM: Hanc orationem primum legi deinde transcripsi, *I first read, and then copied this speech.*

Hodie hanc orationem primum legi, *I read this speech to-day for the first time.*

PRIMO: Hanc orationem primo libenter legi, postea magis magisque mihi jejuna visa est, *at first I read this speech with pleasure, afterwards it seemed to me drier and drier.*—Müller and Lattmann.

B.

EXPANSION OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

1. By Multiplication of the Predicate.
2. By Qualification of the Predicate.

1. THE MULTIPLICATION OF THE PREDICATE.

§ 124. The multiplication of the predicate requires no further rules than those that have been given in the general doctrine of Concord, and those that are to be given in the exhibition of the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions.

2. THE QUALIFICATION OF THE PREDICATE.

§ 125. The Qualification of the Predicate may be regarded as an External or an Internal change:

- I. External change: combination with an object.
 - a. Direct object, Accusative.
 - b. Indirect object, Dative.

II. Internal change: combination with an attribute, which may be in the form of

- a. the Genitive case.
- b. the Ablative.
- c. Preposition with a case.
- d. an Adverb.

I. *External Change.*

ACCUSATIVE.

§ 126. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object. The object may be outside of the verb, Outer Object, object affected: *Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe*; or it may be contained in the verb (Inner Object, object effected): *Deus mundum creāvit, God created the universe—God made a creation, the universe.* (From the Inner object are developed the adverbial uses of the Accusative.)

REMARK.—The Accusative as the case of the Direct Object is the most general form of the noun, and is used as the subject of the most general form of the verb, the Infinitive: *Salvum tē esse, your being safe (that you should be safe).* See § 311.

RULE.

§ 127. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative case: *Mēns regit corpus, mind governs body* (object affected); *Rōmulus Urbem Rōmam condidit, Romulus founded the City of Rome* (object effected).

REMARK.—Many verbs are intransitive in English which are transitive in Latin: *dolēre, to grieve (for)*; *dēspērāre, to despair (of)*; *horrēre, to shudder (at)*; *mirārī, to wonder (at)*; *ridēre, to laugh (at)*; *sitire, to thirst (for)*; *olēre, to smell (of)*; *redolet antiquitātem, it smells of the olden time*; * *Cōnschia mēns rectī Fāmae mendācia rīsīt, Ov., her soul, conscious of its uprightness, laughed at Rumor's lies.*

RULE.

§ 128. Verbs compounded with the prepositions AD, ANTE, CIRCUM, CON, IN, INTER, OB, PER, PRAETER, SUB, SUBTER, SUPER, and TRĀNS, become transitive, and take the accusative: *adoriri hostēs, to attack the enemy*; *stella Veneris antegreditur sōlem, the star Venus goes in advance of the sun*; * *Tam mē circumstant dēnsōrum turba malōrum, Ov., so dense a crowd of evils encompass(es) me*; *nēmīnem convēnī, I have met with no*

*one; in eo cōsiliū, I engage in a plan; fretum quod Nautopactum et Patrās interfuit, the frith that flows between Nautopactus and Patrae; obire mortem, to undergo death; omnem agrum Picēnum percurrit, he traversed all the Picenian territory; dignōs praeterire, to pass by the worthy; subire poenam, to submit to punishment; *Flūminaque antiquōs subterlābentia mūrōs, VIRG., (and) rivers gliding under ancient walls; trānsire lineam, to cross the line.*

REMARKS.—1. If the simple verb is a transitive, it can take two accusatives: *Āgēsilaus Hellēspontum cōpiās trājēcit, Agesilaus put his troops across the Hellespont.*

2. With many of these verbs the preposition may be repeated: *cōpiās trājēcit Rhodanum, or trāns Rhodanum, he put his troops across the Rhone; sometimes with difference of signification: adire ad aliquem, to go to a man; adire aliquem, to apply to a man.*

Cognate Accusative.

RULE.

§ 129. Any verb can take an Accusative of the Inner Object, when that object serves to define more narrowly or to explain more fully the contents of the verb: *facere facinus, to do a deed.* This is commonly called the Cognate Accusative, or Accusative of kindred meaning.

REMARKS.—1. The Cognate Accusative, when a substantive proper, is commonly attended by an attribute: **Mīrum somniāvi somnium, PLAUT., I have dreamed a strange dream; *cōnsimilem lūserat jam ōlim ille lūdum, TER., he had long before played a like game; *cantilēnam eandem canis, TER., you are singing the same song; *quingentōs colaphōs infrēgit mihi—He has administered to me five hundred sound boxes on the ear (Infringo—I break on).*

2. Much more common is the Cognate Accusative of neuter pronouns and adjectives treated as substantives: *Xenophōn eadem ferē peccat, Xenophon makes very much the same mistakes; Equidem posse vellem idem glōriārī quod Cīrus, for my part I could wish that it were in my*

power to make the same boast as Cyrus ; * *Quidquid dētrant rēgēs plēctuntur Achivī*, HOR., *whatever mad freak the kings play, the Achivi are punished for it.*

With transitive verbs an Accusative of the person can be employed beside : *discipulōs id ūnum mōneo*, *I give my scholars this one piece of advice.*

3. From this the accusative neuter gradually passes over into an adverb (Comp. the list, p. 36), such as *aliquantum*, *somewhat* ; *nihil*, *nothing* ("nothing loath") ; *summum*, *at most*. Especially to be noted are *magnam partem*, *to a great extent* ; *id temporis*, *at that time* ; *id aetātis*, *of that age* ; *id genus*, *of that kind* ; *omne genus*, *of every kind*.

* *haec vulnera vitae*

nōn minimam partem mortis formidine aluntur, LUCR.,
these wounds of life are for not the least part fostered by the fear of death.

RULE.

§ 130. A part of the object affected is sometimes put in the Accusative case after a passive or intransitive verb or an adjective : *Tacitā cūrā animum incēnsus*, *his soul on fire with silent care.*

This is commonly called the Greek accusative, and is found chiefly in poetry. The common prose construction is the Ablative. **Nēscit stāre locō* ; *micat auribus et tremit artūs*, VIRG., *he cannot stand still ; he twitches with his ears and quivers in his limbs.*

REMARK.—Different is the accusative with *induo*, *I don* ; *exuo*, *I doff* ; *cingo*, *I gird on myself* ; in which verbs the reflexive signification is retained : **inūtile ferrum cingitur*, VIRG., *he girds on (himself) a useless blade* ; **Lōricam induitur fidōque accingitur ense*, VIRG., *he dons a corslet and begirds himself with his trusty glaive.*

Double Accusative.

RULE.

§ 131. Active Verbs signifying *to inquire*, *to require*, *to teach*, and *CĒLARE*, *to conceal*, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, and the other of the Thing : *Pūsiōnem quendam Sō-*

cratēs interrogat quaedam geōmetrica, *Socrates asked an urchin sundry questions in geometry*; Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat, *Caesar kept on demanding the corn of the Aedui*; quid nunc tē, asine, līterās doceam? (§54), *why should I now be teaching you literature, you donkey?* Iter omnēs cēlat, *he conceals his route from all*.

REMARKS.—1. The Passive form takes the Nominative of the Person and the Accusative of the Thing: omnēs militiae artēs ēdoctus fuerat, *he had learned (been taught) thoroughly all the arts of war*.

2. The expressions vary a good deal. Observe:

This then is not the only way,
For it is also right to say
Docēre and cēlare dē
Interrogāre dē quā rē:
Posco, *I cluim*; and flāgitō
And always peto, postulo
Take aliquid ab aliquō
While quaero takes ex, ab, dē, quō.

3. Quid mē vis? *what do you want of me?* belongs to this general class. (*Why (for what) do you want me?*)

4. On Double Accusative with compound verbs, see § 128, R. 1.

RULE.

§ 132. Verbs of NAMING, MAKING, TAKING, CHOOSING, SHOWING, may have two accusatives of the same person or thing: Īram bene Ennius *initium dixit* insāniae, *well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness*; Ancum Marciū rēgem populus creavit, *the people made Ancus Martius king*; Cato Valerium Flaccum *collēgam habuit*, *Cato had Valerius Flaccus (to) colleague*; Sōcratem Apollo *sapientissimum iudicāvit*, *Apollo judged Socrates (to be) the wisest*; Athēniēnsibus Pŷthia *praecēpit ut Miltiadem sibi imperātōrem sūmerent*, *the Pythia instructed the Athenians to take Miltiades (as) their commander*; Praestā tē virum, *show yourself a man*.

REMARK.—The second accusative is an Accusative of the Inner Object. The Double Accusative is turned into the Double Nominative with the Passive (§ 4). Reddo, *I render*, is not used in the Passive, but instead thereof fio, *I become*.

Accusative of the Local Object.

RULE.

§ 133. The Accusative of the Local Object *Whither?* commonly takes a preposition such as: IN, *into*; AD, *to*; VERSUS, *ward*; in Graeciam proficisci, *to set out for Greece*.

REMARK.—The omission of the preposition, except as below stated, is poetical.

RULE.

§ 134. Names of Cities and Smaller Islands are put in the Accusative of the place *Whither?* without a preposition. So also RŪS, *into the country*; DOMUM, DOMŌS, *home*; Lēgātī Athēnās missī sunt, *Envoys were sent to Athens*; Lātōna cōnfūgit Dēlum, *Latona took refuge in Delos*; Laelius et Scīpio rūs ēvolābant, *Laelius and Scipio used to hurry out into the country*; nunquam domum revertēre, *they never returned home*.

REMARKS.—1. Domum, *house*, with a possessive pronoun, or Genitive, may or may not have IN before it: domum meam or in domum meam, *to my house*; domum Pompējī or in domum Pompējī, *to Pompey's house*.

2. When urbem, *city*, or oppidum, *town*, precedes the name of the city or town, the preposition in or ad is prefixed; if it follows, in or ad may be omitted: in (ad) oppidum Cirtam, *to, in (at) the town (of) Cirta*; Jugurtha Thalam pervēnit in oppidum magnum et opulentum, *Jugurtha arrived at Thala, a great and wealthy town*.

3. Ad Mutinam — *to* (the neighborhood of) *Mutina* (Modena).

4. In with the Accusative is employed when the rest in a place is considered as the result of motion toward a place: habēre in potestātem, *to have (got) in(to) one's power*.

Accusative of Extent in Space and Time.

RULE.

§ 135. The Accusative of Extent in Space accompanies the verb, either with or without *PER*, *through*.

1. With *PER* to denote entire occupancy (*from one end to the other ; all through*): *sparsi per prōvinciam militēs, the soldiers scattered all through the province ; Phoebidās iter per Thēbās fecit, Phoebidas marched through Thebes.*

2. Without *PER* to denote distance, *how far, how long ?* *Trabēs inter sē binōs pedēs distābant, the beams were two feet apart ; campus Marathōn abest ab oppidō Athēniēnsium circiter millia passuum decem, the plain (of) Marathon is about ten miles from the city of Athens ; ā rectā cōscientiā transversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere, one ought not to depart a nail-breadth from an upright conscience.*

REMARK.—With *abesse* and *distāre*, an ablative of measure may also be employed: *millibus passuum quātuor et viginti abesse, to be twenty-four miles off.*

RULE.

§ 136. The Accusative of Extent in Space accompanies the adjectives *LONGUS, long ; LĀTUS, wide ; ALTUS, high (deep) ; fossa pedēs trecentōs longa est, sex pedēs alta, the ditch is three hundred feet long, six feet deep ; militēs aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs trīgintā altum pedēs octōgintā exstruxērunt, the soldiers raised an embankment three hundred feet wide (and) eighty feet high.*

RULE.

§ 137. The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the verb either with or without *PER*, *through*, in answer to the question *How long ?*: *Luscinia (per) tōtam ferē noctem canit, the nightingale sings almost the whole night (long).*

RULE.

§ 138. The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the adjective *nātus*, *old* (born): *puer decem ānnōs nātus est*, *the boy is ten years old*; *Cyrus regnāvit ānnōs trīgintā*; *quadrāgintā ānnōs nātus regnāre coepit*, *Cyrus reigned thirty years*; (he was) *forty years old* (when) *he began to reign*.

Accusative in Exclamations.

RULE.

§ 139. The Accusative is used in exclamations as the general object of thought or perception: *mē miserum*, *poor me!* **Ō miserās hominum mentēs*, *O pectora caeca*, *LUCE.*, *Oh, the wretched minds of men, oh, the blind hearts!* These exclamations often assume an interrogative form: *hancine audāciam?* [are you going to stand] *this audacity?*

§ 140. Interjections used with the Accusative are *HEU* and *ō*, more rarely *ĒN* and *ECCE*, *Lo!* which commonly stand with the Nominative. *PRŌ* takes the Vocative, *HĒI* and *VAE* the Dative: *Heu mē miserum!* *O miserās mentēs!* *Ecce homo!* *Ēn Vārus!* *Prō sancte Jūppiter!* *HĒi mihi!* *Vae victīs*, *woe to the conquered*.

DATIVE.

§ 141. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, the object had in view in contradistinction to the object reached.

REMARK.—In English the form of the Indirect Object is the same as that of the Direct. "He shewed *me* (Dat.) a pure river;" He shewed *me* (Acc.) to the priest; "I will give *thee* (Dat.) a crown;" I will give *thee* (Acc.) away; woe is *me* — *vae mihi*.

Dative with Transitive Verbs.

RULE.

§ 142. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with Transitive Verbs, which already have a Direct Object in the Accusa-

tive (translation, *to or for*): Facile omnēs quum valēmus recta cōsilia aegrōtis damus, *all of us, when we are well, readily give good advice to the sick* (Passive: recta cōsilia aegrōtis dantur, *good advice is given to the sick*; Domus pulchra dominis aedificātur nōn mūribus, *a handsome house is built for its owners, not for the mice*).

REMARK.—*For* (in defence of) is *prō*: *prō patriā mori*, *to die for one's country*; *to* (with a view to) is often *ad*, and always *ad* when the idea of motion is involved.

Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

RULE.

§ 143. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with many Intransitive Verbs of ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, YIELDING and RESISTING, PLEASURE and DISPLEASURE, BIDDING and FORBIDDING, such as *prōdesse*, *to do good*; *nocēre*, *to do harm*; *indulgēre*, *to yield*; *cēdere*, *to give way*; *servīre*, *to be a slave*; *pārēre oboedīre*, *to be obedient*; *crēdere*, *to lend belief*; *ignōscere*, *to grant forgiveness*; *placēre*, *to give pleasure*; *imperāre*, *to give orders*; *resistere*, *to make resistance*.

**Nec prōsunt dominō quae prōsunt omnibus artēs*, Ov., *and the arts which do good to all do none to their master*; *vir bonus nocet nēmīnī*, *a man who is good does harm to no one*; *indulgent animīs*, *they yield to their feelings*; **tū nē cēde malīs*, *do thou not give way to misfortunes*; *turpe servīre puellae*, *it is disgraceful to be a slave to a girl*; *mundus deō pārēt et huīc oboediunt maria terraeque*, *the universe is obedient to God, and seas and lands hearken unto him*; **nimum nē crēde colōrī*, *do not trust complexion too much*; **ignōsce timōrī*, PROP., *grant pardon to my fear*; **cū placeō prōtinus ipsa placet*, [the woman] *to whom I am pleasing is straightway herself pleasing (to me)*; *Rōmānī omnibus gentibus imperāvunt*, *the Romans gave orders to all nations*; *arbor resistit ventīs*, *the tree offers resistance to the winds*.

REMARKS.—1. Among the most notable exceptions are: *aequāre*, to be equal; *decēre*, to be becoming; *dēficere*, to be wanting; *juvāre*, to be a help; *jubēre*, to order, and *vetāre*, to forbid, which take the Accusative: *Eam picturam imitāti sunt multi aequāvit nēmo*, that painting many have imitated, none equalled; **forma virōs neglecta decet*, Ov., a careless beauty is becoming to men; *me diēs dēficiat*, the day would fail me; **fortēs fortūna adjuvat*, TER., fortune favors the brave; *jubē famulōs*, order your servants; **Vetuit mē Quirinus*, HOR., Quirinus forbade me. *Fido* and *cōfido*, I trust, generally take the Ablative. § 202.

2. The Dative use is obscured in the English of *nūbere alicuī*, to marry a man (to veil for him); *mēdērī alicuī*, to heal (to take one's measures for) a man; *supplico*, I beg (I go on my knees to); *persuādeo*, I persuade (I make it sweet).

3. The novice is again reminded that the passives of these verbs are used impersonally: **Qui invident egent illi quibus invidētur rem habent*, PLAUT., those who envy are the needy, those who are envied have property (§ 15).

Dative and Verbs compounded with Prepositions.

RULE XXIV.

§ 144. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions AD, ANTE, CŌN- (CUM), IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRAE, SUB, and SUPER take the Dative case: *Pelopidās omnibus periculīs adfuit*, *Pelopidas was present in all dangers*; **Virtūs omnibus rēbus anteit*, PLAUT., *Virtue goes before all things*; *Nōn omnis aetās Lyde lūdō convenit*, PLAUT., *It is not every age that is suitable to sport*; *Ferōciter instat victis*, *He presses the conquered furiously*; *Aristidēs interfuit pugnae nāvālī apud Salaminem*, *Aristides was engaged in the naval battle off Salamis*; **Obstā principiis*, OV., *Oppose the beginnings*; *Hannibal Alexandrō Magnō nōn postpōnendus est*, *He is not to be put below Alexander the Great*; *Præesse exercituī*, to command an army; **Miseris succurrere disco*, *I learn to succor the wretched*; *Lucumo superfuit patrī*, *Lucumo survived his father*.

REMARK.—When the local signification preponderates, the preposition is repeated with its proper case: *adhaeret nāvis ad scopulum*, the ship

sticks to the rock; *Ajâx incubuit in gladium, Ajax fell on his sword*; *congregi cum hoste, to engage the enemy*; *dētrahere ānnulum dē digītō, to take a ring from one's finger*. The tendency in later Latin is to neglect this distinction, which even in the best period is not rigidly observed. Compounds with *cum* (*con-*) commonly repeat the preposition: always *commūnicāre aliquid cum aliquō, to communicate something to a man* (share it with him).

Verbs with Accusative and Dative.

§ 145. Some verbs are construed both with the Accusative and with the Dative. Sometimes there is hardly an appreciable difference: *comitor aliquem, I accompany a man*; *comitor alicuī, I act as companion to a man*; *adūlor, generally Accusative, I fawn on*; *aemulor, I rival, I am a rival*; *præstōlor, I wait for*. Sometimes the difference follows naturally from the difference of case:

Cavēre alicuī, to take precautions for } *some one.*
aliquem, against

**Quīque aliīs cāvīt nōn cavet ipse sibi, Ov. (§ 100)*; **Hic niger est, hunc tū Rōmāne cavēto, Hor., He is a black fellow, against him be thou on thy guard, Oh Roman!*

Metuere alicuī, to fear for } *some one.*
aliquem, to dread

So all verbs of fearing.

Cōsulere alicuī, to take measures for } *some one.*
aliquem, to consult

Convenīre alicuī, to be suitable for } *some one.*
aliquem, to meet

Moderārī } *aliquī rei, to moderate* } *a matter.*
Temperāre } *aliquid, to manage*

Vacāre rei } *to be at leisure for* } *a matter.*
to attend to

Vacāre rē, ā rē, to be at leisure from

I. *External Change.*

ACCUSATIVE.

§ 126. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object. The object may be outside of the verb, Outer Object, object affected: *Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe*; or it may be contained in the verb (Inner Object, object effected): *Deus mundum creāvit, God created the universe—God made a creation, the universe.* (From the Inner object are developed the adverbial uses of the Accusative.)

REMARK.—The Accusative as the case of the Direct Object is the most general form of the noun, and is used as the subject of the most general form of the verb, the Infinitive: *Salvum tē esse, your being safe (that you should be safe).* See § 311.

RULE.

§ 127. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative case: *Mēns regit corpus, mind governs body* (object affected); *Rōmulus Urbem Rōmam condidit, Romulus founded the City of Rome* (object effected).

REMARK.—Many verbs are intransitive in English which are transitive in Latin: *dolēre, to grieve (for)*; *dēspērāre, to despair (of)*; *horrēre, to shudder (at)*; *mirārī, to wonder (at)*; *ridēre, to laugh (at)*; *sitire, to thirst (for)*; *olēre, to smell (of)*; *redolet antiquitātem, it smells of the olden time*; * *Cōnschia mēns rectī Fāmae mendācia rīsīt, Ov., her soul, conscious of its uprightness, laughed at Rumor's lies.*

RULE.

§ 128. Verbs compounded with the prepositions AD, ANTE, CIRCUM, CON, IN, INTER, OB, PER, PRAETER, SUB, SUBTER, SUPER, and TRĀNS, become transitive, and take the accusative: *adorīrī hostēs, to attack the enemy*; *stella Veneris antegreditur sōlem, the star Venus goes in advance of the sun*; * *Tam mē circumstant dēnsōrum turba malōrum, Ov., so dense a crowd of evils encompass(es) me*; *nēmīnem convēnī, I have met with no*

*one; in eo cōsiliū, I engage in a plan; fretum quod Naupactum et Patrās interfuit, the frith that flows between Naupactus and Patrae; obīre mortem, to undergo death; omnem agrum Picēnum percurrit, he traversed all the Picenian territory; dignōs praeterīre, to pass by the worthy; subire poenam, to submit to punishment; *Flūminaque antiquōs subterlābentia mūrōs, VIRG., (and) rivers gliding under ancient walls; trānsire lineam, to cross the line.*

REMARKS.—1. If the simple verb is a transitive, it can take two accusatives: *Āgēsilaus Hellēspontum cōpiās trājēcit, Agesilaus put his troops across the Hellespont.*

2. With many of these verbs the preposition may be repeated: *cōpiās trājēcit Rhodanum, or trāns Rhodanum, he put his troops across the Rhone; sometimes with difference of signification: adīre ad aliquem, to go to a man; adīre aliquem, to apply to a man.*

Cognate Accusative.

RULE.

§ 129. Any verb can take an Accusative of the Inner Object, when that object serves to define more narrowly or to explain more fully the contents of the verb: *facere facinus, to do a deed.* This is commonly called the Cognate Accusative, or Accusative of kindred meaning.

REMARKS.—1. The Cognate Accusative, when a substantive proper, is commonly attended by an attribute: **Mīrum somniāvī somnium, PLAUT., I have dreamed a strange dream; *cōnsimilem lūserat jam ōlim ille lūdum, TER., he had long before played a like game; *cantilēnam eandem canis, TER., you are singing the same song; *quingentōs colaphōs infrēgit mihi—He has administered to me five hundred sound boxes on the ear (Infringo—I break on).*

2. Much more common is the Cognate Accusative of neuter pronouns and adjectives treated as substantives: *Xenophōn eadem ferē peccat, Xenophon makes very much the same mistakes; Equidem posse vellem idem glōriārī quod Ōyru, for my part I could wish that it were in my*

power to make the same boast as Cyrus ; * *Quidquid dētrant rēgēs plētuntur Achivī*, HOR., *whatever mad freak the kings play, the Achivī are punished for it.*

With transitive verbs an Accusative of the person can be employed beside : *discipulōs id ūnum moneo*, *I give my scholars this one piece of advice.*

3. From this the accusative neuter gradually passes over into an adverb (Comp. the list, p. 36), such as *aliquantum*, *somewhat* ; *nihil*, *nothing* ("nothing loath") ; *summum*, *at most*. Especially to be noted are *magnam partem*, *to a great extent* ; *id temporis*, *at that time* ; *id aetātis*, *of that age* ; *id genus*, *of that kind* ; *omne genus*, *of every kind*.

* *haec vulnera vitae*

nōn minimam partem mortis formidine aluntur, LUCR.,
these wounds of life are for not the least part fostered by the fear of death.

RULE.

§ 130. A part of the object affected is sometimes put in the Accusative case after a passive or intransitive verb or an adjective : *Tacitā cūrā animum incēnsus*, *his soul on fire with silent care.*

This is commonly called the Greek accusative, and is found chiefly in poetry. The common prose construction is the Ablative. **Nēscit stāre locō* ; *micat auribus et tremit artūs*, VIRG., *he cannot stand still ; he twitches with his ears and quivers in his limbs.*

REMARK.—Different is the accusative with *induo*, *I don* ; *exuo*, *I doff* ; *cingo*, *I gird on myself* ; in which verbs the reflexive signification is retained : **inūtile ferrum cingitur*, VIRG., *he girds on (himself) a useless blade* ; **Lōricam induitur fidōque accingitur ense*, VIRG., *he dons a corselet and begirds himself with his trusty glaive.*

Double Accusative.

RULE.

§ 131. Active Verbs signifying *to inquire*, *to require*, *to teach*, and *CĒLĀRE*, *to conceal*, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, and the other of the Thing : *Pūsiōnem quendam Sō-*

cratēs interrogat quaedam geōmetrica, *Socrates asked an urchin sundry questions in geometry*; Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat, *Caesar kept on demanding the corn of the Aedui*; quid nunc tē, asine, literās doceam? (§54), *why should I now be teaching you literature, you donkey?* Iter omnēs cēlat, *he conceals his route from all*.

REMARKS.—1. The Passive form takes the Nominative of the Person and the Accusative of the Thing: omnēs militiae artēs ēdoctus fuerat, *he had learned (been taught) thoroughly all the arts of war*.

2. The expressions vary a good deal. Observe:

This then is not the only way,
For it is also right to say
Docēre and cēlare dē
Interrogāre dē quā rē:
Posco, *I claim*; and flāgitō
And always peto, postulo
Take aliquid ab aliquō
While quaero takes ex, ab, dē, quō.

3. Quid mē vīs? *what do you want of me?* belongs to this general class. (*Why (for what) do you want me?*)

4. On Double Accusative with compound verbs, see § 128, R. 1.

RULE.

§ 132. Verbs of NAMING, MAKING, TAKING, CHOOSING, SHOWING, may have two accusatives of the same person or thing: Īram bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae, *well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness*; Ancum Marcium rēgem populus creavit, *the people made Ancus Martius king*; Cato Valerium Flaccum collēgam habuit, *Cato had Valerius Flaccus (to) colleague*; Sōcratem Apollo sapientissimum iūdicāvit, *Apollo judged Socrates (to be) the wisest*; Athēniēnsibus Pythia praecēpit ut Miltiadem sibi imperātōrem sūmerent, *the Pythia instructed the Athenians to take Miltiades (as) their commander*; Praestā tē virum, *show yourself a man*.

REMARK.—The second accusative is an Accusative of the Inner Object. The Double Accusative is turned into the Double Nominative with the Passive (§ 4). Reddo, *I render*, is not used in the Passive, but instead thereof fio, *I become*.

Accusative of the Local Object.

RULE.

§ 133. The Accusative of the Local Object *Whither?* commonly takes a preposition such as: IN, *into*; AD, *to*; VERSUS, *ward*; in Graeciam proficisci, *to set out for Greece*.

REMARK.—The omission of the preposition, except as below stated, is poetical.

RULE.

§ 134. Names of Cities and Smaller Islands are put in the Accusative of the place *Whither?* without a preposition. So also EŪS, *into the country*; DOMUM, DOMŌS, *home*; Lēgāti Athēnās missi sunt, *Envoys were sent to Athens*; Lātōna cōnfūgit Dēlum, *Latona took refuge in Delos*; Laelius et Scipio rūs ēvolābant, *Laelius and Scipio used to hurry out into the country*; nunquam domum revertēre, *they never returned home*.

REMARKS.—1. Domum, *house*, with a possessive pronoun, or Genitive, may or may not have IN before it: domum meam or in domum meam, *to my house*; domum Pompēji or in domum Pompēji, *to Pompey's house*.

2. When urbem, *city*, or oppidum, *town*, precedes the name of the city or town, the preposition in or ad is prefixed; if it follows, in or ad may be omitted: in (ad) oppidum Cirtam, *to, in (at) the town (of) Cirta*; Jugurtha Thalam pervēnit in oppidum magnum et opulentum, *Jugurtha arrived at Thala, a great and wealthy town*.

3. Ad Mutinam — *to* (the neighborhood of) *Mutina* (Modena).

4. In with the Accusative is employed when the rest in a place is considered as the result of motion toward a place: habēre in potestātem, *to have (got) in(to) one's power*.

Accusative of Extent in Space and Time.

RULE.

§ 135. The Accusative of Extent in Space accompanies the verb, either with or without *PER*, *through*.

1. With *PER* to denote entire occupancy (*from one end to the other ; all through*): *sparsi per prōvinciam militēs*, the soldiers scattered all through the province; *Phoebidās iter per Thēbās fēcit*, *Phoebidas marched through Thebes*.

2. Without *PER* to denote distance, *how far, how long*? *Trabēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs distābant*, the beams were two feet apart; *campus Marathōn abest ab oppidō Athēniēnsium circiter millia passuum decem*, the plain (of) *Marathon* is about ten miles from the city of *Athens*; *ā rectā cōnsentiā transversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere*, one ought not to depart a nail-breadth from an upright conscience.

REMARK.—With *abesse* and *distāre*, an ablative of measure may also be employed: *millibus passuum quātuor et vigintī abesse*, to be twenty-four miles off.

RULE.

§ 136. The Accusative of Extent in Space accompanies the adjectives *LONGUS*, *long*; *LĀTUS*, *wide*; *ALTUS*, *high* (deep); *fossa pedēs trecentōs longa est, sex pedēs alta*, the ditch is three hundred feet long, six feet deep; *militēs aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs trīgintā altum pedēs octōgintā exstruxērunt*, the soldiers raised an embankment three hundred feet wide (and) eighty feet high.

RULE.

§ 137. The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the verb either with or without *PER*, *through*, in answer to the question *How long*? *Luscinia (per) tōtam ferē noctem canit*, the nightingale sings almost the whole night (long).

RULE.

§ 138. The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the adjective *NĀTUS*, *old* (born): *puer decem ānnōs nātus est*, *the boy is ten years old*; *Cyrus regnāvit ānnōs trīgintā*; *quadrāgintā ānnōs nātus regnāre coepit*, *Cyrus reigned thirty years*; (he was) *forty years old* (when) *he began to reign*.

Accusative in Exclamations.

RULE.

§ 139. The Accusative is used in exclamations as the general object of thought or perception: *mē miserum*, *poor me!* **Ō miserās hominum mentēs*, *O pectora caeca*, *LUCK.*, *Oh, the wretched minds of men, oh, the blind hearts!* These exclamations often assume an interrogative form: *hancine audāciam?* [are you going to stand] *this audacity?*

§ 140. Interjections used with the Accusative are *HEU* and *Ō*, more rarely *ĒN* and *ECCE*, *Lo!* which commonly stand with the Nominative. *PRŌ* takes the Vocative, *HĒI* and *VAE* the Dative: *Heu mē miserum!* *O miserās mentēs!* *Ecce homo!* *ĒN Vārus!* *Prō sancte Jūppiter!* *HĒI mihi!* *Vae victis*, *woe to the conquered*.

DATIVE.

§ 141. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, the object had in view in contradistinction to the object reached.

REMARK.—In English the form of the Indirect Object is the same as that of the Direct. "He shewed *me* (Dat.) a pure river;" He shewed *me* (Acc.) to the priest; "I will give *thee* (Dat.) a crown;" I will give *thee* (Acc.) away; woe is *me* — *vae mihi*.

Dative with Transitive Verbs.

RULE.

§ 142. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with Transitive Verbs, which already have a Direct Object in the Accusa-

tive (translation, *to or for*): Facile omnēs quum valēmus recta cōsilia aegrōtis damus, *all of us, when we are well, readily give good advice to the sick* (Passive: recta cōsilia aegrōtis dantur, *good advice is given to the sick*; Domus pulchra dominis aedificātur nōn mūrībus, *a handsome house is built for its owners, not for the mice*).

REMARK.—*For* (in defence of) is *prō*: *prō patriā morī*, *to die for one's country*; *to* (with a view to) is often *ad*, and always *ad* when the idea of motion is involved.

Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

RULE.

§ 143. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with many Intransitive Verbs of ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, YIELDING and RESISTING, PLEASURE AND DISPLEASURE, BIDDING and FORBIDDING, such as *prōdesse*, *to do good*; *nocēre*, *to do harm*; *indulgēre*, *to yield*; *cēdere*, *to give way*; *servīre*, *to be a slave*; *pārere oboedire*, *to be obedient*; *crēdere*, *to lend belief*; *ignōscere*, *to grant forgiveness*; *placēre*, *to give pleasure*; *imperāre*, *to give orders*; *resistere*, *to make resistance*.

**Nec prōsunt dominō quae prōsunt omnibus artēs*, Ov., *and the arts which do good to all do none to their master*; *vir bonus nocet nēmīnī*, *a man who is good does harm to no one*; *indulgent animīs*, *they yield to their feelings*; **tū nē cēde malīs*, *do thou not give way to misfortunes*; *turpe servīre puellae*, *it is disgraceful to be a slave to a girl*; *mundus deō pāret et huīc oboediunt maria terraeque*, *the universe is obedient to God, and seas and lands hearken unto him*; **nimum nē crēde colōrī*, *do not trust complexion too much*; **ignōsce timōrī*, PROP., *grant pardon to my fear*; **cū placeō prōtinus ipsa placet*, [the woman] *to whom I am pleasing is straightway herself pleasing (to me)*; *Rōmānī omnibus gentibus imperārunt*, *the Romans gave orders to all nations*; *arbor resistit ventīs*, *the tree offers resistance to the winds*.

REMARKS.—1. Among the most notable exceptions are: *aequāre*, to be equal; *decēre*, to be becoming; *dēficere*, to be wanting; *juvāre*, to be a help; *jubēre*, to order, and *vetāre*, to forbid, which take the Accusative: *Eam picturam imitātī sunt multī aequāvit nēmo*, *that painting many have imitated, none equalled*; **forma virōs neglecta decet*, Ov., *a careless beauty is becoming to men*; *me diēs dēficiat*, *the day would fail me*; **fortēs fortuna adiuvat*, TER., *fortune favors the brave*; *jubē famulōs*, *order your servants*; **Vetuit mē Quirinus*, HOR., *Quirinus forbade me*. *Fido* and *cōfido*, *I trust*, generally take the Ablative. § 202.

2. The Dative use is obscured in the English of *nūbere alicuī*, to marry a man (to veil for him); *mēdēri alicuī*, to heal (to take one's measures for) a man; *supplicō*, *I beg* (I go on my knees to); *persuādeo*, *I persuade* (I make it sweet).

3. The novice is again reminded that the passives of these verbs are used impersonally: **Qui invident egent illi quibus invidētur rem habent*, PLAUT., *those who envy are the needy, those who are envied have property* (§ 15).

Dative and Verbs compounded with Prepositions.

RULE XXIV.

§ 144. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions AD, ANTE, CŌN- (CUM), IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRAE, SUB, and SUPER take the Dative case: *Pelopidās omnibus periculīs adfuit*, *Pelopidas was present in all dangers*; **Virtūs omnibus rēbus anteit*, PLAUT., *Virtue goes before all things*; *Nōn omnis aetās Lyde lūdō convenit*, PLAUT., *It is not every age that is suitable to sport*; *Ferōciter instat victis*, *He presses the conquered furiously*; *Aristidēs interfuit pugnae nāvālī apud Salaminem*, *Aristides was engaged in the naval battle off Salamis*; **Obstā prīncipiis*, Ov., *Oppose the beginnings*; *Hannibal Alexandrō Magnō nōn postpōnendus est*, *He is not to be put below Alexander the Great*; *Præesse exercituī*, *to command an army*; **Miseris succurrere disco*, *I learn to succor the wretched*; *Lucumo superfuit patrī*, *Lucumo survived his father*.

REMARK.—When the local signification preponderates, the preposition is repeated with its proper case: *adhaeret nāvis ad scopulum*, *the ship*

sticks to the rock; *Ajāx incubuit in gladium, Ajax fell on his sword*; *congregi cum hoste, to engage the enemy*; *dētrahere ānnulum dē digitiō, to take a ring from one's finger*. The tendency in later Latin is to neglect this distinction, which even in the best period is not rigidly observed. Compounds with *cum* (*con-*) commonly repeat the preposition: always *commūnicāre aliquid cum aliquō, to communicate something to a man* (share it with him).

Verbs with Accusative and Dative.

§ 145. Some verbs are construed both with the Accusative and with the Dative. Sometimes there is hardly an appreciable difference: *comitor aliquem, I accompany a man*; *comitor alicuī, I act as companion to a man*; *adūlor, generally Accusative, I fawn on*; *aemulor, I rival, I am a rival*; *præstōlor, I wait for*. Sometimes the difference follows naturally from the difference of case:

Cavēre alicuī, to take precautions for } *some one.*
aliquem, against

**Quīque aliīs cāvit nōn cavet ipse sibi, Ov. (§ 100)*; **Hic niger est, hunc tū Rōmāne cavēto, Hor., He is a black fellow, against him be thou on thy guard, Oh Roman!*

Metuere alicuī, to fear for } *some one.*
aliquem, to dread

So all verbs of fearing.

Cōsulere alicuī, to take measures for } *some one.*
aliquem, to consult

Convenire alicuī, to be suitable for } *some one.*
aliquem, to meet

Moderārī } *aliquī rei, to moderate* } *a matter.*
Temperāre } *aliquid, to manage*

Vacāre rei } *to be at leisure for* } *a matter.*
to attend to

Vacāre rē, ā rē, to be at leisure from

Dative with Verbs of giving and putting.

RULE.

§ 146. A few verbs, chiefly of GIVING and PUTTING, take a Dative with an Accusative, or an Accusative with an Ablative, in the same signification :

Dōnō tibi librum, *I present (to) you a book.*

Dōnō tē librō, *I present you with a book.*

Circumdo urbī mūrum, *I put round the city a wall.*

urbem mūrō, *I surround the city with a wall.*

So also aspergere, *to besprinkle* and *to sprinkle on* ; imperitire, *to endow* and *to give* ; induere, *to clothe* and *to put on* ; exuere, *to strip of* and *to strip off*.

RULE.

§ 147. ESSE, *to be*, with the Dative, denotes an inner connection between its subject and the Dative, and is commonly translated by the verb *to have* : mihi est amicus, *I have a friend*. *An nescīs longās rēgibus esse manūs? Ov., *Or perhaps you do not know that kings have long arms?*

REMARKS.—1. The predicate of ESSE with the Dative is translated in the ordinary manner : Caesar amicus est mihi, *Caesar is a friend to me* (amicus meus, *MY friend, friend of MINE*).

2. On the attraction of the Dative with nōmen esse, see § 121.

3. The possession of qualities is expressed by IN and the Ablative or some other turn : In Cicerōne magna fuit ēloquentia, *Cicero had great eloquence*.

Dative of the Object for which.

§ 148. Certain verbs take the Dative of the *object for which* (to what end), and often at the same time a Dative of the personal object *for whom* or *to whom*, as in the legal phrase, cui bonō? *To whom is it (for) an advantage? = who is advantaged?* Such verbs are esse, *to be* ; fieri, *to become, to turn*

out ; dare, to give ; mittere, to send ; accipere, to receive ; venire, to come ; relinquere, to leave ; habere, to hold ; vertere, to interpret ; ducere, to count, and the like ; Nimia fiducia magnae calamitatis solet esse, Excessive confidence is usually a great calamity ; Virtus sola neque datur dono neque accipitur, Virtue alone is neither given nor taken as a present ; Paupertas probro habere coepit, Poverty began to be held (as) a disgrace ; Timotheus Ariobarzani auxilio profectus est, Timotheus set out to help Ariobarzanes ; Vitiis mihi dant (vertunt, ducunt) quod hominis necessarii mortem graviter fero, They find fault with me because I take to heart (bear ill) the death of a connection ; canere receptum, to sound a retreat.

Ethical Dative.

§ 149. The Ethical Dative indicates special interest in the action. It may be called the Dative of Feeling, and its use in Latin (and old English) is confined to the personal pronouns: *Tu mihi Antonii exemplum istius audaciam defendis ? Do you defend me (to my face) by Anthony's example that fellow's audacity ? Ecce tibi Sēbosus ! Here's your Sebosus !* ("She's a civil modest wife, one (I tell you) that will not miss you morning nor evening prayer."—SHAKESPEARE.) **Et quoscunque meo fecisti nomine versus, ure mihi, laudes desine habere meas, PROP., And whatever verses you have made on my account, burn them me (I beg) ; cease to keep praises of me.*

REMARK.—Especially to be noted is *sibi velle, to want, to mean*: **Quid tibi vis mulier ? HOR., What do you want, woman ? Quid sibi vult haec oratio ? What does this speech mean ?*

Dative of the Agent.

§ 150. The Dative is used with passive verbs in prose chiefly with the perfect passive, to show the interest which the agent takes in the action. Comp. § 13: *Rēs mihi tota prōvisa est ; *Carmina scripta mihi sunt nulla, OV., I have no poems written, (therefore) have written no poems.*

RULE.

§ 151. The agent of the Gerund and Gerundive is put in the Dative: *Hoc mihi faciendum est, I have this to be done, this is to be done by me.* **Est mala sed cunctis ista terenda via, PROP., That is a bad road, but one which all have to travel.* **Dēspēranda tibi salvā concordia socrū, JUV., You must despair of harmony while your mother-in-law is alive.* Compare the Dative with verbals in -bilis: *mihi amābilis, loveable in my eyes.*

REMARK.—When the verb itself takes the Dative, the Ablative with AB (Ā) is employed for the sake of clearness: *Cīvibus ā vōbīs cōnsulendum, The interest of the citizens must be consulted by you.* But not necessarily: **Linguae moderandum est tibi, PLAUT., You must put bounds to your tongue.*

Dative of Participles.

§ 152. Datives of Participles are used as predicative attributes, §123: *Oppidum primum venientibus ab Ēpīrō, The first town to those who come (as you come) from Epirus; Mihi volentī est (literally), I have it willing; I have it and I am willing to have it; I am willing for it to be so.*

Dative with Derivative Nouns.

§ 153. A few derivative nouns take the Dative of their primitives: *Jūstitia est obtemperatio lēgibus, Justice is obedience to the laws.*

Dative with Adjectives.

RULE.

§ 154. Adjectives of LIKENESS, FITNESS, FRIENDLINESS, NEARNESS, and the like, with their opposites, take the Dative: **Rāra avis in terris nigrōque simillima cygnō, JUV., A rare bird in this world, and very like a black swan.* **Nōn ego sum laudī nōn nātus idōneus armīs, OV., I am not fitted by nature for glory,*

not fitted for arms; **Amīca lutō sūs*, HOR., *A sow devoted to mire*. **Semper tū scīto, Flamma fūmō est proxima*, PLAUT., *Do thou always bear in mind, fire is next door to smoke*

REMARKS.—1. Many adjectives which belong to this class become substantives, and as such are construed with the Genitive: *amicus, friend*; *affinis, connection*; *aequālis, contemporary*; *aliēnus, foreign, strange*; *cognātus, kinsman*; *commūnis, common*; *contrārius, opposite*; *pār, match*; *proprius, peculiāris, own, peculiar*; *similis, like* ("we ne'er shall look upon *his like* again"); *sacer, set apart, sacred*; *Deōs esse similēs tuī patās?* *Do you think that the gods are like you?* **Virtūte sis pār dispar fortūnis patris*, ATTIIUS, *May you be your father's match in valor, but not in (mis) fortunes*.

2. The object toward which is expressed by the Accusative with IN, ERGĀ, ADVERSUS: *Manlius fuit sēvērus in filium*, *Manlius was severe toward his son*; *Mē esse scit ergā sē benevolum*, *He knows that I am kindly disposed toward him*; *ADVERSUS merita ingrātissimus*, *highly ungrateful to (ward) deserts*.

3. The object for which may be expressed by the Accusative with AD, to: *homo ad nullam rem ūtilis*, *a good for nothing fellow*.

4. *Propior, nearer, proximus, next*, are construed also (like *prope, near*) with the Accusative and the Ablative with AB, off: *Propius est fidem*, *it is nearer belief, i. e., more likely*; *Quī tē proximus est*, *He who is next to you*; **Proximus ā tectis ignis dēfenditur aegrē*, OV., *A fire next door is kept off with difficulty* (is hard to keep off).

5. *Aliēnus, foreign, strange*, is also construed with the Ablative, with or without AB (ā): **Homō sum, hūmānī nihil ā mē aliēnum puto*, TER., *I am a man, and nothing that pertains to man do I consider foreign to me*.

6. In poetry, *Idem, the same*, is often construed after the analogy of the Greek, with the Dative. **Invitum quī servat idem facit occidenti* (§ 97).

GENITIVE.

§ 155. The Genitive is the case of the complement, i. e., of the lacking half, and thus serves to specify. As the specific characteristic it stands in a close relation to the Adjective, with which it is often interchanged.

The chief English representatives of the Genitive are the Possessive case, the Objective case with *of*, and Substantives in composition, or used as Adjectives: *Cicero's orations, the house of Sallust, fir-tree, cart-wheel, farthing candle, the Orsini plot.*

REMARK.—An abstract Noun with the Genitive is often to be translated as an attribute; and, on the other hand, the attribute is often to be translated as an abstract noun with *of*: *vernī temporis suāvitās, the sweet springtime*; *ante Rōmā conditam, before the founding of Rome.*

The Genitive is employed:

I. and II. Chiefly as the complement of Nouns Substantive and Adjective.

III. Occasionally as the complement of Verbs.

I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

Appositive Genitive, or Genitive of Specification.

RULE.

§ 156. The Genitive is sometimes used to specify the contents of generic words instead of Apposition in the same case: *Virtūs continentiae, the virtue of self-control.*

So especially with *vōx, expression*; *nōmen, name*; *verbum, word, verb*: *vōx voluptātis, the word "pleasure"*; *nōmen rēgis, the name or title of king*; *Sulla nōmen Fēlicis assūmpsit, Sulla assumed the surname (of) "the Lucky"*; *Verba dicendī et sentiendī, the verbs "to say and to think," verbs of saying and thinking.* So also, occasionally: *Urbs Rōmae, the city of Rome*; *arbor abietis, fir-tree.*

Possessive Genitive.

§ 157. The Possessive Genitive is the substantive form of an adjective attribute with which it is often parallel: *domus rēgis = domus rēgia, the palace of the king, the king's palace = the royal palace*; (*aliēnus canis, a strange dog = another man's dog.*)

REMARKS.—1. The attention of the student is called to the variety of forms which possession may take, *e. g.*, *Statua Myrōnis*, *Myron's statue*, may mean: 1. A statue which M. owns. 2. Which Myron has made. 3. Which represents Myron.

2. Observe the brief expressions: *Ventum erat ad Vestae*, *We (they) had come to Vesta's (i. e., temple)*; *Hasdrubal Gisgōnis*, *Gisgo's Hasdrubal*, *Hasdrubal Gisgo's son* (as it were, *Hasdrubal O' Gisgo*); *Flaccus Claudī*, *Claudius's Flaccus* — *F. the slave or freedman of Claudius*.

Active and Passive Genitive.

§ 158. When the Substantive on which the Genitive depends contains the idea of an action, the possession may be *active* or *passive*. Hence the division into 1. the *Active* or *Subjective Genitive*: *amor Deī*, *the love of God, the love which God feels* (God loves). 2. *Passive* or *Objective Genitive*: *amor Deī*, *love of God, love toward God* (God is loved).

REMARKS.—1. The English form in *of* is used either *actively* or *passively*: *the love of women*. Hence, to avoid ambiguity, other prepositions than *of* are often substituted for the Passive Genitive, such as *for*, *toward*, and the like. So, also, sometimes in Latin: *Voluntās prōvinciae ergā Caesarem*, *The good-will of the province toward Caesar*; *Odium in hominum ūniversum genus*, *Hate toward all mankind*.

2. Both Genitives may be connected with the same Substantive: *Tanta hominum ejus fūnī fuit religio*, *So great was the reverential regard of the public for that shrine*.

§ 159. The Genitive of the Personal Pronouns *meī*, *of me*, *tui*, *of thee*, *sui*, *of self*, *nōstri* *of us*, *vestri*, *of you*, are used as Passive Genitives: *amor meī*, *love to me*; *dēsiderium tui*, *longing for thee*; *memoria nōstri*, *memory of us* (our memory).

REMARK.—*Nōstrum* and *vestrum* are used as Partitive Genitives: *magna pars nōstrum*, *a great part of us*; *uterque vestrum*, *either (both) of you*.

§ 160. The Possessive Pronoun is generally used as the Active Genitive: *amicus meus*, *a friend of mine*; *libri meī*,

my books. Additional attributives are put in the Genitive :
Meā ipsius operā, by my own exertions. § 118, R. 2.

REMARK.—Occasionally, however, in Latin, as occasionally in English, the Possessive Pronoun is used passively: *dēsiderium tuum, longing for thee*; *injūria tua, your wrong* ("The deep damnation of *his* taking off").

Genitive of Quality.

RULE.

§ 161. The Genitive of Quality must always have an Adjective or its equivalent: *Mitis ingenii juvenem, a youth of mild disposition.*

REMARK.—On the Ablative of Quality, see § 198.

Genitive as a Predicate.

RULE.

§ 162. The Genitives of Possession and Quality may be used as Predicates: *domus est rēgis, the house is the king's*; *vir est magni ingenii, the man is of great genius.*

REMARKS.—1. The Possession appears in a variety of forms, and takes a variety of translations: **Hūjus erō vivus mortuus hūjus erō, PROP., Here I shall be, living, dead, here I shall be*; *Omnia quae mulieris fuerunt viri fiunt, All that was the wife's (property) becomes the husband's*; *Is [Herculēs] dicēbātur esse Myrōnis, That (statue of Hercules) was said to be Myron's (work)*; *Nōlae senātus Rōmānōrum, plēbs Hannibalis erat, At Nola the senate was (on the side of) the Romans, the common folk (on) Hannibal's*; *Damnatio est iudicium, poena lēgis, Condemning is the judges' (business), punishment the law's*; *Imbecilli animi esse, to be (a mark) of a weak mind*; *Stultitiae est, it is folly*; *Mōris est, It is customary.* So also with *facere, to make* (cause to be): *Rōmānae diciōnis facere, to bring under the Roman sway.*

2. In the Third Declension of the Adjective, the Genitive is the usual form: *prudentis est, it is prudent.*

3. The same methods of translation apply to the Possessive Pronoun in the Predicate ("Vengeance is *mine*") : *meum est, it is my property, business, way*; *Meum nōn est mentiri, Lying is not my way, I do not lie.*

Partitive Genitive.

RULE.

§ 163. The Genitive stands for the whole to which a part belongs : *magna vīs militum, a great number of soldiers* ; *centum militum, a hundred (of the) soldiers* ; *eī militum, those (of the) soldiers* ; *fortissimī militum, the bravest (of the) soldiers* ; *satis militum, enough (of) soldiers, soldiers enough.*

The Partitive Genitive is used :

§ 164. *a.* With substantives of quantity, number, weight, &c. : *modius tritici, a measure of wheat* ; *libra farris, a pound of spelt* ; *āla equitum, a squadron of cavalry.*

§ 165. *b.* With numerals, both special and general :

Special.—*Centum militum, a hundred (of the) soldiers, a hundred (of) soldiers.*

(*Centum milites, a, the hundred soldiers.*)

(*Quintus regum, the fifth (of the) king(s).*)

(*Quintus rex, the fifth king.*)

General.—*Multi militum, many of the soldiers, many soldiers.*

(*Multi milites, many soldiers.*)

REMARK.—The English language commonly omits the partition, unless it is especially emphatic : (*Quot civium adsunt ? How MANY CITIZENS are present ? Quot civēs adsunt ? How MANY are the citizens present ?*)

§ 166. *c.* With Pronouns : *eī militum, those (of the) soldiers* ; *eī milites, those soldiers* ; *illi Graecorum, those (of the) Greeks.*

REMARKS.—1. When all are embraced, there is no partition : *Nōs trecenti conjurāvimus, three hundred of us have made a conspiracy* ; *amicōs quōs multōs habet, friends whom he has in great number, of whom he has many* ; *Qui omnēs, all of whom* ; *Quot estis ? How many are (there of) you ?* Here the English language familiarly employs the partition.

2. *Mille, a thousand*, is in the Singular an indeclinable Adjective, and is less frequently used with the Genitive : *mille milites, rather than mille militum, a thousand soldiers* ; in the Plural it is a declinable Substantive, and must have the Genitive : *duo millia militum, two thousand(s of) soldiers, = two regiments of soldiers.*

§ 167. *d.* With comparatives and superlatives: Prior hōrum, *the former of these*; *Rēgum ultimus ille bonōrum, JUV., *The last of the good kings*.

REMARKS.—1. When there are only two, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison. (§ 115.)

2. Uterque, *either (both)*, is commonly used as an adjective with substantives: uterque cōsul, *either consul* = *both consuls*; as a substantive with pronouns: uterque hōrum, *both of these*.

§ 168. *e.* With the Neuter Singular of the following and kindred words:

tantum, <i>so much</i>	quantum, <i>as (how much)</i>	aliquantum, <i>somewhat</i>
multum, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimum, <i>most</i>
paulum, <i>little</i>	minus, <i>less</i>	minimum, <i>least</i>
satis, <i>enough</i>	parum, <i>too little</i>	nihil, <i>nothing</i>
hoc, <i>this</i>	id, illud, istud, <i>that</i>	idem, <i>the same</i>

quod and quid, *which and what?* with their compounds.

*Plūs aloēs quam mellis habet, *It has more aloes than honey*;

*Surgit amārī aliquid, LUCR., *uprises something bitter*; nihil reliquī facere, *to leave nothing (undone)*.

REMARKS.—1. Neuter Adjectives of the Second Declension can be treated as substantives in the Genitive: not so Adjectives of the Third, except in combination with Adjectives of the Second: aliquid bonum, or bonī, *something good*; aliquid memorābile, *something memorable*; aliquid bonī et memorābilis, *something good and memorable*; *Vixque tenet lacrimās quia nīl lacrimābile cernit, OV., *And scarce restrains her tears, because she desries naught to shed tears for*. (§ 3, R. 3.)

2. The partitive construction is not admissible with a preposition: ad tantum studium, *to so much zeal*. (Exceptions occur: ad multum diēi, *far into the day*.)

3. The Partitive Genitive is also used with Adverbs of *quantity, place, extent*: armōrum affatim, *foison (plenty) of arms*; ubi terrārum, *gen-tium? where in the world?*; hūc, eō arrogantiae prōcēssit, *he got to this, that pitch of presumption* (Later Latin, tum temporis, *at that time*). Notice especially the phrase: quoad ējus facere possum, *as far as I can do so*.

4. Instead of the Partitive Genitive with numerals, pronouns, compara-

tives, and superlatives, the ablative may be employed with *EX*, *out of*, *DĒ*, *from* (especially with proper names and singulars), or the accusative with *INTER*, *among*: *Gallus prōvocat ūnum ex Rōmānis*, *The Gaul challenges one of the Romans*; *ūnus dē multis*, *one of the many* (the masses); *Croesus inter rēgēs opulentissimus*, *Croesus, wealthiest of kings*; (but in a series: *quōrum ūnus, alter, tertius*.)

5. On the Attribute used partitively, see § 87, R.

Genitive with Prepositional Substantives.

RULE.

§ 169. *CAUSĀ*, *GRĀTIĀ*, *ERGŌ*, *for the sake*, and *INSTAR*, *after the fashion*, are construed with the Genitive. *CAUSĀ* and *GRĀTIĀ*, Ablatives, are always put after the case. So also *ERGŌ*: *Virtūtis ergō*, *on account of valor*. *INSTAR* is an old Accusative: *Reipublicae causā*, *for the sake of the state*; *dolōrum effugiendōrum causā*, *for the sake of escaping sufferings*; **instar montis equus*, *VIRG.*, *a horse like a mountain*; *Plato mihi ūnus instar est omnium*, *Plato by himself is in my eyes worth them all*.

II. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

RULE.

§ 170. Adjectives of *FULNESS*, of *PARTICIPATION*, and of *POWER*, of *KNOWLEDGE* and *IGNORANCE*, of *DESIRE* and *DISGUST*, take the Genitive: *plēnus rimārum*, *full of chinks* ("a leaky vessel"); *particeps cōsiliī*, *a sharer in the plan*; *compos mentis*, *in possession of (one's) mind*; *peritus bellī*, *versed in war*; *cupidus glōriæ*, *grasping after glory*; **Cūr nōn ut plēnus vitæ conviva recēdis?* *LUCR.*, *Why do you not withdraw like a guest sated with life?* **Nōn ita certandī cupidus quam propter amōrem*, *LUCR.*, *Not so desirous of rivalry as by reason of love*; **Cōnscia mēns rectī Fāmæ mendācia risit*, *OV.*, *Her mind, conscious of its uprightness, laughed at Rumor's lies*; **Agricolam laudat jūris lēgūmque peritus*, *HOR.*, *The husbandman's lot is praised by the counsel learned in the law*; **Sitque memor nōstrī necne referte mihi*, *OV.* (§ 3,

R. 7); **Vēnātor tenerae conjugis immemor*, HOR., *The hunter of his tender spouse unmindful*; **Vīs cōsil(i) expers mōle ruit suā*, HOR., *Force void of counsel rushes to ruin by its own mass*; **Mentis inops gelidā formīdine lōra remisit*, OV., *Senseless from chill fear, he let go the reins*.

REMARKS.—1. The following adjectives—*refertus*, *stuffed*; *praeditus*, *endowed*; *contentus*, *satisfied*; *frētus*, *supported*—show their participial nature by being construed with the Ablative: *Vita referta bonis*, *a life filled to overflowing with blessings*; *membris hūmānis esse praeditum*, *to be endowed with human limbs*; *frētus opulentiā*, *trusting in wealth*; **Uxor contenta est quae bona est unō virō*, PLAUT., *A wife who is good is contented with one husband*.

2. *Plēnus*, *full*, sometimes takes the Ablative: **Maxima quaeque* (§ 106) *domus servis est plēna superbis*, JUV., *Every great house is filled with overbearing slaves*.

3. *Dignus*, *worthy*, and *indignus*, *unworthy*, are construed with the Ablative: **Digne puer meliōre flammā*, HOR., *Boy worthy of a better flame*; **Vitā tua dignior aetās*, VIRG., *Your age is worthier of life*. The Genitive is rare.

4. *Liber*, *free*, and *vacuus*, *empty*, take the Ablative with or without *AB* (Ā): *liberum (vacuum) esse metū (ā metū)*, *to be free from, void of, fear*.

5. On *aliēnus*, *strange*, see § 154, R. 5. On *aequālis*, *commūnis*, *consciū*, *contrāriū*, *pār*, *similis*, *superstes*, and the like, see § 154, R. 1.

6. Verbs of FILLING sometimes follow the analogy of *plēnus*, *full*, and take the genitive. On *egeo* and *indigeo*, *I want*, with the Genitive, see § 189, R. 1.

Genitive with Verbals.

RULE.

§ 171. Verbals in -Āx take the Genitive, and so do Participles in -Āns and -Ēns when they lose their verbal nature: *tenācem esse prōpositi*, *to be tenacious of purpose*; *amāns patriae*, *patriotic*; *diligēns vērītātis*, *truth-loving*; *Epaminōndās adeō vērītātis erat diligēns* *ut ne jocō quidem mentirētur*, *E. was so truth-loving as not to tell lies even in jest*.

REMARKS.—1. The simple test is the substitution of the relative and the verb: *amāns* (participle), *loving (who is loving)*; *amāns* (adjective), *fond* (substantive), *lover*; *patiēns* (part.), *bearing (who is bearing)*; *patiēns* (adjective), *enduring* (substantive), *a sufferer*.

2. In later Latin and in the poets almost all adjectives that denote an affection of the mind take a Genitive of the thing to which the affection refers: *aeger timōris*, *sick of fear*; *ambiguus cōsiliī*, *doubtful of purpose*. The seat of the feeling is also put in the Genitive: *aeger animī*, *sick at heart*, *heartsick*; *audāx ingenī*, *daring of disposition*.

III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

Genitive with Verbs of Memory.

RULE.

§ 172. Verbs of REMINDING, REMEMBERING and FORGETTING are construed with the Genitive: *admonēre egestātis*, *to remind of poverty*; *locī meminisse*, *to remember a place*; *oblivisci officiī*, *to forget duty*; **Ipse jubet mortis tē meminisse Deus*, *MART.*, *God himself bids you remember death*.

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of REMINDING also take the Ablative with *dē*, *from*, *of*, and the Acc. Neut. of a Pronoun or Numeral Adjective: *Dē avāritiā tuā commonēmur*, *We are reminded of your avarice*; *Discipulōs id ūnum moneo*, *I give scholars this one piece of advice*. (§ 129, R. 2.)

2. Verbs of REMEMBERING and FORGETTING also take the Accusative, especially of things: **Haec olim meminisse juvābit*, *VIRG.*, *To remember these things one day will give us pleasure*; **Dulcēs moriens reminiscitur Argōs*, *VIRG.*, *Dying, he remembers sweet Argos*; *Oblivisci nihil solēs nisi injūriās*, *You are wont to forget nothing except injuries*. *Recordor* (literally — *I bring to heart, to mind*) is commonly construed with the Acc.: **Et vōcem Anchisae magnī vultumque recordor*, *VIRG.*, *And I recall (call to mind) the voice and countenance of Anchises the great*. (With persons, *dē*.)

3. *Venit mihi in mentem*, *it comes into my mind, occurs to me*, may be construed impersonally with the Genitive, or personally with a subject: *Venit mihi in mentem Platōnis*, *or Plato, Plato occurs to me*.

Genitive with Verbs of Emotion.

RULE.

§ 173. *MISEREOR* and *MISERESCO*, *I pity*, and the Impersonal Verbs *MISERET*, *it moves to pity*, *POENITET*, *it repents*, *PIGET*, *it irks*, *PUDET*, *it makes ashamed*, *TAEDET* and *PERTAESUM EST*, *it tires*, take the Accusative of the Person, and the

Genitive of the Exciting Cause: *Miserere labōrum, pity our toils*; *Miseret mē frātris, I am sorry for my brother*; *Poenitet mē cōsiliī, I repent of my plan*; **Miseret tē aliōrum, tuū tē nec miseret nec pudet, PLAUT., You are sorry for others, for yourself you are neither sorry nor ashamed. (Pudet deōrum hominumque, It is a shame in the sight of gods and men.)*

REMARK.—These Impersonals can also have a subject, chiefly a Demonstrative or Relative Pronoun: *Nōn tē haec pudet? Do not these things put you to the blush?*

Genitive with Judicial Verbs.

RULE.

§ 174. Verbs of ACCUSING, CONVICTING, CONDEMNING and ACQUITTING take the Genitive of the Charge: *accūsāre aliquem fūrti, to accuse a man of theft*; *convincere maleficiū, to convict of misdemeanor*; *damnāri repetundārum, to be condemned of extortion*; *absolvere improbitātis, to acquit of dishonesty*; **Parce tuum vātem sceleris damnāre Cupīdō, Ov., Be slow to condemn thy bard of crime, O Cupid.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of CONDEMNING and ACQUITTING take the Ablative as well as the Genitive of the CHARGE and the PUNISHMENT, and always the Ablative of the FINE: *accūsāre capitis, or capite, to bring a capital charge*; *damnāre capitis, or capite, to condemn to death*; *damnāri decem mīllibus, to be fined 10,000. Multāre, to mulct, is always construed with the Ablative; multāre pecūniā, to mulct in, of money.*

2. Most verbs belonging to this class take also, instead of the Genitive, the Abl. with *DE*, *from, of*: *accūsāre dē nēgligentiā, to accuse of negligence.*

Genitive with Verbs of Rating and Buying.

RULE.

§ 175. Verbs of RATING and BUYING are construed with the Genitive of the general value or cost, and the Ablative of the particular value or cost. (§ 200.)

Verbs of RATING are: *aestimāre, to value*; *putāre, to reckon*;

dūcere, *to take*; habēre, *to hold*; pendere, *to weigh*; facere, *to make, put*; esse, *to be* (worth).

Verbs of BUYING are: emere, *to buy*; vëndere, *to sell*; vēnīre, *to be for sale*; stāre and cōnstāre, *to cost, to come to*; prōstāre, licēre, *to be exposed, left (for sale)*; condūcere, *to hire*; locāre, *to let*.

§ 176. Genitives of PRICE and VALUE are:

Dear, magnī; *dearer*, plūris; *dearest*, plūrimī, maximī.
Cheap, parvī; *cheaper*, minōris; *cheapest*, minimī.

For { so much, tantī; how much? quantī? nothing, nihil.
At {

Equivalents of nihilī, *nothing*, are floccī, *a hair*, naucī, *a trifle*, assis, *a copper*, and the like; and so also hūjus, *that* (a snap of the finger), with the negative. Tantī is often used in the sense of operae pretium est = *it is worth while*.

*Dumnē ob malefacta peream parvī [id] aestimo, PLAUT., *So long as I am not killed for my misdeeds, little do I care*; Vēdo meum frūmentum nōn plūris quam cēteri, fortasse etiam minōris, *I sell my corn not dearer than everybody else, perhaps even cheaper*; rempūblicam floccī nōn facere, *not to care a fig for the state*. (Quantī coenās? *what do you give for your dinner?* quantī habitās? *what is the rent of your lodgings?*)

REMARKS.—1. With verbs of Buying, TANTĪ, QUANTĪ, PLŪRIS and MINŌRIS are the only Genitives used: the others stand in the Ablative. *Quantī oryza emptā est? Parvō. HOR., *What did the rice cost? Little*. *Argentum accēpi: dōte imperium vëndidi, PLAUT., *I took the money: for a dowry I sold my command*. *Hōc Ithacus velit et magnō mercentur Atridae, VIRG., *this (is what) the Ithacan would wish and the Atridae purchase at a high price*. Aestimo takes the Ablative as well as the Genitive: aestimāre magnō and magnī, *to value highly*.

2. Observe the phrases: bonī, aequī bonique facio, bonī cōnsulo, *I put up with, take in good part*.

Genitive with Interest and Rēfert.

RULE.

§ 177. INTEREST, *it concerns*, RĒFERT, *it is of importance*, take a Genitive of the Person or Thing concerned: Clōdīi interest, *it is Clodius's interest*; Rēfert compositiōnis, *it is of importance for composition*.

§ 178. Instead of the Personal Pronouns meī, tuī, &c., the Abl. Sing. Fem. of the Possessives is employed: meā interest, meā rēfert, *I am concerned*. This is the common construction of RĒFERT.

REMARK.—Meā seems to agree with rē; comp. ē rē esse, *to be to the interest*.

§ 179. The degree of concern is expressed by an Adverb or a Genitive of price. The object of concern is commonly put in the Infinitive, Accusative and Infinitive, ut with the Subjunctive or an interrogative sentence, occasionally in the Nominative of a neuter pronoun: Caesar dicere solēbat nōn tam suā quam reipublicae interesse ut salvus esset, *Cæsar used to say that it was not of so much importance to him(self) as to the State that his life should be spared*; Clōdīi intererat Milōnem perire, *It was to Clodius' interest that Milo should perish*; Quid tuā id rēfert? *What business is that of yours?* Magni rēfert quālī in corpore animī locātī sint, *It is of great importance in what sort of body the souls are situated*.

IV. APPARENT GENITIVE (LOCATIVE).

The Locative case Singular of the First and Second Declensions coincides in form with the Genitive: Hence the

RULE.

§ 180. Names of TOWNS or SMALL ISLANDS of the First or Second Declension, and of the Singular Number, are put in the Genitive of the Place Where: Rōmæ esse, *to be at Rome*; Corinthī habitāre, *to dwell at Corinth*; Rhodī vivere, *to live at Rhodes*.

REMARKS.—1. Appositions are put in the Ablative commonly with *IN*: *Militēs Albae cōstitērunt in urbe opportūnā, the soldiers halted at Alba, a conveniently situated town*; *Archias Antiochiaē nātus est celebrī quondam urbe, Archias was born at Antioch, once a populous city*. When *URBS*, *city*, *oppidum*, *town*, or *INSULA*, *island*, precedes, the name of the city or island is put in the Ablative: *in urbe Rōmā, in the city (of) Rome*; *in insula Samō, in the island (of) Samos*.

2. Other locative forms are, *domī, at home* (Genitive, *domūs*), *humī, on the ground*, and also *belli* and *militiae*, in combination with *domī*: *Parvī sunt foris arma nisi est cōsiliū domī, Arms are of little value abroad unless there is wisdom at home*; *humī jacere, to lie on the ground*; *humī prōsternere, to throw flat on the ground*; *domī militiaeque, belli domique, in peace and in war, in war and in peace*.

3. *Domī* takes the possessive pronoun in the Genitive: *Marcus Drūsus occisus est domī suae, M. Drusus was killed at his own house*; also *domī aliēnae, in a strange house*; **Metuis ut domī meae cūrētur diligenter, TER., You fear that she will not be carefully nursed in my house*; otherwise in *domō castā, in a pure house*; in *domō Periclis, in the house(hold) of Pericles*; in *domō, in the house (not, at home)*.

ABLATIVE.

§ 181. The Ablative is the Adverbial, as the Genitive is the Adjective case. It contains three elements:

A. Where? B. Whence? C. Wherewith?

In a literal sense, the Ablative is commonly used with Prepositions; in a figurative sense, it is commonly used without Prepositions.

A. The Ablative of the Place Where appears in a figurative sense as the Ablative of the Time When.

B. The Ablative of the Place Whence appears as:

1. The Ablative of Origin.
2. The Ablative of Measure.

C. The Ablative of the Thing Wherewith appears in a figurative sense, as:

1. The Ablative of Manner.
2. The Ablative of Quality.
3. The Ablative of Means.

REMARK.—It is impossible to draw the line of demarcation with absolute exactness. So the Ablative of Cause may be derived from any of the three fundamental significations of the case, which is evidently a composite one.

I. THE LITERAL MEANINGS OF THE ABLATIVE.

A. Ablative of the Place Where.

Ablativus localis.

RULE.

§ 182. The Ablative answers the question *Where?* and takes as a rule the preposition *IN*: *in portū nāvigo, I am sailing in harbor*; *in scēnā, on the stage*; *sedēre in equō, to sit on a horse*; *in eō flūmine pōns erat, over that river there was a bridge*.

REMARK.—Verbs of PLACING and kindred significations take the Ablative with *IN*, to designate the result of the motion: *pōnere, to place*; *collocāre, to put*; *statuere, cōstituere, to set*; *cōsiderere, to settle*; *dēfigere, to plant*; *dēmergere, to plunge*; *imprimere, to press upon*; *īnscrībere, to write upon*; *incidere, to carve upon*: *Plato ratiōnem in capite posuit, Iram in pectore locāvit, Plato has put reason in the head, has placed anger in the breast*; *Lūcrētia cultrum in corde dēfigit, Lucretia plants a knife in, thrusts a knife down into, her heart*; *Philosophī in eīs ipsīs librīs quōs scribunt dē contemnendā glōriā sua nōmina īnscrībunt, Philosophers write their own names on (the titles of) the very books which they write about contempt of glory*; *Index incīditur in aēneīs tabulis, An index is engraved on tablets of bronze*. *Impōnere* is commonly construed with *IN* and the Accusative: *militēs in nāvēs impōnere, to put the soldiers on board the vessels*. (The same observation applies to *SUB*: **Pōne sub currū nimium propinquū sōlis in terrā domibus negatā, Hor., Put (me) under the chariot of the all-too neighboring sun, in a land denied to dwellings*.)

RULE.

§ 183. Names of CITIES and SMALL ISLANDS of the Third Declension or Plural Number are put in the Ablative of the Place Where, without the preposition *IN*: *Ut Rōmae (§ 180) cōsulēs sic Carthāgine quotānnīs binī rēgēs creābantur, As at Rome*

(two) *consuls, so in Carthage two kings were created yearly*; Tarquinius Superbus mortuus est Cūmīs, *Tarquin the Overbearing died at Cumae*. So also rūre, *in the country*.

REMARK.—Appositions are commonly made with IN: Neāpoli in celeberrimō oppidō, *at Naples, a very populous town*. When URBE, *city*, or OPPIDO, *town*, precedes, the preposition is always employed: in oppidō Neāpoli, *in the town of Naples*. Comp. § 180, R. 1.

RULE.

§ 184. In CITATIONS FROM BOOKS and ENUMERATIONS, the Ablative of the Place Where is used without IN: librō tertiō, *third book*; versū decimō, *tenth verse*; aliō locō, *elsewhere*.

REMARK.—Locus, *place*, used metaphorically, generally omits IN: hōc locō, *in this position, situation*; in hōc locō, *in this place, part of the country*. Librō is used when the whole book, in librō, when merely a passage in the book is devoted to the subject in hand.

RULE.

§ 185. In DESIGNATIONS OF PLACE with TŌTUS, *whole*, and the like, the Ablative of the Place Where is generally used without IN: tōtō orbe terrārum, *in the whole world, throughout the world*; * Battiadēs tōtō semper cantābitur orbe, Ov., *Battiades (Callimachus) will always be sung throughout the world*.

RULE.

§ 186. In all such designations of place as may be regarded in the light of Cause, Manner, or Instrument, the Ablative is used without a preposition: Eādem viā quā vēnit fūgit, *by the same way he came, he fled*; flūmine frūmentum subvehere, *to carry corn down by river*; marī Adriaticō nāvigāre, *to voyage over the Adriatic sea*; terrā marique bella gerere, *to carry on wars by land and sea*; imperātor milites (in) castris tenēbat, *the general kept his soldiers in camp*; recipere aliquem tectō, oppidō, *to admit a man into one's house, town*; cognāti pugnā Marathōniā interfecti fuerant, *their kinsmen had been killed in the battle of Marathon*.

B. *Ablative of the Place Whence.**Ablātivus sēparātivus.*

This is the original use of the Ablative proper.

RULE.

§ 187. The Ablative answers the question *Whence?* with or without the prepositions *EX*, *out of*, *DĒ*, *from*, *AB*, *off*: The prepositions are omitted chiefly with verbs of separating: *arcēre tectō*, *to shut out of a house*; *patriā pellere*, *to drive from (one's) country*; **Cēdāmus patriā*, *Juv.*, *Let us withdraw from our native land*; *Magistrātū sē abdicāre*, *to abdicate an office*; *Multōs fortūna liberat poenā*, *metū nēmīnem*, *fortune relieves many of punishment, none of fear*; *Alcibiadem Athēniēnsēs ē civitatē expulērunt*, *The Athenians banished Alcibiades from the state*; *Hannibal ex Italiā dēcēdere coactus est*, *Hannibal was forced to withdraw from Italy*; **Crēde mihī mōrēs distant ā carmine nōstrō*, *Ov.*, *Believe me, my character is wide apart from my poetry*; *Hostem submovēre statīōne*, *ex mūrō ac turribus, ā portā*, *to dislodge the enemy from his position, from the wall and towers, from the gate*. So also Adjectives of separation: (ab) *omnī animī perturbātiōne liberum esse*, *to be free from all mental excitement*; (ab) *omnibus hūmānīs vitiīs immūnem esse*, *to be free from all human vices*.

REMARKS.—1. Compounds with *dī* (*dis*) also take the Dative (in poetry): **Paullum sepultae distat inertiae cēlata virtūs*, *HOR.*, *Little doth concealed worth differ from buried inactivity*.

2. The Place whence gives the point of view from which. In English a different translation is often given, though not always necessarily: *ā tergō*, *in the rear*; *ex parte dextrā*, *on the right side*; *ab oriente*, *on the east*; *ā tantō spatiō*, *at such a distance*; *ex fugā*, *on the flight* (*ā rē frūmentāriā labōrāre*, *to be embarrassed in the matter of provisions*).

RULE.

§ 188. Names of CITIES and SMALL ISLANDS are put in the Ablative of the Place Whence without a preposition: Dēmarātus fūgit Tarquiniōs Corinthō, *Demaratus fled to Tarquinius from Corinth*; Dolābella Dēlō proficiscitur, *Dolabella sets out from Delos*.

REMARKS.—1. The prepositions AB (Ā) and EX (Ē) are sometimes used for the sake of greater exactness. When the common nouns URBE, *city*, and OPPIDUM, *town*, are employed, the use of the preposition is the rule: ex Apollōniā Ponti urbe, *from Apollonia, a city of Pontus*; ex oppidō Gergoviā, *from the town of Gergovia*. Comp. §§ 180, R., 188, R.

2. Domō, *from home*; humō, *from the ground*; rūre, *from the country*, follow the construction of the names of cities.

3. The poets use the Ablative freely as a whence case.

RULE.

§ 189. Verbs of DEPRIVING and FILLING, of PLENTY and WANT, take the Ablative: Dēmocritus dīcitur oculīs sē privāsse, *Democritus is said to have deprived himself of his eyes*; Deus bonīs omnibus explēvit mundum, *God has filled the universe with all blessings*; vacāre culpā magnum est solātium, *to be void of blame is a great comfort*; abundant dulcibus vitīs, *they abound in charming faults*; *Nōn caret effectū quod voluēre duō, OV., *What two have resolved on never lacks execution*; *Nōn eget hīc medicīs nōn lectīs mollibus aeger, PROP., *He does not need physicians nor a soft couch in his sickness*.

REMARKS.—1. Egeo and indigeo, *I am in need of*, also take the Genitive: Nōn tam artis indigent quam labōris, *They are not so much in need of skill as of industry*.

2. Adjectives of PLENTY and WANT take the Genitive, but some of them follow the analogy of the verb (§170, R. 1): Onustī cibō et vinō, *laden with food and wine*; *Pollicitīs dives quilibet esse potest, OV., *Anybody can be rich in promises*; *Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus, PLAUT., *Love is fruitful both in honey and in gall* (of acrimony.)

RULE.

§ 190. OPUS EST, *there is work (need)*, with the Dative, takes an Ablative of the Thing Needed : but the Thing Needed may be the subject and OPUS the predicate :

Opus est mihi librō, libris, *I have need of a book, of books.*

Liber mihi opus est, *a book is a necessity to me.*

Librī mihi opus sunt, *books are a necessity to me.*

Auctōritāte tuā nōbīs opus est, *we need your authority* ; quid opus est verbīs, *what is the use of words* ; dux nōbīs opus est, *we want a leader* ; quid opus est mātūrāre ? *What is the use (need) of hurrying ?* or mātūrātō. So also ūsus : speculō mulierī ūsus est, *the woman wants a mirror*. The Genitive is rare.

C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

Ablātivus Sociātivus.

RULE.

§ 191. The Ablative of Attendance takes the preposition CUM, *with* : arcula cum ornāmentis, *a little box with ornaments* ; *Nec tēcum possum vivere nec sine tē, MART., *I cannot live with you nor without you.*

REMARKS.—1. In military phrases, the troops with which a march is made are put in the Ablative, with or without CUM ; generally without CUM when an adjective is used (Ablative of Manner), with CUM when no adjective is used (Ablative of Attendance) : Rēx Hellēspontum cum exercitū trānsiit, *The king crossed the Hellespont with an army* ; Dictātor (cum) ingentī exercitū ab urbe prōfectus est, *The dictator set out from the city with a great army.*

2. Not to be confounded with the above is the Instrumental Ablative : nāvibus prōficiscī, *to set out by ship*. So also with verbs which denote other military actions : hostēs sagittāriis et funditōribus terrēbat, *he was frightening the enemy with archers and slingers* ; *Nīl actum est nisi Poenō milite portās, Frangimus, JUV., *Naught is accomplished unless we break the gates with the Punic soldiery* (as if with a battering-ram). § 12, R. 2.

II. THE FIGURATIVE MEANINGS OF THE ABLATIVE.

A. The Place Where is transferred to the Time When.

Ablative of Time.

RULE.

§ 192. *a.* TIME WHEN OR WITHIN WHICH is put in the Ablative: *Quā nocte nātus est Alexander eādē Dīānae Ephesiae templum dēflagrāvit, On the same night on which Alexander was born, the temple of Diana of Ephesus burnt to the ground; *Nocte diēque potest aliēnum sūmere vultum, JUV., night and day he can assume another man's countenance; Sātūrnī stella trīgintā ferē ānnīs cursum suum cōficit, The planet Saturn completes its period in about thirty years.*

REMARKS.—1. TIME WITHIN WHICH may embrace both extremities, and so be equivalent to PER, *through*, and the Accusative: *Pugnātum est continenter hōris quinque, They fought five hours continuously. Tōtus, whole, all, of time, follows the analogy of the Tōtus of space (§ 185): *Tōtā nocte pluit, redeunt spectācula māne, VIRG., All night it rained: the shows came back in the morning.*

2. Especially to be noted is the Ablative of time with HIC, *this*; ILLE, *that*: *His ānnīs quadringentīs Rōmae rēx erat? Was there a king at Rome within these four hundred years? hīs duōbus mēnsibus, within the last two months.* Transferred to the Oratio Obliqua HIC becomes ILLE: *Diodōrus respondit sē paucis illis diēbus argentum misisse Lilybaeum, Diodorus answered that he had sent money to Lilybaeum within a few days, a few days before.*

RULE.

§ 192. *b.* The Ablative with the preposition IN is used of points within a period of time, or of the character of the time: *bis in diē, twice a day; in pueritiā, in boyhood; in adolēcentiā, in youth; with an adjective, IN may be omitted: primā pueritiā, in early boyhood; illō tempore, at that time; in illō tempore, in those circumstances, at that crisis; in tempore or*

tempore = *at the right time*; bellō Persicō, *at the time of the Persian war*; in bellō, *in war times*; in pāce, *in peace times*.

REMARK.—DE, *from*, is also used in designations of time: *Ut jugulent hominēs surgunt dē nocte latrōnēs, HOR., *To kill people, highwaymen rise by night*, i. e., *while it is yet night*. Intrā biennium, *within two years, in less than two years*; inter tot ānnōs ūnus innocēns imperātor inventus est, *in so many years (all those years, but) one innocent emperor was found*; cum primā lūce, *with daybreak*.

B. The Place Whence is transferred—1. To Origin; 2. To Measure.

1. Ablative of Origin.

RULE.

§ 193. PARTICIPLES which designate BIRTH take the Ablative of Origin, with or without the Prepositions EX, *out of*, DE, *from*: *Dis genite et genitūre Deōs, VIRG., *Begotten of Gods and destined to beget Gods*! *Sate sanguine dīvum! VIRG., *Offspring of the blood of Gods*! Diānam (ex) Jove et Lātōnā nātā esse accēpimus, *We have learned that Diana is the daughter of Jove and Latona*; *Maecēnās atavīs ēdite rēgibus, HOR., *Maecenas, offshoot of ancestral kings*; *Ōdērunt nātōs dē pellice, JUV., *They hate the offspring of the concubine*. AB, *off*, is employed of remote progenitors: Plērīque Belgae sunt ortī ab Germānīs, *most Belgians are descended from the Germans*.

2. Ablative of Measure.

The Ablative gives the point from which a thing is measured or treated. See § 187, R. 2.

RULE.

§ 194. The Ablative is put in answer to the questions FROM WHAT POINT OF VIEW? ACCORDING TO WHAT? BY WHAT? Magnōs hominēs virtūte mētīmur, nōn fortunā, *We measure great men*

by worth, not by fortune; *Dēscriptus erat populus Rōmānus cēnsū, ordinibus, aetātibus, The people of Rome was drawn off according to income, rank (and) age*; **Sī quaeris cui sint similēs, cognōsceris illis, Ov., If you ask whom they are like, (why) you are known by them*; **Ennius ingeniō maximus arte rudis, Ov., Ennius in genius great, in art unskilled. Crīne ruber, red haired*; *captus oculis* (literally, caught in the eyes), *blind*; *captus mente, insane*; *meā sententiā, according to my opinion*; *jūre, by right*; *lēge, by law*.

REMARKS.—1. Prepositions are also used: *Caesaris adventus ex colōre vestitūs cognitus est, The arrival of Caesar was known by the color of his clothing*; *Dē gestū intelligo quid respondeās, I understand by your gesture what answer you are giving*; *ex lēge, according to law*; *ex pactō, according to agreement*; *ex (dē) mōre, according to custom*; *ex animi sententiā, according to (my) heart's desire*; *ex ūsū, useful*; **Ab animō aeger fui, PLAUT., At heart I was sick*.

2. *DIGNUS, worthy*, and *INDIGNUS, unworthy*, are most conveniently referred to this head: **Digne puer meliōre flammā, Hor.*; **Tua vitā dignior aetās, VIRG. § 170, R. 3. So also dignor, I deem worthy*.

RULE.

§ 195. The ABLATIVE OF MEASURE is used with the COMPARATIVE instead of *QUAM, than*, with the Nominative or Accusative: *Tunica propior palliō, The shirt is nearer than the cloak*; *Phīdīe simulācris cōgitāre possumus pulchriōra* (= *quam simulācrā*), *We can imagine more beautiful things than the statues of Phidias*. So also after adverbs, but not so freely in prose: *Sapientius tē ipsō, more wisely than yourself*; **Pulchrum ! ornātum turpēs mōrēs pejus caenō collinunt, PLAUT., A bad character besmirches fine clothes worse than mud*; **Cūr Sybaris olivum sanguine vīperinō cautius vitat?* (= *quam sanguinem vīperinum*), *Hor., why does Sybaris avoid oil more carefully than the blood of a viper?* See § 111.

REMARKS.—1. The comparative is also employed with the Ablative of certain abstract substantives and adjectives used as substantives: *Opī-*

niōne celerius vēnit, *He came more quickly than was thought* (—quam opīnio erat); plūs aequō, *more than was fair*.

2. Alius, with the Ablative, *other than*, is poetic.

RULE.

§ 196. MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is put in the Ablative: Turrēs dēnis pedibus quam mūrus altiōrēs sunt, *The towers are (by) ten feet higher than the wall*; *Perfer et obdūrā: multō graviōra tulistī, Ov., *Endure to the end and be firm: you have borne much more grievous burdens*; *Quōque minor spēs est, hōc magis ille cupit, Ov., *The less his hope the greater his desire*; *Hoc sōlō propior quod amīcōs conjugis ōdit, Juv. (§ 311.)

REMARKS.—1. This rule applies to verbs involving difference as well as to comparatives: Aesculāpiī templum quinque millibus passuum ab urbe Epidaurō distat, *The temple of Aesculapius is five miles from the city of Epidaurus*.

2. The Accusative is sometimes employed.

3. Especially to be noted is the use of the Ablative of Measure with ANTE, *before*, and POST, *after*. Paucīs ante diēbus, *Paucīs diēbus ante, a few days before*; paucīs post diēbus, *paucīs diēbus post, a few days after, afterward*. Duōbus ānnis postquam Rōma condita est, *Two years after Rome was founded*; Paulō post Trojam captam, *A little while after the taking of Troy*. The Accusative can also be employed: post paucōs ānnōs, *after a few years*; ante paucōs ānnōs, *a few years before*; and the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers: *two hundred years after(ward)* may be:

Ducentīs ānnis post	or	Ducentēsimō ānnō post,
Post ducentōs ānnōs	“	Post ducentēsimum ānnum.

Ante hōs sex mēnsēs, *six months ago* (comp. 192 a. R. 2): also, abhinc sex mēnsēs, *abhinc sex mēnsibus*.

C. Ablative of the Thing Wherewith.

Ablātivus sociātivus. Ablative of Attendance.

1. Ablative of Manner.

RULE.

§ 197. The Ablative of Manner answers the question *How?* and is used with the Preposition *cum*, *with*, when it has no Adjective, with or without *cum* when it has an Adjective: *Miltiadēs summā aequitāte rēs cōstituit Chersonēsī, Miltiades settled the affairs of the Chersonese with the greatest fairness; *Nōn facile est aequā commoda mente patī, Ov., It is not easy to bear good fortune with an even temper; cum cūrā scribere, to write with care; magnā cūrā, or cum magnā cūrā, magnā cum cūrā, with great care.*

REMARK.—Several Ablatives are used adverbially without an Adjective or Preposition: *ordine, in an orderly manner; silentiō, silently; cāsū, by chance, accidentally; viā et ratiōne, methodically; dolō, fraude, fraudulently.* It is sometimes hard to distinguish between the manner and the instrument: *vī, violently and by violence; vī et armīs, by force of arms; pedibus, afoot, nāvibus, by ship.* Notice, also, the use of *per*, *through*, with the Accusative: *per vim, by violence; per litterās, by letter.*

2. Ablative of Quality.

RULE.

§ 198. The ABLATIVE OF QUALITY has no Preposition, and is always found in combination with an Adjective Attribute, or an equivalent; *Āgēsilaūs statūrā fuit humilī, Agesilaus was (a man) of low stature; Cato singulārī fuit prūdentiā et industriā, Cato was (a man) of unique foresight and energy; *Ista turpiculō puella nāsō, CAT., That girl of yours with the ugly nose; clāvī ferreī digiti pollicis crassitudinis, Iron nails of the thickness of your thumb.*

REMARK.—External and transient qualities are put by preference in the Ablative; while such qualities as *measure, number, time, and space*, are put in the Genitive only.

3. *Ablative of Means.*

RULE.

§ 199. The Instrument is put in the Ablative without a Preposition; the Agent in the Ablative, with the Preposition **AB** (**Ā**) (§ 12); while the Person through whom is expressed by the Preposition **PER**, and the Accusative: *Pyrrhus lapide interfectus est, Pyrrhus was killed by a stone*; *Pyrrhus ā muliere interfectus est, Pyrrhus was killed by a woman*:

<p><i>Xerxēs certior factus est,</i> <i>Xerxes was informed,</i></p>	}	<p>1. <i>nūntiō, by a message.</i> 2. <i>ā nūntiō, by a messenger.</i> 3. <i>per nūntium, by means of a messenger.</i></p>
---	---	--

* *Nec bene prōmeritis capitur neque tangitur irā, LUCR., (God) is not (to be) cajoled by merit nor touched by anger*; **Ipse docet quid agam: fās est et ab hoste docērī, OV. (§ 18)*; **Discite sārārī per quem didicistis amāre, OV., Learn to be healed by means of (him by) whom you learned to love.*

REMARKS.—1. When the Instrument is personified and regarded as an Agent, or the Agent is regarded as an Instrument, the constructions are reversed (§ 12. R. 2.)

2. Notice under this head: *assuētus labōre, accustomed to labor* (familiarized with labor); *Quid fiet nāve? What will become of the ship?* *Quid mē futurum est? What is to become of me?*

3. *Nitor, I stay myself*, is construed with the Ablative, with or without **IN**; *Hastili nixus, leaning on a spear* (stayed by a spear); *ējus in vitā nitēbatur salūs civitātis, The weal of the State depended on his life.*

4. *Ablative of Price.*

RULE.

§ 200. **DEFINITE PRICE** is put in the Ablative: *Vigintī*

talentis ūnam ōrātiōnem vēndidit, *He sold one speech for twenty talents.* Other examples, see § 176, R. 1.

REMARK.—Mūtāre, *to exchange*, is put with Accusative of the Thing Given and the Ablative of the Thing Received in exchange, or (less frequently) the reverse: Miseram pācem bellō mūtāre, *to (give in) exchange a wretched peace for war* (or, *to get in exchange for war a wretched peace*); *Īma summis mūtāre, *to exchange high and low (to turn things upside down)*; *Cūr valle permūtem Sabinā divitiās operōsiōrēs, HOR., *Why should I exchange my Sabine vale for riches which will breed (me) greater trouble.*

5. Ablative with Sundry Verbs.

RULE.

§ 201. The Deponent Verbs ŪTOR, ABŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, and VESCOR, take the Ablative: Victōriā ūtī nēscīs, *How to make use of victory you know not*; abūtēre patientiā nōstrā, *you will abuse our long-suffering*; lacte vescēbantur, *they fed on milk* (made their food of milk); lūce fruimur, *we enjoy the light*; imperiō potiri, *to possess one's self of the rule*; fungī mūnere, *to acquit one's self of a duty.*

REMARKS.—1. These Ablatives are commonly regarded as Ablatives of the Instrument. They have been grouped here for convenience of reference. In older Latin they are sometimes combined with the Accusative. Hence they have a gerundive: in mūnere fungendō, *in discharging a duty.* § 218, R. 4.

2. Ūtī aliquō amīcō, *to have a man to friend* (to enjoy his friendship).

3. Vivo, *I live*, is construed like vescor: aliēnā misericordiā vivo, *I live on the charity of others.* Potior (*I possess myself*) sometimes takes the Genitive; always potiri rērum, *to possess the supreme power.*

D. Ablative of Cause.

The Ablative of Cause may be referred to so many classes, that it is most convenient to regard it as a class by itself.

RULE.

§ 202. The Ablative of Cause is used without a preposition, chiefly with verbs of emotion: *Castor gaudet equis, HOR.

Castor rejoices in horses ; *Quīdam vitīis suis glōriantur, some make a boast of their vices* ; *Quis poterit fortūnae stabilitāte fidere, who can trust the stability of fortune ?* *Officia dēserunt mollitiā animī, they shirk their duties from effeminacy of temper* ; **Ōdērunt peccāre bonī virtūtis amōre, Hor., The good hate to sin from love of virtue* ; *jussū cīvium, at the bidding of the citizens* ; *meō rogātū, at my request*, and other verbal ablatives. So also *causā* and *grātiā*, *for the sake of*.

REMARKS.—1. The moving cause is often expressed by a participle with the ablative: *adductus, led* ; *ardēns, fired* ; *commōtus, stirred up* ; *incitātus, egged on* ; *incensus, inflamed* ; *impulsus, driven on*, *irā, by anger* ; *odiō, by hate*. *Metū, metū perterritus, from fear* — *propter metum*.

2. The preventing cause is expressed by *prae, for* ; **Prae gaudiō ubi sim nescio, Ter., I know not where I am for joy*.

E. Ablative Absolute.

§ 203. The so-called Ablative Absolute is an Ablative of Manner with a participle, and serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence. Instead of the participle, a predicative substantive or adjective can be employed.

The Ablative Absolute represents a great variety of relations: *Xerxe regnante* may mean: *WHILE Xerxes is, was reigning* ; *BECAUSE Xerxes is, was reigning* ; *IF Xerxes is, were reigning* ; *ALTHOUGH Xerxes is, was reigning* ; *Xerxe victō, Xerxes being, having been, conquered* ; *Xerxe rēge, while Xerxes was king* ; *Patre vivō, WHILE father is, was alive, in father's lifetime*. Examples: see § 459 fol.

REMARKS.—1. As the Latin language has no Perf. Part. Active, except the Deponent, which is thus used, the Passive construction is far more common than in English: *Tunc juvenēs veste positā corpora oleō perunxērunt, Then the youths, (having) laid aside their clothing, anointed their bodies with oil*, or, *laid aside their clothing and anointed their bodies with oil*.

2. The Ablative Absolute is often to be rendered by a co-ordinate sentence: *Zeuxis flāgitāvit ut remōtō linteō pictūram ostenderet, Zeuxis asked him to remove the linen drapery, and show the picture*.

3. As a rule, the Ablative Absolute can stand only when it is not iden-

tical with the subject, object, or dependent case of the verbal predicate. *Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his necklace*, is to be rendered: *Manlius caesum Gallum torque spoliavit*. The rule is most frequently violated when the dependent case is in the Genitive: *Jugurtha fratre meo interfecto regnum ejus sceleris sui praedam fecit*, *Jugurtha killed my brother, and (= after killing my brother) made his throne the booty of his crime*.

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 204. The Prepositions are local adverbs, which serve to define more narrowly the local ideas of the cases. The only cases that convey local ideas are the Accusative and Ablative. The Accusative, as the case of the Direct Object, represents the relation *whither?* the Ablative represents the relations *whence?* and *where?*

REMARKS.—1. In verbs of motion, the result of the motion is often considered as *rest in a place* (where): *pōnere in locō*, *to put in a place*. (§ 182 R.)

2. In verbs of rest, the rest is sometimes conceived as the result of motion: *habēre in potestātem*, *to have (got) in (to) one's power*; *in carcerem asservāre*, *to keep in jail*.

Position of the Preposition.

§ 205. The Preposition generally precedes the case.

REMARKS.—1. *VERSUS*, *-ward*, and *TENUS*, *as far as*, are postpositive, and so is *CUM*, *with*, in combination with the Personal Pronouns and Relative: *mēcum*, *with me*; * *Nec tēcum possum vivere nec sine tē*, *MART.*, *I can't live either with you or without you*; *sēcum*, *with one's-self*; *quōcum* (also *quicūcum*), *with whom* (likewise, *cum quō*); *quibuscum*, *with whom*, *wherewith* (also, *cum quibus*).

2. Other prepositions are postponed chiefly after the relative: *quem contrā*, *against whom*; *quōs inter*, *among whom*; *quō dē*, *from whom*.

3. Poets and affected writers are very free in putting the Preposition after its case.

§ 206. The Preposition is often put between the Attribute

and the Case : *magnō cum metū, with great fear* : whereas the Genitive and other forms of the Attribute and connecting particles are often put between the Preposition and its case : *Post vērō Sullae victōriam, but after Sulla's victory.*

REMARK.—Especially to be noted is the position of *PER, through (by)*, in adjurations : **Lydia dic per omnēs Tē deōs ōrō, Hor., *Lydia, tell, by all the gods, I pray thee.*

Repetition and Omission of the Preposition.

§ 207. With different words which stand in the same connection, the same Preposition is repeated, when the Preposition is emphatic, or the individual words are to be distinguished : *et ex urbe et ex agris, both from (the) city and from (the) country* ; otherwise it is omitted : *P. Clōdus ā Milōne candidātō cōsulātūs jugulātus est, P. C. was killed by Milo, a candidate for the consulship* ; *Cimōn in eandem invidiam incidit (in) quam pater suus, Cimon fell into the same odium as his father* ; **Discite sārārī per quem (= per eum per quē) didicistis amārē, Ov. (§ 199.)*

REMARK.—Several Prepositions, such as *contrā, on the other hand, extrā, outside, infrā, below, suprā, above, ultrā, beyond*, are used also as adverbs without a case : **Iliacōs intrā mūrōs peccātur et extrā, Hor., Inside of the walls of Ilium sin is wrought, and outside (too).*

§ 208. I. Prepositions construed with the Accusative are :—

ante,	apud,	ad,	adversus,
circum,	circā,	citrā,	cis,
ergā,	contrā,	inter,	extrā,
infrā,	intrā,	juxtā,	ob,
penes,	pōne,	post and	praeter,
prope,	propter,	per,	secundum,
supra,	versus,	ultrā,	trāns.

AD, at, to (comp. ad-do, I Juxtā [adjoining], hard by, put to).	near, next to.
ADVERSUS, } [turned to], to	OB (over against, op-posite to),
ADVERSUM, } wards, over	right before, with a
	view to, for.
ANTE [over against, facing], before.	PENES, with = in the power of; Hōc nōn penes mē est, this does not lie with me.
APUD, at, near, in the presence of (official), with (French, chez).	PER (along), through, by way of, owing to, by.
CIRCUM, } around, about.	PŌNE, behind (rare).
CIRCŌ, }	POST, behind, after.
CIRCITER, about (with numerals).	PRAETER, on before, past, beyond, contrary to.
CIS, } this side, short of, cor-	PROPE, near.
CITEĀ, } relative of ULTRĀ.	PROPTER, near, on account of.
CONTRĀ (= cum + tra), op-posite to, over against, opposed to, against.	SECUNDUM [following], next to, immediately behind, after, along, according to.
ERGĀ, towards, seldom of place; generally friendly relations.	SUPRĀ, above, higher up (earlier).
EXTRĀ, without, outside of beside, opposed to INTRĀ.	TRĀNS, on the other side, beyond.
INFRA, beneath, lower down, later.	ULTRĀ, on that side, beyond.
INTER, between, within, among.	VERSUS, -ward (always postponed). Rōmam versus, Romeward.
INTRĀ, within.	

§ 209. II. Prepositions construed with the Ablative are : —

Ā, AB, and ABS, off, of, from, by (opposed to AD).	ABS, used chiefly before tē, thee.
Before vowels and h : AB; before consonants : Ā or AB;	ABSQUE (off), without (antiquated).

CLAM (<i>secretly</i>), <i>unknown to</i> .	PRÆ, <i>in front of, side by side</i>
CŌRAM, <i>face to face with, in</i> <i>the presence of</i> (acci- dental).	<i>with, for</i> (preventive cause).
CUM, <i>with</i> .	PRŌ, <i>before, for</i> .
DĒ, <i>down from, from, of</i> = <i>about</i> .	SINE, <i>without</i> , opp. to CUM (no local signification).
EX, Ē, <i>out, of, from</i> (opposed to IN).	TENUS (<i>to the extent of</i>), <i>as far</i> <i>as</i> (occasionally with the Genitive).
Before vowels and consonants, EX; before consonants, Ē.	

§ 210. III. Prepositions construed with the Accusative and Ablative.

	ACCUSATIVE.	ABLATIVE.
IN, <i>in</i> ,	<i>into, for</i> (purpose),	<i>in</i> .
SUB, <i>under</i> ,	<i>about</i> (of time),	<i>about</i> (of time) [rarely].
SUPER, <i>over</i> ,	<i>over, above,</i> <i>over and above,</i>	<i>about</i> = DĒ (in prose, rarely <i>over</i>).
SUBTER, <i>under</i> ,	<i>under, beneath,</i>	<i>under, beneath</i> [rarely].

The Infinitive as a Noun.

§ 211. The Infinitive is the substantive form of the verb. The Infinitive differs from a verbal substantive, in that it retains the adverbial attribute, the designations of voice and time, and the regimen of the verb: *amāre, to love*; *valdē amāre, to love hugely*; *amārī, to be loved*; *amāvisse, to have loved*; *amāre aliquem, to love a man*; *nocēre alicuī, to hurt a man*.

In consequence of this double nature, the Infinitive may be used as a noun or as a verb.

§ 212. The Infinitive, as a Noun, is used regularly in two cases only—Nominative and Accusative. In the other cases its place is supplied by the Gerund and the Ablative Supine.

The Infinitive as a Subject.

§ 213. The Infinitive, as a Subject, is treated as a neuter substantive: Errāre hūmānum est, *to err is human*; Dulce est prō patriā mori, *It is sweet to die for one's country*; *Incipere multō est quam impetrāre facilius, PLAUT., *Beginning is much easier than winning*; Contendisse decōrum est, OV. (§ 3.)

The Infinitive as an Object.

RULE.

§ 214. The Infinitive is used as the Object of Auxiliary verbs which denote WILL, POWER, DUTY, HABIT, INCLINATION, RESOLVE, CONTINUANCE, END, and the like, with their opposites: *Et precor ut possim tūtius esse miser, OV., *And I pray that I may be more safely wretched*; *Discite sārārī per quem didicistis amāre, OV. (§ 199); *Vulnera quae fēcit debuit ipse pati, OV. (§ 49, R.); *Nōn ego, quod primō meminī sperāre solēbam, jam precor ut conjux tū meus esse velis, OV., *I do not now ask (what at first, I remember, I was wont to hope) that you will consent to be my wedded husband*; Cato esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat, Cato preferred being (good) to seeming good; *Maledictis dēterrēre nē scribat parat, TER. (§ 334); Vereor laudāre praesentem, *I feel a delicacy about praising one who is present*; Vincere scīs, Hannibal; victoriā uti nēscīs, *How to conquer, you know, Hannibal*; how to make use of victory, you know not; *Rēligiōnum animum nōdis exsolvere pergo, LUCR., *I go on to loose the spirit from the bonds of superstitious creeds*; *Atque ut vivāmus vivere desinimus, MART., *And that we may live, we cease to live.*

REMARKS.—1. Habeo scribere, *I have it (in my power) to write* — possum scribere; Nihil habeo ad tē scribere, *I cannot write any thing to you.*

2. Verbs which denote RESOLVE take UT, *that*, as well as the Inf.

§ 330. So, also, opto, *I desire*. § 330. The poets use the Infinitive freely, like *ut*, with the Subjunctive, the Accusative Supine, or *ad*, *to*, with the Gerund or Gerundive. **Nōn ferrō Libycōs populāre penātēs vēnimus*, VIRG., *We have not come to lay waste the households of Libya with the sword*; **Semper in Oceanum mittit mē quaerere genūmās*, PROP., *She is always sending me to the ocean to look for pearls*.

3. Verbs which denote HOPE and PROMISE take the Accusative and Future Infinitive: *spēro mē hoc adeptūrum esse*, *I hope to, that I shall, obtain this*; *prōmittēbat sē ventūrum esse*, *he kept promising that he would come, to come*. *Doceo*, *I teach*, *jubeo*, *I bid*, *veto*, *I forbid*, *sino*, *I let*, take the Infinitive as the Accusative of the Inner Object. (§ 181.) *Dionysius nē collum tōnsōri committeret tondēre filiās suās docuit*, *Dionysius, to keep from trusting his neck to a barber, taught his daughters to shave* (taught them shaving); **Esse bonam facile est ubi quod vetet esse remotum est*, OV. (§ 320); **Nil nisi mē patriis jussit abesse focis*, OV., *He only bade me be gone from my ancestral hearthstone*.

Infinitive as a Predicate.

§ 215. The Infinitive, as a verb Substantive, may be used as a Predicate after the copula *esse*, *to be*, and the like: *vivere est cōgitāre*, *to live is to think*.

On the Infinitive as a Verb, see § 75 fol.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

§ 216. The other cases of the Infinitive are supplied by the Gerund. With Prepositions, the Gerund, and not the Infinitive, is employed. As a verbal form, the Gerund, like the Infinitive, takes the same case as the verb.

PARADIGM.

§ 217.

NOM. *Legere difficile est*, *reading, to read, is hard to do*.

GEN. *Ars legendī*, *the art of reading*.

Puer studiōsus est legendī, *the boy is zealous of reading*.

DAT. [*Puer operam dat legendō*, *the boy devotes himself to reading*.] (See § 220.)

- ACC. Puer cupit legere, *the boy is desirous to read.*
 Puer prōpēnsus est ad legendum, *the boy has a bent toward reading.*
 ABL. Puer discit legendō, *the boy learns by reading.*

The Gerundive for the Gerund.

RULE.

§ 218. Instead of the Gerund, with an Accusative object, the object is generally put in the case of the Gerund, with the Gerundive as an attribute.

PARADIGM.

GEN.	Plācandī	Deī,	<i>of appeasing God.</i>
DAT.	Plācandō	Deō,	<i>for appeasing God.</i>
ABL.	Plācandō	Deō,	<i>by appeasing God.</i>

REMARKS.—1. This construction is invariably employed with Prepositions: —

Ad plācandōs Deōs, *for appeasing the Gods.*

In placandis Deīs, *in appeasing the Gods.*

2. EXCEPTION: A Neuter Adjective, used as a Substantive, is never changed: studium agendī aliquid, *desire of doing something.*

3. The Gerund is the Substantive of the Gerundive, which is in form a Present Participle Passive. (§ 46, R.) The active sense of the Gerund is only apparent. The English verbal in *-ing*, by which it is translated, is also used as a passive: *the church is building*. The Gerundive, as an attribute, becomes characteristic. As amāns not only — quī amat, but also — quī amet, so amandus — quī amētur.

4. The Gerundive can be formed only from Transitive Verbs, the Gerund from any: EXCEPTIONS: ūtendus, *to be used*; fruendus, *to be enjoyed*; potiendus, *to be possessed*; fungendus, *to be discharged*; vescendus, *to be eaten* (§201 R.), which, however, are used only in the oblique cases. Further, medendus, *to be healed*; paenitendus, *to be regretted*.

Valetudinī parcendum est, *the health must be spared*; *ūtendum est aetate, *life must be enjoyed* (but: expetuntur divitiae ad perfruendās voluptatēs, *riches are sought for the enjoyment of pleasures*).

Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive.

§ 219. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives which require a complement: *ars vivendī*, the art of living; **Et propter vitam vivendī perdere causās*, JUV., *And on account of life, to lose the reasons for living*; **Raucaque garrulitās studiumque immane loquendī*, OV., *Hoarse chattiness, and a monstrous love of talking*; **Nōn est placandī spēs mihi nulla Deī*, OV., *I am not without hope of appeasing God*; *perītus nandī*, skilled in swimming; *Neuter suī prōtegendī corporis memor erat*, neither thought of shielding his own body; *nōmen carendī*, the word “*carēre*” (go without).

REMARKS.—1. *As MEI, TUī, SUī, NOSTRī, VESTRī*, are, in their origin, neuter singulars, from *MEUM*, *my being*; *TUUM*, *thy being*; *SUUM*, *one's being*, &c., the Gerundive is put in the same form: *cōservandī suī*, of preserving themselves; *vestrī adhortandī*, of exhorting you; **Cōpia placandī sit modo parva tui*, OV., *Let (me) only have a slight chance of trying to appease you* (feminine). Similar constructions are also found with other words: *exemplōrum eligendī potestās*, power of choosing examples; *facultās agrōrum condōnandī*, competence to give away lands.

2. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is occasionally used (without causā) to express design: *cōservandae libertātis*, as a matter of preserving liberty, for the sake of preserving liberty; *firmandae concordiae*, to strengthen harmony. Generally *AD* with the Accusative, *ad firmandam concordiam*.

3. *Tempus est*, it is time; *cōsiliū est*, it is my (your, his) plan; and a few others may be used with the Infinitive: **Tempus abire tibi est*, *It is time for you to go away*. The poets are very free in the use of the Infinitive for the Genitive of the Gerund: *(At) *sēcūra quies et nescia fallere vita*, VIRG., *Quiet without a care, and a life ignorant of disappointment*.

Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

§ 220. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after words which imply capacity and adaptation: *aqua utilis bibendō*, water good for drinking; *lignum*

āridum māteria est idōnea ēliciendīs ignibus, *dry wood is a fit substance for striking fire* (sparks). Especially to be noticed is the Dative with ESSE, *to be*; esse solvendō, *to be (ready) for paying, to be solvent*; scit sē esse onerī ferendō, *he knows that he is (equal) to bearing the burden*; Decemvirī lēgibus scribundīs, *Decemvirs for writing laws, charged with writing laws*.

Accusative of the Gerundive.

§ 221. The Gerundive is used in the Accusative of the object effected: Conōn mūrōs reficiendōs cūrāt, *Conon has the wall's rebuilt*; Aedem faciendam locāvit, *he let the (contract of) building the temple*; patriam diripiendam relinquimus, *we leave our country to be plundered*.

Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

§ 222. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used as the ordinary Ablative with or without the Prepositions IN, *in*; AB, *off*; DĒ, *from*; EX, *out of*: standō fessus erat, *he was tired from standing*; in legendīs ōrātōribus, *in reading the orators*; liber dē contemnendā morte, *a treatise on the contempt of death*.

CAUTION: SINE, *without*, is not used with the Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive.

SUPINE.

§ 223. The Supine is a Verbal Noun, which appears only in the Accusative and Ablative cases.

The Accusative Supine.

§ 224. The Accusative Supine (Supine in -UM) is used chiefly after Verbs of Motion: galli gallināceī cum sōle eunt cubitum, *chickens go to roost with the sun*; *Stultitia est vēnātum dūcere invītās canēs, PLAUT., *It is folly to take un-*

willing dogs a-hunting; **Spectātum* admissi rīsum teneātis amīci? HOR., (If) *let in to the show, could you keep down a laugh, my friends?* **Hostis est uxor invīta quae ad virum nūptum datur*, PLAUT., *An enemy is the wife who is given to a man in marriage against her will.*

REMARK.—Especially common is the use of the Supine after the verb *ire*, *to go*; *perditum ire*, *to go a destroying*; *bonōrum praemia ēreptum eunt*, *they are going to take away the rewards of the good*. The Future Infinitive Passive is actually made up of the Passive Infinitive of *ire*, *to go*, *iri*, and the Supine: *Dicunt rempūblicam perditum iri*, *they say that people are going to destroy the state* (*iri* from *itur*, § 6, R. 1), *that the state will be destroyed*.

The Ablative Supine.

§ 225. The Ablative Supine (Supine in *-ū*) is used chiefly with Adjectives as the Ablative of *the point of view from which*: *mirābile dictū*, *wonderful to tell, in the telling*; *hoc dictū quam rē facilius est*, *this is easier in the saying than in fact = easier said than done*; *sī hoc fās est dictū*, *if it is right to say so*.

REMARKS.—1. The use of the Ablative Supine is confined to a few verbs, chiefly: *dictū*, *to tell*; *factū*, *to do*; *auditū*, *to hear*; *visū*, *to see*; *cognitū*, *to know*.

2. *Ad*, with the Gerundive, is often used instead: *cibus facillimus ad concoquendum*, *food (that is) easy to digest*.

PARTICIPLE.

§ 226. The Participle, as a Substantive, is treated as if it had been an Adjective: *Nihil est magnum somnianti*, *nothing is great to a dreamer*; **Rēgia*, *crēde mihi*, *rēs est succurrere lāpsīs*, OV., *It is a kingly thing, believe me, to succor the fallen*.

REMARKS.—1. The Attribute of the Participle, employed as a Substantive, is generally in the adverbial form: *rectē facta*, *right actions*; *facētē dictum*, *a witty remark*.

2. Especially to be noted is the Ablative of the Participle without a

Substantive: *auditō, it having been heard; compertō, it having been found out.*

§ 227. The Participle, as an Adjective, often modifies its verbal nature so as to be characteristic: *Epaminōndās erat temporibus sapienter utēns, Epaminondas was a man who used opportunities wisely.*

REMARK.—On the Participle as a Predicate, see § 123.

ADVERB.

The Predicate may be qualified by an Adverb.

§ 228. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, and sometimes substantives, when they express or imply verbal or adjective relations: *valdē me juvat, it rejoices me mightily (greatly); plānē indoctus, absolutely unlearned; nimis saepe, too often; *Lātē rēx, VIRG., Wide-ruling; bis cōsul, twice consul; duo simul bella, two simultaneous wars.*

The form of the Adverb does not admit of any further inflection, and therefore the Adverb requires no rules of Syntax except as to its position.

Position of the Adverb.

§ 229. Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb, and before it when it ends the sentence; and immediately before their adjective or adverb: *injūstē facit, he acts unjustly; admodum pulcher, handsome to a degree, very handsome; valdē diligenter, very carefully.* Exceptions occur chiefly in rhetorical passages, in which great stress is laid on the Adverb, or in poetry: *Irām bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae, Well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness; *Vixit dum vixit bene, TER. (§ 28, R.)*

One class of Adverbs demands special notice.

NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

§ 230. The regular Negative of the Indicative and of the Potential Subjunctive is *nōn*, the absolute *not*. *HAUD*, which

is also translated *not*, does not imply such entire certainty, and in model prose is used chiefly with Adjectives and Adverbs: *haud magnus, not great; haud male, not badly*. In antitheses *NŌN* is used, and not *HAUD*: **Nŏn est vivere sed valere vīta, MARTIAL, Not living, but being well, is life*.

REMARK.—Other negative expressions are, *haudquāquam, nēquāquam, neutiquam, by no means; nihil, nothing*. (“Adam, with such counsel *nothing* swayed.”)

Subdivision of the Negative.

§ 231. A general negative may be subdivided by *NEQUE* — *NEQUE*, or strengthened by *NE* — *QUIDEM*, *not even*: *Nihil nec cārīus nec suāvīus, nothing dearer nor sweeter; Nŏn enim praetereundum est ne id quidem, For we must not pass by that neither*. (I will give no thousand crowns *neither*, SHAKS.) § 264.

POSITION OF THE NEGATIVE.

§ 232. The Negative naturally belongs to the Predicate, and usually stands immediately before it, but may be placed before any emphatic word or combination of words: **Nŏn omnis aetās Lŷde lŭdō convenit, PLAUT. § 144*.

REMARK.—As the Copula *esse, to be*, is, strictly speaking, a Predicate (§ 4), the Negative generally precedes it, contrary to the English idiom, except in contrasts. The difference in position can often be brought out only by stress of voice: *fēlix nŏn erat, he wasn't happy; nŏn fēlix erat, he was not happy (far from happy), sed miser, but wretched*.

§ 233. In English, we say either *no one ever*, or, *never any one, nothing ever*, or, *never any thing*; in Latin, the former turn is invariably used: *nēmo unquam, no one ever; Verrēs nihil unquam fēcīt sine aliquō quaestū, Verres never did any thing without some profit or other*. Comp. § 262.

§ 234. *NEGO* (*I say no, I deny*) is commonly used instead of *dicō non, I say—not*: **Negat Phānium esse hanc sibi cognātam, TER., He says that this Phanium is not of kin to him*.

§ 235. Two Negatives in the same sentence destroy one another, and make an affirmative: *nōn nego, I do not deny, I admit.*

§ 236. The double Negative is often stronger than the opposite Positive: *Nōn indoctus, a highly educated man; nōn sum nēscius, I am well aware; *Nōn indecōrō pulvere sordidī, HOR., Soiled with honorable dust; *Nōn ignāra mali miseris succurrere disco, VIRG., Not unacquainted (= but too well acquainted) with misfortune, I learn to succor the wretched.*

§ 237. Of especial importance is the position of the Negative in the following combinations:—

Indefinite Affirmative.

nōnnihil, somewhat;
nōnnēmo, some one;
nōnnullī, some people;
nōnnunquam, sometimes;
nōnnusquam, somewhere;

General Affirmative.

nihil nōn, every thing.
nēmo nōn, everybody.
nullī nōn, all.
nunquam nōn, always.
nusquam nōn, everywhere.

In ipsā cūriā nōnnēmo hostis est, *In the senate-house itself there are enemies; nēmo nōn hostis est, everybody is an enemy; nēmo nōn videt, everybody sees; *Nōn est plācāndī spēs mihi nulla Deī, OV., I have some hope of appeasing God; nulla spēs nōn est, I have every hope.*

§ 238. *NEC NōN, nor not*, in the best prose authors, is not simply equivalent to *ET, and*: *NEC* belongs to the sentence, *NōN* to the particular word, § 232. *Nec hoc Zēno nōn vidit, Nor did Zeno fail to see this.*

§ 239. *NōN POSSUM NōN = I cannot but = I must*: *Quī mortem in malīs pōnit nōn potest eam nōn timēre, He who classes death among misfortunes must fear it.*

§ 240. *Nē* is the Negative of the Imperative and of the

Optative Subjunctive: *Nē cēde malis, *Do not yield to misfortunes*; nē scribās, *do not write*; nē trānsieris Ibērum, *do not cross the Ebro*; nē vīvam, *may I cease to live*. (See §§ 55, 64.)

REMARK.—The Negative NŌN is sometimes used instead of NĒ, when contrast is emphasized: *Aut nōn tentāris aut perſice, Ov., *Either attempt not, or achieve*.

§ 241. NĒ is continued by NĒVE or NEU. § 64.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

An interrogative sentence is necessarily incomplete. The answer is the complement.

§ 242. Interrogative sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound* (disjunctive). *Am I?* (simple) *Am I, or am I not?* (disjunctive).

§ 243. Interrogative sentences are further divided into *direct* and *indirect*, or *independent* and *dependent*. *Am I?* (direct), *He asks whether I am* (indirect).

Direct Simple Questions.

§ 244. Direct simple questions sometimes have no interrogative sign. Such questions are chiefly passionate in their character. When they are *affirmative* they expect a *negative* answer; when *negative* they expect an *affirmative* answer: Infelix est Fabricius? *Fabricius unhappy?* (No.) Nōn pudet philosophum glōriārī? *A philosopher not ashamed to boast?* (Of course he is.)

Interrogative Particles.

§ 245. The Interrogative Particles are as follows:

1. -NĒ (enclitic) is always appended to the emphatic word, and generally serves to denote a question, without indicating the expectation of the speaker: relinquāsne? *will you give it up?* *Nunquamne repōnam? Juv., *Shall I never requite?*

2. NÔNNE expects the answer *Yes*: Canis nōnne similis lupō? *Is not a dog like a wolf?* *Nōnne fuit melius dominae pervincere mōrēs? § 49.

3. NUM (in the direct question) expects the answer *No*: Num mē fefellit diēs? *Did the day escape me* (= was I mistaken in the day?) *Num tibi quum faucēs ūrit sitis aurea quaeris pōcula? HOR., *When thirst burns your throat, do you ask for golden cups?* [No.]

4. AN (*or*) belongs to the second part of a disjunctive question. Sometimes, however, the first part of the disjunctive question is suppressed: *An nēscīs longās rēgibus esse manūs? (*Is it not so?*) *Or perhaps you do not know that kings have long hands* (arms).

REMARK.—Especially to be noted, in connection with AN, are the phrases, nēscio an, haud scio an, *I do not know but*; dubito an, *I doubt, I doubt but, = I am inclined to think*; which give a modest affirmation. Negative particles, added to these expressions, give a mild negation: Haud scio an ita sit, *I do not know but it is so*; Nēscio an melius patientiam possim dicere, *I do not know but I may better call it endurance*; Dubito an Thrasybŭlum primum omnium pōnam, *I doubt but I should* (= I am inclined to) *put Thrasybŭlus first of all*; Haud scio an nulla senectūs beātiōr esse possit, *I do not know but it is impossible for any old age to be happier*.

Direct Disjunctive Questions.

§ 246. Direct Disjunctive Questions have the following forms:—

<i>First Clause.</i>	<i>Second and Subsequent Clauses.</i>
utrum, <i>whether</i> ,	an, <i>or</i> (anne),
utrumne,	an,
-ne,	an,
—	an (anne),
—	ne (chiefly in indirect questions).

Utrum nēscīs quam altē ascenderis an id prō nihilō habēs?
Are you not aware how high you have mounted, or do you

*count that as nothing? Vōsne Lūcium Domitium an vōs Lūcius Domitius dēseruit? Have you deserted Lucius Domitius, or has Lucius Domitius deserted you? *Ēloquar an sileam? VIRG., Shall I speak, or hold my peace? Utrum hoc tū parum meministī an ego nōn satis intellexī an mūtastī sententiam? Do you not remember this, or did I misunderstand you, or have you changed your view? *Quōmodo habeās illud rēfert jūrene anne injūriā, PLAUT., How you have it, that makes the difference, whether it be by right or wrong.*

REMARK.—AUT (OR), in questions, is not to be confounded with AN. Aut gives another part of the same question, or another form of it (*or in other words*). Voluptās meliōremne efficit aut laudābiliōrem virum? *Does pleasure make a better or more praiseworthy man? *Quem virum aut hērōa lyrā vel ācri tibiā sūmēs celebrāre Cliō? HOR., What man or hero wilt thou undertake to celebrate on harp or shrilly flute, O Clio?*

§ 247. *Or not*, in the second part of a disjunctive sentence, is expressed by ANNŌN or NECNE: Isne est quem quaero, *annōn? Is that the man I am looking for or not? Sunt haec tua verba necne? Are these your words or not?*

Indirect Questions.

§ 248. Indirect questions have the same particles as the direct, with the following modifications:—

1. NUM loses its negative force, and becomes simply *whether*: Speculārī jussī sunt num sollicitātī animī sociōrum essent, *They were ordered to spy out whether the allies had been tampered with; Quaesivērunt num sē etiam morī prohibitūrus esset? They asked whether he was going to keep them from dying, too.*

2. SĪ, *if*, is used for *whether* chiefly after verbs and sentences implying trial: Tentāta rēs est si primō impetū capī Ardea posset, *An attempt was made (to see) if Ardea could be taken by a dash (coup-de-main).*

3. *AN* is sometimes used for *NUM* and *NE*: *Cōsultuit deinde Alexander an tōtīus orbis imperium sibi dēstināret pater, Alexander then asked the oracle whether his father destined for him the empire of the whole world.*

4. The form ——— *NE* is found chiefly in the indirect question: *Tarquinius Prīscī Tarquiniū rēgis filius nepōsne fuerit parum liquet, Whether Tarquin was the son or grandson of king Tarquin the Elder, does not appear.*

REMARK.—The form *NE—NE* is poetical.

§ 249.

PARADIGM.

Direct: *Is the last syllable short or long?*

Postrēma syllaba utrum brevis est an longa?
brevisne est an longa?

Indirect: *In a verse it makes no difference whether the last syllable be short or long.*

In versū nihil rēfert { *utrum postrēma syllaba brevis sit an longa.*
postrēma syllaba brevisne sit an longa.
postrēma syllaba brevis an longa sit.
postrēma syllaba brevis sit longane.

MOODS IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

§ 250. The Indicative is used to ascertain a fact: *ubinam herī fuistī? where were you yesterday?*

§ 251. The Subjunctive is used:—

1. In the First Person, to denote indecision: **Quid faciam? rogar anne rogem? quid deinde rogābō? Ov., What shall I do, shall I ask or be asked? what then shall I ask (him)?*

2. In rhetorical questions, which expect no definite answer, and imply a negative opinion on the part of the speaker: *Quis hoc crēdat? Who would believe this? [No one.] Quid faceret*

aliud? *What else was he to do?* [Nothing.] *Quis tulerit Gracchōs de sēditione querentēs? Juv. § 54.

§ 252. The Dependent Interrogative is always in the subjunctive.

Examples: §§ 299, foll. *Sitque memor nōstrī necne referte mihī, Ov., § 7; *Inspice quid portem, Ov., *Examine what I am bringing*; *Cernis ut Admētī cantētur ut Hectoris uxor? Ov., *You perceive how Admetus's wife is sung, how Hector's?*

On the sequence of tenses, see § 295.

REMARKS.—1. When the leading verb is disconnected from the interrogative, the Indicative form is employed: So often with dic, *say*, vidē, *see*, quaere, *ask*: Dic, quid est? *Tell me, what is it?* (Dic quid sit, *Tell me what it is*); *Quin tū ūnō verbō dic: quid est quod mē velis? TER., *Won't you tell me in one word: What is it you want of me?* *Dic mihi quid fēcī nisi nōn sapienter amāvī, Ov., *Tell me what have I done, save that I have loved unwisely.*

2. Nēsciō quis, nēsciō quid, nēsciō quī, nēsciō quod, *I know not who, what, which*, are used exactly as indefinite pronouns, and have no effect on the construction: So, also: nēsciō quōmodo, *I know not how — strangely*; mirum quantum, *it (is) marvellous how much — wonderfully*, are used as adverbs: *Nēsciō quid majus nascitur Iliade, Ov., *Something, I know not what, is rising greater than the Iliad*; Mirum quantum prōfuit, *It was of wonderful advantage*. The position excludes the assumption of an ellipsis of the subjunctive.

POSITION IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

§ 253. *a.* The subject of the dependent clause is often treated as the object of the leading clause: Nōstī Marcellum quam tardus sit, *You know Marcellus, what a slow creature he is*; *Nōvī ego hōc saeculum mōribus quibus sit, PLAUT., *I know these times, (and) what a character they have*.

§ 253. *b.* Contrary to our idiom, the interrogative is often used in participial clauses: Solōn Pīsistratō tyrannō quaerentī

quā tandem spē frētus sibi tam audāciter resisteret respondisse dicitur, senectūte, Solon, to Pisistratus the usurper, asking him (= when P. the usurper asked him) on what earthly hope relying (= on what hope he relied that) he resisted him so boldly, is said to have answered "old age."

YES AND NO.

§ 254. a. YES is represented:

1. By *sānē*, (literally) *soundly*, *sānē* quidem, *yes indeed*, etiam, *even* (so), *vērō*, *of a truth*, *ita*, *so*, *omnīnō*, *by all means*, *certē*, *surely*, *certō*, *for certain*, *admodum*, *to a degree*.

2. By *Immō* or *Īmō*, which conveys a correction, and either removes a doubt or heightens a previous statement—*yes indeed, nay but*: **Ecquid placeant aedēs mē rogās?* *Immō*. PLAUT., *Do I like the house, you ask me?* *Yes, indeed*. *Causa igitur nōn bona est?* *Immō optima*. *The cause, then, is a bad one?* *Nay, it is an excellent one*.

3. By *censeo*, *I think so*.

4. By repeating the emphatic word either with or without confirmatory particles: *Estisne?* *Sumus*. *Are you?* *We are*. *Dāsne?* *Dō sānē?* *Do you grant?* *I do indeed*.

§ 254. b. NO is represented:

1. By *nōn*, *nōn vērō*, *nōn ita*, *minimē*, *by no means*, *nihil*, *nothing*, *minimē vērō*, *nihil sānē*, *nihil minus*.

2. By repeating the emphatic word with the negative: *Nōn irāta es?* *Nōn sum irāta*, *You are not angry?* *I am not*.

Yes, for, no, for, are often expressed by *NAM* and *ENIM*: *Tum Antōnius: Herī enim inquit hoc mihi prōposueram*, *Then, quoth Antony, Yes, for I had proposed this to myself yesterday*.

SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

§ 255. A compound sentence is one in which the necessary parts of the sentence occur more than once, one which consists of two or more clauses.

Coördination is that arrangement of the sentence in which the different clauses are merely placed side by side.

Subordination is that arrangement of the sentence in which one clause depends on the other.

He became poor and we became rich is a coördinate sentence. *He became poor that we might be rich* is a subordinate sentence.

The sentence which is modified is called the Principal clause, that which modifies is called the subordinate clause. "*He became poor*" is the Principal clause, "*that we might be rich*" is the subordinate clause.

REMARK.—Logical dependence and grammatical dependence are not to be confounded. In the conditional sentence: *vivam sī vivet, I shall live if she lives*, my living depends on her living; yet "*vivam*" is the principal, "*sī vivet*" the subordinate clause. It is the dependence of the introductory particle that determines the grammatical relation. § 293.

COÖRDINATE SENTENCES.

Coördinate sentences are divided into various classes, according to the particles by which the separate clauses are bound together.

Copulative Sentences.

The following Particles are called Copulative Conjunctions:—

§ 256. 1. *Et* is simply *and*, the most common and general particle of connection, and combines likes and unlikes: *Caesare et Bibulō cōsulibus, in the consulship of Caesar and Bibulus*; **Probitās laudātur et alget, Juv., Honesty is be-praised and—freezes.*

On *ET*, for *ETIAM*, see § 260, R.

§ 257. 2. -QUE (enclitic) unites things that belong closely to one another. The second member serves to *complete* or *extend* the first: *Senātus populusque Rōmānus*, *The Senate and people of Rome*; **Nitimur in vetitum semper cupimusque negāta*, Ov., *We are ever pressing on to the forbidden, and so desiring what is denied* (us).

REMARK.—COMBINATIONS: ET — ET;

QUE — ET;

ET — QUE;

QUE — QUE, chiefly in poetry :

**Raucaque garrulitās studiumque immāne loquendi*, Ov. (§ 219.)

§ 258. 3. ATQUE (compounded of AD and QUE) adds a more important to a less important member. AC (a shorter form, which does not stand before a vowel) is fainter than ATQUE, and almost equivalent to ET. ATQUE or AC is often used to connect the parts of a clause in which ET has been already employed: *Rem difficilem atque omnium* (§ 117) *difficillimam*, *A difficult matter, indeed a matter of the very greatest difficulty*; *Hebeti ingeniō atque nullō*, *Of dull genius, in fact, of none at all*; *Venetī et nāvēs habent plūrimās et scientiā atque ūsū nauticārum rērum reliquōs antecēdunt*, *The Venetians (both) have most ships, and in the knowledge and practice of naval matters are superior to all the rest*.

§ 259. Adjectives and Adverbs of *likeness* and *unlikeness* may take ATQUE or AC: *Date operam nē simili fortūnā ūtāmur atque antea ūsī sumus*, *Do your endeavors that we suffer not (ill)-luck like that we suffered before*; *Similiter facis ac sī mē rogēs cūr tē duōbus contuear oculis*, *You are acting (like) as if you were to ask me why I am looking at you with two eyes*; *Nōn dixī secus (aliter) ac sentiēbam*, *I did not speak otherwise than I thought*. On *Idem*, the same, see § 97.

REMARKS.—1. The construction rests on an ellipsis: *Aliter dixī atque [aliter] sentiēbam*, *I spoke one way and yet I was thinking another way*.

2. SUBORDINATION INSTEAD OF COÖRDINATION.—Instead of coördinating

by means of the copulative conjunctions, the Romans are prone to subordinate by means of the participle: Gruēs, quum loca calidiōra *petentēs* maria trāsmittunt triangulū efficiunt formam, *Cranes, when they seek a warmer climate and cross seas, make a triangular figure*; Domitius flūmen Albim trāscendit longius *penetrātā* Germāniā quam quisquam priōrum, *Domitius crossed the river Elbe and (thus) penetrated further (into) Germany than any of his predecessors.* (§ 203 R. 2.)

§ 260. ETIAM, *even (now), yet, still*, exaggerates (heightens) and generally precedes the word to which it belongs: Nōbīs rēs familiāris *etiam* ad necessariā deest, *We lack means even for the necessities of life*; Etiam periculosa petunt, *They seek even that which is dangerous.* Of time: Nōn satis pernōstī mē *etiam* quālis sim, *You still do not know well enough (= little know) what manner of person I am.*

REMARK.—ET is sometimes used for ETIAM, but sparingly. So ET IPSE, and kindred expressions. (§ 99).

§ 261. QUŌQUE (literally, *in which way too*), *so also*, complements (compare -QUE) and always follows the words to which it belongs: Quum patrī Tīmotheī populus statuam posuisset, filiō *quoque* dedit, *The people, having erected a statue in honor of the father of Timotheus, gave one to the son also (likewise).*

REMARK.—The difference between ETIAM and QUŌQUE is not to be insisted on too rigidly: *Grande et cōspicuum nōstrō quoque tempore mōnstrum, JUV., *A huge and conspicuous prodigy, even in our day.*

§ 262. NEQUE, NEC, *neither, nor*, is often used as: *And not*: Opīniōne vulgī rapimur in errōrem *nec* vēra cernimus, *By the prejudice of the rabble we are hurried into error, and do not distinguish the truth.*

RULE.

Instead of ET and the negative, NEQUE (NEC) and the positive, is the rule in Latin.

PARADIGM.

<i>And no one,</i>	<i>neque quisquam,</i>	<i>nor any one.</i>
<i>And nothing,</i>	<i>neque quidquam,</i>	<i>nor any thing.</i>
<i>And never,</i>	<i>neque unquam,</i>	<i>nor ever.</i>

**Neque amet quemquam nec amētur ab ullō, Juv., May he neither love any one nor be loved of any.*

REMARKS.—1. EXCEPTION. ET — NŌN, *and . . . not*, is used when the negation is confined to a single word, or is otherwise emphatic: **Et militāvi nōn sine glōriā, Hor., And I have been a soldier not without (=with) glory.*

2. COMBINATIONS. NEQUE (NEO) — NEQUE.

NEQUE	——	QUE.
ET	——	NEQUE.

§ 263. NEC NŌN, *nor not*, is the opposite of ET — NŌN, *and — not*, and is stronger than ET (§236): *Neque haec tū nōn intelligis, And this you know full well.*

Negative Subdivided.

§ 264. A Negative may be subdivided by NEQUE — NEQUE, or AUT — AUT: *Nihil unquam neque insolēns neque glōriōsum ex ōre Timoleontis prōcēssit, Nothing insolent or boastful ever came out of the mouth of Timoleon; Nēmo aut miles aut eques ā Caesare ad Pompējum trānsierat, No one, (common) soldier or knight, had gone over from Caesar to Pompey.*

Insertion and Omission of Copulatives.

§ 265. When MULTUS, *much, many*, is followed by another attribute, the two are often combined by copulative particles: *many renowned deeds, multa et praeclāra facinora; many good qualities, multae bonaeque artēs.*

§ 266. Several subjects or objects, standing in the same relations, either take ET throughout or omit it throughout. The omission of it is common in emphatic enumeration: *Phryges et Pisidae et Cilices, or: Phryges, Pisidae, Cilices, Phrygians, Pisidians, AND Cilicians.*

§ 267. Et is further omitted in *climaxes*, in *antitheses*, in *phrases*, and in *formulae*: Turpe est virō débilitārī dolōre, frangī, succumbere, *It is disgraceful for a man to allow himself to be weakened by grief, to be broken-spirited, to succumb*; bona, mala, *blessings* (and) *evils*; dignī, indignī, *the worthy* (and) *the unworthy*; *Difficilis facilis, jūcundus acerbus es idem (§ 97); Patrēs Cōscriptī, *Fathers* (and) *Conscript* (Senators); Jūppiter Optimus Maximus, *Father Jove, supremely good* (and) *great*.

Other Particles employed.

§ 268. Temporal: TUM — TUM, *then — then*; NUNC — NUNC, *MODO — MODO, now — now*; SIMUL — SIMUL, *at the same time*; tum Graecē — tum Latīnē, *partly in Greek, partly in Latin*; Horātius Coclēs nunc singulōs prōvocābat, *nunc increpābat omnēs, Horatius Cocles now challenged them singly, now taunted them all*; modo hūc modo illūc, *now hither, now thither, hither and thither*; simul spernēbant, simul metuēbant, *they despised and feared at the same time, they at once despised and feared*. (Comp. 251, R. 1.)

REMARK.—ON QUUM — TUM, see § 375.

§ 269. Comparative: UT — ITA, *as — so*: Dolābellam ut Tarsēnsēs ita Lāodicēnī ultrō arcessiērunt, *As the people of Tarsus so did the people of Laodicea* (=Both the people of Tarsus and those of Laodicea) *sent for Dolabella of their own accord*. Often, however, there is an adversative idea: sicut breviora ita arrectiora, *while shorter, yet steeper*; Haec omnia ut invitīs ita nōn adversantibus patriciīs trānsacta, *All this was done, the patricians, though unwilling, yet not opposing* (=against the wishes, but without any opposition on the part, of the patricians).

§ 270. Adversative: NŌN MODO, NŌN SŌLUM, NŌN TANTUM, *not only*; SED ETIAM, VĒRUM ETIAM — *but even* (sometimes simply SED). In the negative form, NŌN MODO NŌN, *not only*

not, SED NE . . . QUIDEM, *but, not even*; Urbēs maritimae nōn solum multis periculis oppositae [sunt] sed etiam caecis, *Maritime cities are liable not only to many dangers, but even to hidden (ones)*; Ego nōn modo tibi nōn irāscor sed ne reprehendo quidem factum tuum, *I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even find fault with your action.*

REMARK.—Instead of NŌN MODO (SŌLUM) NŌN — SED NE — QUIDEM, the latter NŌN is generally omitted, when the two negative clauses have a verb in common, the negative of the first clause being supplied by the second: Pīsōne cōsule senātui nōn solum juvāre rempūblicam sed ne lūgēre quidem licēbat, *When Piso was consul, it was not only not left free for the senate (= the senate was not only not free) to help the common-wealth, but not even to mourn (for her).*

Adversative Sentences.

The adversative particles are as follows:—

§ 271. AUTEM (postpositive, generally after the first word in the sentence or clause) is the weakest form of *but*, and indicates merely a *difference* from the foregoing, and not a *contradiction*. It serves as a particle of *transition* and *explanation* (= *moreover, furthermore, now*), and of *resumption* (= *to come back*): Gygēs ā nullō vidēbātur, ipse autem omnia vidēbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but (whereas) he himself saw every thing.*

§ 272. SED is used partly in a stronger sense, to denote *contradiction*, partly in a weaker sense, to *introduce a new thought, or to revive an old one*: Nōn est vīvere sed valēre vīta, MART. § 230.

§ 273. VĒRUM, *it is true, true*, always takes the first place in a sentence, and is practically equivalent to SED: *Si certum est facere, faciās; vērum nē post cōferās culpam in mē, TER., *If you are determined to do it, you may do it; but you must not afterward lay the blame on me.*

§ 274. VĒRŌ, *of a truth*, is generally put in the second

place, asserts with conviction, and is used to heighten the statement: *Platōnem Diōn adeō admirātus est ut sē tōtum eī trāderet. Neque vērō minus Plato dēlectātus est Diōne, Dion admired Plato to such a degree that he gave himself wholly up to him; and indeed Plato was no less delighted with Dion.*

§ 275. *AT* (another form of *AD* = *in addition to*) introduces *startling transitions, lively objections, remonstrances, questions, wishes* (often = *Well—but*): *At vidēte hominis intolerābilem audāciam! Well, but see the fellow's insufferable audacity! At vōbīs male sit! And ill luck to you!*

REMARK.—*AST* = *AT* + *SET* (*sed*) is antiquated and poetic.

§ 276. *ATQUĒ* is still stronger than *AT*, and is used chiefly in argument: *atquē sic habet, but it is so . . igitur, therefore. . .*

§ 277. *TAMEN* (literally, *even thus*), *nevertheless*, is often combined with *AT*, *VĒRUM*, *SED*: Examples, § 370.

§ 278. *CĒTERUM*, *for the rest*, is used by the historians as an adversative particle.

REMARK.—In lively discourse, the adversative particles are often omitted.

Disjunctive Sentences.

The disjunctive particles are as follows:

§ 279. *AUT*, *or*, denotes absolute exclusion or substitution: *Vinceris aut vincis, You are conquered or conquering. AUT* often = *or at least* (*aut saltem*). *Cūnctī aut magna pars fidem mūtāvissent, All, or at least a great part, would have changed their allegiance.*

§ 280. *AUT — AUT*, *either — or*: *Aut frīgore rigent aut ūruntur calōre, They are either frozen with cold or burnt with heat.*

* *Aut nōn tentāris aut perforce*, Ov., § 67, R.; * *Aut dic aut accipe calcem*, Juv., *Either speak, or take a kick.*

§ 281. VEL (literally, *you may choose*) gives a choice, often with ETIAM, *even*, POTIUS, *rather*: Ego vel Cluviēnus, *I, or, if you choose Cluvienus*; *Ego vel Prochyta praepōno Subūrae, Juv., *I prefer even Prochyta to the Subura*; satis vel etiam nimium multa, *enough or even too much*; homo minimē malus vel potius vir optimus, *a person by no means bad, or, rather, a man of excellent character.*

§ 282. VEL — VEL, *either — or* (whether — or): Miltiadēs dixit ponte rescissō rēgem vel hostium ferrō vel inopiā paucis diēbus interiturum, *Miltiades said that if the bridge were cut, the king would perish in a few days, whether by the sword of the enemy, or for want of provisions.*

§ 283. SIVE, *if you choose* (SEU), gives a choice between two designations of the same object: Urbem mātři seu novercae reliquit, *He left the city to his mother, or (if it seems more likely) to his step-mother.*

§ 284. SIVE — SIVE (SEU — SEU) *whether — or* (indifference): *Seu vīsa est catulīs cerva fidēlibus seu rūpit teretēs Marsus aper plagās, Hor., *Whether a-doe hath appeared to the faithful hounds, or a Marsian boar hath burst the tightly-twisted toils*; Sive tū medicum adhibueris sive nōn adhibueris nōn convalescēs, *Whether you employ a physician, or do not employ (one), you will not get well.*

§ 285. -VE (enclitic) is a weaker form of VEL (with numerals, at most): *Cūr timeam dubitemve locum dēfendere? Juv., *Why should I fear or hesitate to maintain my position?* duōbus tribusve hōrīs, *within two or at most three hours.*

Causal and Illative Sentences.

A. The causal particles are NAM, *for*, ENIM, NAMQUE, and ETENIM, *for*.

§ 286. NAM is always put at the beginning of a sentence; ENIM is always postpositive: NAMQUE and ETENIM are commonly put in the first place: *For what can you do? Num quid agās? Quid enim agās? Namque quid agās? Etenim quid agās?*

REMARKS.—1. These particles are often used not only to furnish a reason, but also to give an explanation or illustration — *as for instance*. Nam quid agās? *What, for instance, can you do?* So also NEMPE, *to wit, that is*, often used ironically — *forsooth*: Sed quālis rediit? Nempe unā nāve, JUV., *But in what style did he return? With one ship, forsooth.*

2. In ATENIM, SED ENIM, VĒRUMENIM, ENIMVĒRŌ, VĒRUMENIMVĒRŌ, the particle ENIM is so weak as hardly to bear translation.

B. Illative particles are ITAQUE, IGITUR, ERGŌ, IDEŌ, IDCIRCŌ, PROINDE.

§ 287. ITAQUE (literally, *and so*), *therefore*, is put at the beginning of the sentence by the best writers, and is used of *facts* that follow from the preceding statement: Nēmo ausus est liber eum sepelire. *Itaque ā servīs sepultus est. No free man dared to bury him, and so he was buried by slaves.*

§ 288. IGITUR, *therefore*, is generally postpositive, and is used of *opinions* which have their natural ground in the preceding statement. Quid igitur cēnsēs? *What therefore (= in view of all this) is your judgment?* In historical writers, IGITUR is used both in position and signification as ITAQ E.

§ 289. ERGŌ, *consequently*, denotes *necessary consequence*, and is used especially in arguments. IDEŌ, IDCIRCŌ = *on that account*.

§ 290. PROINDE, *accordingly*, is employed in *exhortations, appeals*, and the like: Proinde aut exeant aut quiescant, *Let them then either depart or be quiet.*

SYNTAX OF THE SUBORDINATE TENSE.

§ 291. Subordinate sentences are only extended forms of the simple sentence, and are divided into *Adjective* and *Substantive* sentences, according as they represent *adjective* and *substantive* relations.

§ 292. Adjective sentences express an attribute of the subject in an expanded form: *uxor quae bona est* (§ 419) = *uxor bona*.

§ 293. Substantive sentences are introduced by particles, which correspond in their origin and use to the Oblique Cases, Accusative and Ablative. These two cases furnish the mass of adverbial relations, and hence we make a subdivision for this class, and the organization of the subordinate sentence appears as follows:—

- A. Substantive sentences.
 - I. Object sentences.
 - II. Adverbial sentences :
 - 1. Of Cause.
 - 2. Of Design and Tendency.
 - 3. Of Time.
 - 4. Of Condition.
- B. Adjective sentences (Relative).

Before considering the subordinate sentences, it is necessary to exhibit the so-called Sequence of Tenses, and the use of the Reflexive in dependent clauses.

Sequence of Tenses.

§ 294. In those dependent sentences which require the subjunctive, the choice of the tenses of the dependent clause is determined by the form of the principal clause.

§ 295.

RULE.

All forms that relate to the Present and Future	are followed by	the Present Subjunctive (for continued action); the Perfect Subjunctive (for completed action).
All forms that relate to the Past	are followed by	the Imperfect Subjunctive (for continued action); the Pluperfect Subjunctive (for completed action).

PARADIGMS.

PRESENT, cognôscô, <i>I am finding out,</i> PURE PF., cognôvî, <i>I have found out (I know),</i> FUTURE, cognôscam, <i>I shall (try to) find out,</i> FU. PERF., cognôvero, <i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>	quid faciās, <i>what you are doing ;</i> quid fēceris, <i>what you have done (what you did).</i>
IMPERF., cognôscēbam, <i>I was finding out,</i>	quid facerēs, <i>what you were doing ;</i>
PLUPERF., cognôveram, <i>I had found out (I knew),</i>	quid fēcissēs, <i>what you had done.</i>
HIST. PERF., Caesar cognôvit <i>Caesar found out,</i>	quid facerent hostēs, <i>what the enemy was doing ;</i> quid fēcissent hostēs, <i>what the enemy had done.</i>

§ 296. Sentences of Design have, as a rule, only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. The design is not accomplished, but only in the process of accomplishment.

PARADIGMS.

PRESENT, edunt, <i>they are eating,</i> PURE PERF., ēderunt, <i>they have eaten,</i> FUTURE, edent, <i>they will eat,</i> FUT. PERF., ēderint, <i>they will have eaten,</i>	ut vivant, <i>that they may live (to live).</i>
--	--

IMPERFECT, edēbant, <i>they were eating,</i>	{	ut viverent, <i>that they might live (to live).</i>
PLUPERFECT, ēderant, <i>they had eaten,</i>		
HIST. PER., ēderunt, <i>they ate,</i>		

REMARKS.—1. The Historical Present is treated either according to its form as a present, or according to its signification as an historical tense:—

PARADIGMS.

Caesar cognōscit	quid hostēs	{	1. faciant, fēcerint, <i>is doing, has done;</i>
<i>Caesar finds out (found out)</i>	<i>what the enemy</i>		2. fācerent, fēcissent, <i>was doing, had done.</i>

2. The Pure Perfect is often treated as an Historical Perfect in the matter of sequence: Quoniam quae subsidia habērēs exposuī, *Now that I have set forth what resources you have.*

Representation of the Subjunctive in the Future and Future Perfect Tenses.

§ 297. The Subjunctive has no Future or Future Perfect which are represented either by the other Subjunctives, or by the Subjunctive of the Periphrastic Conjugation.

§ 298. 1. After a Future or Future Perfect Tense, the Future relation is represented by the Present Subjunctive—the Future Perfect by the Perfect Subjunctive, according to the rule.

Cognōscam,	{	quid faciās, <i>what you are doing (will be doing).</i>
<i>I shall (try to) find out;</i>		
Cognōvero,		quid fēceris, <i>what you have done (will have done).</i>
<i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>		

REMARK.—But whenever the interval between the dependent future and the leading future is to be marked, the Periphrastic Tense must be employed.

Cognōscam,	{	quid facturus sis, <i>what you are going to do (what you will do). •</i>
<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>		
Cognōvero,		
<i>I shall have found out (shall know)</i>		

§ 298. 2. After the other tenses the future relation is expressed by the Subjunctive of the Periphrastic Tense, which follows the ordinary rule.

Cognôscô,	{	quid factûrus sis,	(what you are
<i>I am finding out,</i>		what you will do,	going to do);
Cognôvî,		quid factûrus fueris,	(what you have
<i>I have found out (know),</i>		what you would have done,	been going to do).
Cognoscēbam,	{	quid factûrus essēs,	(what you were going
<i>I was trying to find out,</i>		what you would do,	to do);
Cognôveram,		quid factûrus fuissēs,	(what you had been
<i>I had found out,</i>		what you would have done,	going to do).

REMARKS.—1. In *Ōratiō obliqua* (§ 439) and kindred constructions, the attraction of tenses applies also to the representatives of the Future and Future Perfect Subjunctive.

In [*scytalā*] erat scriptum nisi domum *reverterētur* sē capitis eum dam-nātūrōs, *It was written in the scytale that if he did not return home, they would condemn him to death.* (*Oratiō Recta*: Nisi domum revertēris tē capitis damnābimus, *unless you (shall) return home, we will condemn you to death.*) Pŷthia praecepit ut Miltiadem sibi imperātōrem sūmerent; id sī fēcissent incepta prōspēra futūra, *NEP., The Pythia instructed them to take Miltiades for their general; that if they did that, their undertakings would be successful.* (*O. Recta*: sī id fēcēritis, *if you do (shall have done) that*).

2. When the preceding verb has a future character (fear, hope, power, will, and the like), the simple subjunctive is sufficient: Quid hostēs cōsiliū caperent exspectābant, *They were waiting to see what plan the enemy would adopt*; multa pollicēns sī sē servāset, *promising many things (making many promises), if he saved him.*

Sequence of Tenses after an Infinitive or Participle.

§ 299. When a subordinate clause depends on an Infinitive or Participle, the tense of that clause follows the tenses of the Finite verb.

Cupio scīre,	{	quid agās,	what you are doing.
<i>I am desirous of knowing,</i>		quid ēgeris,	what you have done.
		quid actûrus sis,	what you are going to do
			(will do).

Cupiēbam scire, <i>I was desirous of knowing,</i>	{	quid agerēs,	<i>what you were doing.</i>
		quid ēgissēs,	<i>what you had done.</i>
		quid actūrus essēs,	<i>what you were going to do</i> (would do).

Mihi interroganti, <i>when I ask him,</i> (literally: to me asking),	{	quid agat,	<i>what he is doing,</i>	{	nōn re-
		quid ēgerit,	<i>what he has done,</i>		spondet,
		quid actūrus sit,	<i>what he is going to do</i> (will do),		<i>he gives</i> <i>no an-</i> <i>swer.</i>

Mihi interroganti, <i>when I asked him,</i> (literally: to me asking.)	{	quid ageret,	<i>what he was doing,</i>	{	nōn re-
		quid ēgisset,	<i>what he had done,</i>		spondit,
		quid actūrus esset,	<i>what he was going</i> <i>to do,</i>		<i>he gave</i> <i>no an-</i> <i>swer.</i>

EXCEPTION: A Perfect Infinitive or Participle, dependent on a Present Tense, commonly takes the sequence of the Past Tenses: *Satis mihi multa verba fēcisse videor quārē esset hoc bellum necessārium, I think I have said enough (to show) why this war is necessary.*

EXAMPLES.

Sequence after Present and Perfect Tenses.

§ 300. 1. *Quae tam firma civitas est, quae nōn possit ēverti? What state is so firm that it cannot be overturned; Laudat Africānum Panaetius quod fuerit abstinēns, Panaetius praises Africanus for having been abstinent; *Forsitan et Priamī fuerint quae fāta requirās, VIRG., Perhaps you may ask what was the fate of Priam, too; Vēnistis ut condemnēis? Are you come to condemn? Multi fuērunt qui tranquillitatem expetentēs ā negōtiis publicis sē remōverint, There have been many who, in the search for quiet, have withdrawn themselves from public engagements; *Quid sim quid fuerimque subit, OV., It comes up (to my mind) what I am and what I was; *Nōn precor ut coniux tū meus esse velis, OV., (§ 214); Nescis quam altē ascenderis (§ 246); Inspecte quid portem (§ 252). Other examples, §§ 325, 329, 334.*

Sequence after Historical Tenses.

§ 301. 2. *Unum illud extimēscēbam nē quid turpiter facerem vel dicam jam effēcissem, The only thing I feared was, lest I should act disgracefully,*

or *I should* (rather) *say* (lest) *I had already acted disgracefully*; *Tanta opibus Etrūria erat* ut jam nōn terrās solum sed mare etiam fāmā nōminis sui implēsset, *So great in means* (= so prosperous) *was Etruria, that she had already filled not only the land, but even the sea, with the reputation of her name.* Other examples, §§ 325, 329, 334.

Expression of Future Relations.

§ 302. 3. [Cōnsiderābimus], [*we will consider*],

a. *Quid fēcerit* aut *quid ipsi acciderit* aut *quid dixerit*, *What he has done, or what has happened to him, or what he has said.*

b. *Aut quid faciat*, *quid ipsi acculat*, *quid dicat*, or, *what he is doing, what is happening to him, what he is saying*;

c. *Aut quid factūrus sit*, *quid ipsi cūsūrum sit*, *quā sit ūsūrus orātiōne*, or *what he is going to do* (will do), *what is going to* (will) *happen to him, what plea he is going to employ* (will employ).

Incertum est quam longa cūjusque nōstrum vīta futūra sit, *It is uncertain how long the life of each one of us is going to be* (will be); *Tū quid sis actūrus sī ad mē scripseris* pergrātum erit, *It will be a great favor if you will write to me what you are going to do*; *Anteā dubitābam ventūraene essent legiōnēs*, *Before I was doubtful whether the legiones would come* (or no); *Nunc mihi nōn est dubium quā ventūrae nōn sint*, *Now I have no doubt that they will not come*; *Quae vīta Priamō fuisset*, *sī ab adolescentiā scisset quos ēventūs vitae esset habitūrus?* *What sort of life would Priam have led if he had known, from early manhood, what issues of old age he would have* (= what were to be the closing scenes of his old age).

Sequence after Verbal Nouns.

§ 303. 4. *Apellēs pictōrēs eōs peccāre dicēbat* quī nōn sentirent *quid esset satis*, *Apelles used to say that those painters blundered who did not perceive what was* (is) *enough*; *Cupīdo incēssit animōs juvenum sciscitandī* ad quem eorum regnum Rōmānum *esset ventūrum*, *The minds of the young men were seized by the desire of inquiring to which of them the kingdom of Rome would come.*

Sequence of Tenses in Sentences of Result.

§ 304. 5. In Sentences of Result, the Present Subjunctive is used after Past Tenses to denote continuance into the Present, the Perfect Subjunc-

tive to imply final result, the latter especially with the negative. (The action happened once for all or not at all.) *Siciliam Verrēs per triennium ita vexāvit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullō modō possit, Verres so harried Sicily for three years as to make it utterly impossible for it to be restored to its original condition* ; [Thorius erat] ita nōn timidus ad mortem ut in aciē sit ob rempūblicam interfectus, *Thorius was so far from being fearful in view of death as to have been killed in battle for the state* ; Mūrēna Asiam sic oblit ut in eā neque avāritiae neque luxūriae vestigium reliquerit, *Murena so administered Asia as not to have left in it a trace either of greed or debauchery* ; Epaminōndās pecūniae adeō parcus fuit ut sumptus fūneri dēfuerit, *E. was so sparing of money (— acquiring money) that means were lacking for his funeral (expenses).*

Equitēs hostium ācriter cum equitātū nōstrō conflixērunt tamen ut nōstri eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint, *The cavalry of the enemy engaged the cavalry on our side briskly, and yet (the upshot was) that our men forced them into the woods and hills* ; Neque vērō tam remissō ac languidō animō quisquam omnium fuit quī eā nocte conquiēverit, *And indeed there was no one at all of so slack and indifferent a temper as to take (a wink of) sleep that night* ; (Nec fuit quisquam quī dubitāret, *And there was no one who entertained doubts, quī dubitāverit, who had a doubt*).

REMARK.—After accidit, contigit, &c., the Imperfect is always used, the result being already emphasized in the Indicative form ; accidit ut ūnā nocte omnēs Hermae dējicerentur, *It happened that in one night all the Hermae were thrown down.*

The Potential of the Past.

§ 305. The Potential of the Past may depend on a Present Tense: *Video causās esse permultās quae Titum Roscium impellerent, I see that there are very many causes which might have impelled Titus Roscius* ; *Quaero ā tē cūr Gajum Cornelium nōn dēfenderem, I ask you why I was not to defend G. Cornelius.*

Use of the Reflexive in Subordinate Sentences.

§ 306. In subordinate clauses, the reflexive is used with reference either to the subject of the principal, or to the subject of the subordinate, clause ; and sometimes first to the one and then to the other.

RULE.

§ 307. The Reflexive is used of the principal subject when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject ; hence, *in infinitive sentences, in indirect questions, in sentences of design, and sentences which partake of the oblique relation* : Animus sentit sē vī suā, nōn aliēnā movērī, *The mind feels that it moves by its own force, (and) not by that of another* ; Quaesivērunt num sē esset etiam morī prohibitūrus, *They asked whether he was going to prevent them from dying too* ; Pompējus ā mē petivit ut sēcum et apud sē essem quotidiē, *Pompey asked me to be with him, and at his house, daily* ; Paetus omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit, *Paetus presented to me all the books (as he said) that his brother had left (quos frāter ejus reliquerat, statement of the narrator).*

REMARKS.—1. Sentences of tendency and result have is: Quintus Ligārius itā sē gessit ut ei pācem esse expediret, *Quintus Ligarius so conducted himself that it was to his interest there should be peace* ; Tam fortis erat ut omnēs eum admirārentur, *He was so gallant that all admired him.*

2. The reflexive may refer to the real agent, and not to the grammatical subject of the principal clause : A Caesare invitor sibi ut sim lēgātus, *I am invited by Caesar (= Caesar invites me) to be lieutenant to him.*

3. The reflexive is used in general sentences, as *one, one's-self, &c.* : Dēforme est dē sē praedicāre, *It is loathsome to be bragging about one's-self.*

4. Examples of reflexives pointing both ways: Rōmānī lēgātōs misērunt quī ā Prūsīā peterent nē inimicissimum suum (= Rōmānōrum) apud sē (Prūsiam) habēret, *The Romans sent ambassadors to ask Prusias not to keep their bitterest enemy at his court* ; Agrippa Atticum flēns orābat atque obsecrābat ut sē sibi suisque reservāret, *Agrippa begged and conjured Atticus with tears to save himself [Atticus] for him [Agrippa] and for his own family [Atticus].*

PARADIGMS.

§ 308. Alexander moriēns ānnulum suum dederat Perdiccæ;

Alexander, [when] dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.

Perdiccās accēperat ejus ānnulum;

Perdiccas had received his ring.

Quārē Alexander dēclārāverat sē regnum eī commīsisse;

Thereby, Alexander had declared that he had intrusted the kingdom to him.

Ex quō Perdiccās conjēcērat eum regnum sibi commīsisse;

From this, Perdiccas had gathered that he had intrusted the kingdom to him.

Ex quō omnēs conjēcērant eum regnum eī commīsisse;

From this, all had gathered that he had intrusted the kingdom to him.

Perdiccās postulāvit ut sē rēgem habērent quum Alexander ānnulum sibi dēdisset;

Perdiccas demanded that they should have him to king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.

Amīcī postulāvērunt ut omnēs eum rēgem habērent quum Alexander ānnulum eī dedissent;

(His) friends demanded that all should have him to king, as Alexander had given the ring to him. (Lattmann and Müller.)

Ita sē gesserat Perdiccās ut eī regnum ab Alexandrō committerētur;

Perdiccas had so behaved himself that the kingdom was intrusted to him by Alexander.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. In Indicative relative sentences, which are mere circumlocutions, the Reflexive is sometimes put contrary to the rule: Metellus in eis urbibus quæ ad sē dēfēcērant, praesidia impōnit. *Metellus put garrisons in those towns which had gone over to him; regularly, ad eum.*

2. Sometimes the Demonstrative is used instead of the Reflexive, because the narrator presents his point of view: Verrēs Milēsios nāvem poposcit, quæ eum praesidiī causā Myndum prōsequerētur, *Verrēs demanded of the Milesians a ship to convoy him to Myndus, for the purpose of protection.*

OBJECT SENTENCES.

§ 309. Verbs of DOING, PERCEIVING, CONCEIVING, of THINKING and SAYING, often take their object in the form of a sentence.

REMARK.—These sentences are regarded, grammatically, as neuter substantives. The accusative of neuter substantives is employed as a Nomina-

tive. Hence, a Passive or Intransitive Verb may take an object sentence as a subject.

I. Object Sentences introduced by QUOD.

§ 310. Clauses which serve merely as periphrases (circumlocution) of elements in the leading sentence are introduced by QUOD, *that*.

REMARKS.—1. The leading sentence often contains a demonstrative, such as HOC, *this*; ILLUD, ID, *that*; and then the whole structure may be considered as a relative.

2. In some of the combinations, QUOD may be considered an adverbial accusative of extent (Inner object). QUOD, *in that* (= because).

RULE.

§ 311. QUOD is used to introduce independent clauses chiefly after a demonstrative, after verbs of DOING and HAPPENING with an adverb, and after verbs of ADDING and DROPPING: *Hōc sōlō propior quod amīcōs conjugis ōdit, JUV., *In this alone nearer, that she hates the friends of her husband*; Bene facis quod me adjuvās, *You do well (in) that you help me*; *Nil habet infelix paupertās dūrius in sē quam quod ridiculōs hominēs facit, JUV., *Unhappy poverty hath in itself nothing harder (to bear) than that it makes people ridiculous*; *Adde quod ingenuās didicisse fideliter artēs Emollit mōrēs nec sinit esse ferōs, OV., *Add (the fact) that to have acquired faithfully the accomplishments (education) of a gentleman, softens the character, and does not let it be savage*; Magnum beneficium est nātūrae quod necesse est morī. § 3.

The reigning mood is the Indicative. The Subjunctive is only used as in Oratio Obliqua.

REMARKS.—1. A sentence with QUOD often precedes as an adverbial accusative: Quod mē Agamemnonem aemulārī putās falleris, *In that you think that I am emulating Agamemnon, you are mistaken*.

2. With several of the above-mentioned verbs, UT can be employed, as well as QUOD: UT, of the tendency—QUOD, of the fact: Accēdit ut, quod, (To this) *is added that* (§ 347); invitū facio ut recorder ruīnās reipūblīcae (§ 341); quod recorder, *in that I am recalling*. The difference is unessential.

3. Verbs of FEELING, REJOICING, SORROWING, &c., take QUOD with the Indicative or Subjunctive. See Causal Sentences (§ 327).

II. Object Sentences, with Accusative and Infinitive.

§ 311. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATION: On the simple infinitive as an object, see § 214.

The Infinitive, as a verbal predicate, has its subject in the Accusative.

REMARK.—The Accusative is the most general form of the noun; the Infinitive (as its name implies) the most general (unbounded) form of the verb. The two together give the outline, and not the details, of the thought; present an idea, and not a fact, as such.

RULE.

§ 312. Active verbs of SAYING, SHOWING, THINKING, PERCEIVING, and similar expressions, take the Accusative and Infinitive: Thalēs Milēsius *aquam dixit esse initium rērum*, *Thales of Miletus said that water was the first element of things*; Solōn *furere sē simulāvit*, *Solon pretended that he was mad*; Medicī causā morbi inventā cūratiōnem esse inventam putant, *Physicians think that, (when) the cause of disease (is) discovered, the method of treatment is discovered*; Video tē velle in coelum migrāre, *I see that you wish to remove to heaven*; Opīnio est Antōnium plānē indoctum fuisse, *It is the common opinion that Antony was absolutely unlearned*.

REMARKS.—1. FACERE, to assume, and FACERE, to represent, take the same construction: Plato ā Deō *aedificārī mundum facit*, *Plato assumes that the universe is built by God*; Īsocratem Plato *laudārī fecit* ā Sōcrate, *Plato has represented Isocrates as praised by Socrates*; Fac, quaeso, quī ego sum tē esse, *Suppose, I pray, yourself to be what I am*.

2. When the subject of the Infinitive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, that subject is sometimes omitted—chiefly with Future Infinitive—and then ESSE is also dropped: *refractūrōs carcerem minābantur*, *they threatened to break open the jail*.

3. CAUTION: The English language is very free in omitting the subject of the Infinitive when it is the same as the subject of the leading verb, e. g., *I hope to be*, spēro mē futūrum esse; *I claim to have been*, Ajo mē fuisse; (*Ait esse parātus, *He claims to be ready*, and the like, are poetical expressions, and not to be imitated).

RULE.

§ 313. Passive verbs of SAYING, SHOWING, BELIEVING, and PERCEIVING, prefer the personal construction, in which the Accusative Subject of the Infinitive appears as the Nominative Subject of the leading verb.

PARADIGM.

Active: Trādunt Homērum caecum fuisse;

They say that Homer was blind.

Passive: Trāditur Homērus caecus fuisse;

Homer is said to have been blind.

(Trāditur Homērum caecum fuisse);

It is said that Homer was blind.

But when the leading verb is a form compounded with ESSE, to be, the impersonal construction is preferred:

Trāditum est Homērum caecum fuisse;

There is a tradition that Homer was blind.

EXAMPLES.—Aristaeus inventor olei fuisse dicitur, *Aristaeus is said to have been the discoverer of oil*; Lūna sōlis lūmine collūstrārī putātur, *The moon is thought to be lighted up by the sunlight*; Amisisse patriam videbimur, *We shall seem to have lost our country*; *Possunt quia posse videntur, VIRG., *They have the power, because they seem to have the power*; *Crēditur olim vēlificātus [fuisse] Athōs, JUV., *It is believed that Athos was once opened to sails*; (Crēditur Pythagorae auditōrem fuisse Numam, *It is believed that Numa was a hearer of Pythagoras*); Venerem Adōnidi nūpsisse prōditum est, *There is a tradition that Venus married Adonis*.

REMARK.—In verbs of saying, except dico, the personal construction is confined to the third person.

Tenses of the Infinitive after Verbs of Saying, Showing, Thinking, and Perceiving.

The Infinitive denotes only the stage of the action, and de-

termines only the relation to the time of the leading verb,
(§ 75.)

RULE.

§ 314. After verbs of SAYING, SHOWING, THINKING, PERCEIVING, and the like:—

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action ;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action ;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

REMARK.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: *I have been studying, I had been studying.* Hence, the Imperfect Indicative (*I was studying*) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect Infinitive, because it is prior to the leading verb.

§ 315.

PARADIGM.

Contemporaneous Action.

{	Dicit tē errāre,	<i>He says that you are going wrong ;</i>
	Dicet tē errāre,	<i>He will say that you are going wrong ;</i>
	Dicēbat tē errāre,	<i>He was saying that you were going wrong.</i>

Prior Action.

{	Dicit tē errāsse,	<i>He says that you have gone wrong ;</i>
		<i>that you went wrong ;</i>
		<i>that you have been going wrong ;</i>
	Dicet tē errāsse,	<i>He will say that you have gone wrong, &c. ;</i>
	Dicēbat tē errāsse,	<i>He was saying that you had gone wrong ;</i>
		<i>that you went wrong ;</i>
		<i>that you had been going wrong.</i>

Subsequent Action.

{	Dicit tē errātūrum esse,	<i>He says that you will be going wrong ;</i>
	Dicet tē errātūrum esse,	<i>He will say that you will be going wrong ;</i>
	Dicēbat tē errātūrum esse,	<i>He was saying that you would be going wrong.</i>

(Periphrastic Form.)

{	Dicit fore ut errēs,	<i>He says that you will be going wrong ;</i>
		<i>errāveris, that you will have gone wrong ;</i>
	Dicet fore ut errēs,	<i>He will say that you will be going wrong ;</i>
		<i>errāveris, that you will have gone wrong ;</i>
	Dicēbat fore ut errārēs,	<i>He was saying that you would be going wrong ;</i>
		<i>errāssēs, that you would go wrong.</i>

REMARK.—The Periphrastic form is necessary when the verb forms no Supine (§ 44), and is often advisable for the sake of exactness.

Ambiguity.

§ 316. When an Accusative with the Infinitive is followed by a dependent accusative, ambiguity may arise: *Ajō tē Aeacidā Rōmānōs vincere posse, in which tē may be subject or object. Real ambiguity is to be avoided by giving the sentence a passive turn: Ajo ā tē Aeacidā Rōmānōs vincī posse, *I affirm that the Romans can be conquered by thee, son of Aeacus*, or, Ajo tē, Aeacidā ā Rōmānīs vincī posse, *I affirm that thou, son of Aeacus, canst be conquered by the Romans*. When the context shows which is the real subject, formal ambiguity is of no importance.

Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Will and Desire.

RULE.

§ 317. Verbs of WILL and DESIRE take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive: *Tē superesse velim: tua vitā dignior aetās, VIRG., *I should wish thee to survive: thy age is worthier of life*; Est mōs hominum ut (§ 344) nōlint eundem plūribus rēbus excellere, *It is the way of the world to be unwilling for the same person to excel in more things [than one]*; Tē fruī virtūte cupimus, *We desire you to have the fruit of your worth*; Germānī vinum ad sē omnīno importārī nōn sinunt, *The Germans do not permit wine to be imported into their country at all*.

REMARKS.—1. IMPERO, *I command*, takes only the Passive Infinitive: Hannibal imperāvit serpentēs vivās colligī, *Hannibal ordered living serpents to be collected*. Permitto, *I allow*, takes ut, only.

2. After JUBEo, *I bid*, and VETO, *I forbid*, the Infinitive Active can be used without an imaginary or indefinite subject: jubet reddere, *he bids return, orders the returning*; vetat adhibēre medicinam, *he forbids the administration of medicine*. *Infandum rēgina jubēs renovāre dolōrem, VIRG., *Unutterable, O queen, (is the) anguish (which) you bid (me, us) revive*.

3. On the construction of these verbs with *ut*, see § 331.

4. When the subject of the Infinitive is the same as the subject of the leading verb, the subject of the Infinitive is not necessarily expressed: **Ni pārere velis pereundum erit ante lucernās*, JUV., *Unless you resolve to obey, you will have to perish before candlelight*; **Et jam mallet equos nunquam tetigisse paternōs*, OV., *And now he could have wished rather never to have touched his father's horses*. But it may be expressed, and, commonly, is expressed, when the action of the Infinitive is not within the power of the subject: *Timoleōn māluit sē diligī quāam metui*, *Timoleon preferred to be loved rather than to be feared*; **Et fugit ad salicēs et sē cupit ante vidēri*, VIRG., *And flees to the willows, and desires that she should first be seen*.

Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Emotion.

RULE.

§ 318. Verbs of EMOTION take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive, inasmuch as these verbs may be considered as verbs of SAYING and THINKING: *Salvum te advenīre gaudeo*, I rejoice at your safe arrival (*quod salvus advenīstī*, *that you have arrived safe*, *quod salvus advēneris*, *that (as you say) you have arrived safe*).

Accusative and Infinitive in Exclamations.

RULE.

§ 319. The Accusative with the Infinitive is used in EXCLAMATIONS and ASTONISHED INTERROGATIONS as the object of an unexpressed thought or feeling: *Tē sic vexārī*, *That you should be so harassed!* (For you to be so harassed!) **Mēne inceptō dēsistere* — ? VIRG., *I — desist from my undertaking?* Comp. § 311.

REMARKS.—1. Different is *quod*, which gives the ground: **Hēi mihi quod nullis amor est medicābilis herbīs*, OV., *Woe's me that (in that, because) love is not to be cured by any herbs*.

2. On *ut*, with the subjunctive, in a similar sense, see § 345.

The Accusative and Infinitive as a Subject.

§ 320. The Accusative with the Infinitive may be the

subject of a sentence. The Predicate is a substantive or neuter adjective, an impersonal verb or abstract phrase.

Virum bonum esse semper est *utile*, *To be a good man is always useful*; **Esse bonam facile est quum quod vetet esse remōtum est*, OV., *To be a good woman is easy, when what there is to prevent it is taken away*; **Necesse est facere sūmptum quī quaerit* (= eum qui q.) *lucrum*, PLAUT., *He must needs make an outlay who seeks an income*; Tuā interest tē valēre, *It is to your interest that you be in good health, for you to be in good health*; Tē hilarī animō esse valdē mē *juvat*, *That you should be (for you to be) in high spirits, rejoices me greatly (mightily)*; Fūs est et ab hoste docērī (§ 18).

REMARKS.—1. Oportet, *it behooves*, and necesse est, *must needs*, are often used with the Subjunctive. So also several other phrases with UT. (§ 344, and R.)

2. When the indirect object of the leading verb is the same as the subject of the Infinitive, the adjective of the subject is put in the case of the object: So with licet, *it is left (free)*.

Mihi *negligenti* esse nōn licet, *I am not free to be negligent*.

The Accusative may also be used:

Mihi *negligentem* esse nōn licet.

The Accusative is regularly used when the Dative is not expressed:

Negligentem esse nōn licet, *One is not free to be negligent*.

In poetry, the Dative is allowable even then:

**Negligenti* esse licet; **Licet esse beātis*, *They are free to be happy*. **Sōlus erō quoniam non licet esse tuo*, PROP., *I shall be alone, since I may not be thine*. On licet with the subjunctive, see § 401.

Object Sentences represented by the Participle.

RULE.

§ 321. The Participle is used after verbs of PERCEPTION and REPRESENTATION to express the actual condition of the object of perception or representation: Nōn *audivit* Alexander *dracōnem loquentem*, *Alexander did not hear the serpent speak(ing)*; *Adolēscentium gregēs Lacedaemone vīdimus ipsī certantēs*, *We have seen ourselves (with our own eyes) in*

*Lacedaemon shoals of young men contend(ing); Polyphēnum Homērus cum ariete colloquentem facit, Homer represents Polyphemus (as) talking with the ram; Homer makes Polyphemus talk, &c. (also: colloquī facit, see § 312, R.); *Gaudē quod spectant oculi tē mille loquentem, Hor. (§ 328).*

RULE.

§ 322. The Perfect Participle Passive is used after verbs of CAUSATION and DESIRE, to denote impatience of any thing except entire fulfilment: *Caligula Lolliam missam fēcit, Caligula had Lollia dismissed; *Prudentī mandēs sī quid rectē cūrātum velis, TER., You must intrust to a sensible man whatever you want properly attended to.*

REMARK.—Compare the Perfect Participle Passive with *opus est, ūsus est, there is need of; factō opus, ūsus est, we want action, we want it done.*

CAUSAL SENTENCES.

Causal sentences are introduced:—

1. By *QUIA, QUOD, because* (in that).
2. By *QUONIAM, now that, QUANDO QUANDŌQUIDEM, since.* } (Cause Proper.)
3. By *QUUM, as* (§ 365). (Inference.)
4. By the Relative Pronoun, partly alone, partly with *UT, UTPOTE, QUĪPPE, &c.* (§ 427).

Causal Sentences with Quia, Quod, and Quoniam.

RULE.

§ 323. Causal sentences with *QUIA, QUOD, and QUONIAM* are put in the Indicative, except when the cause is assigned by another than the speaker or writer, or is merely assumed.

§ 324. INDICATIVE: *Quia nātūra mūtārī (617) nōn potest idcirco vēræ amicitiae sempiternae sunt, Because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting; Torquātus filium suum quod is contrā imperium in hostem pugnā-*

*verat necārī jussit, Torquatus bade his son be put to death because he had fought against the enemy contrary to order(s) [quod pugnasset = because (as Torquatus said or thought)]; Neque mē vixisse poenitet quoniam ita vixī ut nōn frūstrā me nātum existīmem, And I am not sorry for having lived, since I have so lived that I think I was born not in vain; *Sōlus erō quoniam nōn licet esse tuō (§ 320, R. 2).*

§ 325. SUBJUNCTIVE: *Noctū ambulābat in forō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset, Themistocles used to walk about in the market-place at night because (as he said) he could not sleep; *[Nē] compōne comās quia sis ventūrus ad illam, Ov., Do not arrange (your) hair because (you think) you are going to visit her; *Quae quia nōn liceat nōn facit, illa facit, Ov., She who does it not because (she thinks) she may not (do it), does it.*

§ 326. With NŌN QUOD (NŌN QUŌ), NŌN QUIA, *not that*, SED QUIA, SED QUOD, *but that*, the Indicative or Subjunctive can be used, according to the general rule, *i. e.*, according as the inadmissible ground is absolutely or potentially (§ 54) stated.

INDICATIVE: *Nōn quia multīs dēbeo sed quia saepe concurrunt, Not because I am in debt to many [which is true], but because they (= their claims) often conflict; Nōn quia multīs debeam, Not that I am in debt to many; the inference is, I am not.*

SUBJUNCTIVE: *Nōn quia salvōs vellet sed quia perīre causā indictā nōlēbat, Not because he wished them to escape (he did not), but because he did not wish them to perish with their case not pleaded (unheard).*

REMARK.—Verbs of SAYING and THINKING are put in the subjunctive with QUOD by a kind of attraction: *Impetrāre nōn potui quod religiōne sē impediri dicerent, I could not obtain permission, because they said they were embarrassed (prevented) by a religious scruple (= quod impedirentur, because (as they said) they were prevented).*

Quod with Verbs of Emotion.

RULE.

§ 327. QUOD is used to give the ground of EMOTIONS and EXPRESSIONS OF EMOTION, such as verbs of JOY and SORROW, SATISFACTION AND ANGER, PRAISE AND BLAME, THANKS and COMPLAINT.

§ 328. INDICATIVE: **Gaudē quod spectant oculi te mille loquentem*, HOR., *Rejoice that a thousand eyes are gazing at you (while you are) speaking*; *Dolet mihi quod tū nunc stomachāris*, *It pains me that you are angry now*; **Tristis es? indignor quod sum tibi causa dolōris*, OV., *Are you sad? I am provoked (with myself) that I am a cause of pain to you*; *Tibi grātiās ago, quod mē omni molestiā liberās*, *I thank you that you free me from all annoyance*.

§ 329. SUBJUNCTIVE: *Laudat Panaetius Africānum quod fuerit abstinēns*, *Panaetius praises (Scipio) Africanus for having been abstinent*; *Sōcratēs accūsātus est quod corrumpet juventūtem*, *Socrates was accused of corrupting youth*; *Nēmo ōrātōrem admīrātus est quod Latīnē loquerētur*, *No one (ever) admired an orator for speaking (good) Latin*; **Gaudet miles quod vicerit hostem*, OV., *The soldier rejoices at having conquered the enemy*; *Memini glōriārī solitum esse Quintum Hortēnsium quod nunquam bellō cīvili interfūisset*, *I remember that Q. Hortensius used to boast of never having engaged in civil war*.

REMARK.—All these verbs may be construed with the Accusative and Infinitive: *Salvum tē advenire gaudeo* (see § 318); *Miramur tē laetārī*, *We wonder at your rejoicing*; **Amō tē et nōn nēglexisse habeo grātiām*, TER., *I love you (= much obliged), and I am thankful to you for not having neglected it*; **Grātulor ingenium nōn latuisse tuum*, OV., *I congratulate (you) that your genius has not lain perdu*.

FINAL SENTENCES.

§ 330. 1. Final sentences are those which convey the idea of end and aim, *Design* and *Tendency*. *Result* is readily in-

ferred from *Tendency*, and hence, in Dependent sentences, Result is expressed only as a Tendency. In other words, the Latin language uses *so as* throughout, and not *so that*, although *so that* is often a convenient translation. The result is only implied, not stated.

2. Design and Tendency are both expressed by the Subjunctive.

3. The proper negative of sentences of Design is *nē*, of sentences of Tendency *nōn*, because Design is the Optative, and Tendency the Potential Subjunctive.

4. The common introductory particle of the whole group is the Relative particle *ut* (*how*), *in order that*, *so as*.

Sentences of Design.

RULE.

§ 331. Sentences of Design follow the verbs of WILLING and WISHING, of WARNING and BESEECHING, of URGING and DEMANDING, of RESOLVING and ENDEAVORING, of FORCING and PERMITTING: *Volo uti mihi respondeās, I wish you to answer me; Phaëthōn ut in currum patris tolleretur optāvit, Phaethon desired to be lifted up into his father's chariot; Admonco ut quotidie meditēre resistendum esse irācundiae, I admonish you to reflect daily that resistance must be made to anger; *Sed precor ut possim tūtius esse miser, Ov., But I pray that I may be more safely wretched; *Exigis ut Priamus nātōrum fūnere lūdat, Ov., You exact that Priam sport at (his) sons' funeral; Athēniēnsēs quum statuerent ut nāvēs cōscenderent, Cyrsilum quendam suādentem ut in urbe manērent lapidibus cooperuērunt, The Athenians, resolving to embark on board their ships, covered with stones (— stoned) one Cyrsilus, who tried to persuade them to remain in the city; Publium Lentulum ut sē abdicāret praetūrā coēgīstis, You forced P. Lentulus to resign the praetorship; Illud nātūra nōn patitur ut*

aliōrum spoliis nôstrās cōpiās augeāmus, *Nature does allow us to increase our wealth by the spoils of others.*

So also any verb used as a verb of WILLING or DEMANDING : *Pythia respondit ut moenibus ligneis sē mūnīrent, The Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood ; Caesar Dolābellae dixit ut ad mē scriberet, Caesar told Dolabella to write to me.*

REMARKS.—1. Instead of UT with the Subjunctive, the Infinitive is frequently used with this class of verbs. So, generally, with jubeo, *I order*, see § 317.

2. When verbs of WILLING and WISHING are used as verbs of SAYING and THINKING, PERCEIVING and SHOWING, the Infinitive must be used. The English translation is *that*, and the Indicative : volo, *I will have it* (maintain), moneo, *I remark*, persuadeo, *I convince*, decerno, *I decide*, cōgo, *I conclude* : *Moneo artem sine assiduitate dicendī nōn multum juvāre, I remark that art without constant practice in speaking is of little avail.*

3. When the idea of WISHING is emphatic, the simple Subjunctive, without UT, is employed : Sine dicam, *Let me tell you ; Mālo tē sapiēns hostis metuat quam stultī civēs laudent, I prefer that a wise enemy should fear you rather than that dull citizens should praise you ; *Excūsātum habēas mē rogo, coeno domi, MART., I pray you have me excused, I dine at home ; *Hūc ades, insūni feriant sine litora fluctūs, VIRG., Come hither (and) let the mad waves lash the shores ; *Tam fēlix esēs quam formōsissima vellem, OV. (§ 116).*

Introductory Particles with Sentences of Design.

§ 332. 1. UT UTĪ (often preceded by a demonstrative expression such as : IDCIRCŌ, *therefore*, EŌ, *on that account*, EŌ CŌNSILIŌ, *with the design*).

§ 333. 2. QUŌ = UT EŌ, *that thereby*, with comparatives *that the* : Obducuntur cortice trunci quo sint ā frigoribus (§ 3. R. 6) et ā calōribus tūtiorēs, *Trunks (of trees) are covered with bark that they may be the safer from cold seasons and warm ; Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperitis*

teneātur, *A law ought to be brief, that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.*

REMARK.—Both UT and QUŌ are relatives (§ 405), and may both be considered as Ablatives.

Negatives of Sentences of Design.

Negatives of sentences of design are as follows:—

§ 334. NĒ, UTNĒ, *that not, lest*, QUŌNĒ, *that thereby not*: negatives are added by NĒVE (NEU) and rarely (in prose) after UT by NEQUE, *nor*.

Gallinae pennīs foveant pullōs nē frīgore laedantur, *Hens keep (their) chickens warm with (their) feathers, that they may not be injured with cold*; Caesar suis imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rejicerent, *Caesar commanded his (men) not to throw back any missile at all at the enemy*; Cautum erat, quōnē plūs aurī et argentī factī domī haberēmus, *Measures had been taken to prevent our having more wrought gold or silver at home* (Cautum erat = *It had been guarded*); Pompējus suis praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent nēve sē locō movērent, *Pompey had told his men beforehand to receive Caesar's charge and not to move from their position*; Peto ut id ā mē nē requīrās, *I beg you not to ask that of me*. (UTNĒ is not used after verbs of negative signification, such as impedio, *I hinder*, recūso, *I refuse*.)

On the sequence of tenses, see § 295.

REMARK.—UT NŌN is used when a particular word is negated: Cōnfer tē ad Mallium ut nōn ējectus ad aliēnōs sed invitātus ad tuōs esse videāris, *Bestake yourself to Mallius, that you may seem not thrust out to strangers, but invited to your own (friends).*

RULE.

§ 335. Verbs signifying TO PREVENT, TO FORBID, TO REFUSE, and TO BEWARE, take NĒ with the Subjunctive: Impedior nē plūra dicam, *I am hindered from saying more*; Interdictum erat (§ 15) nē fabā (§ 3. R. 8) vescerentur, *They were forbid-*

*den to eat beans; Histiaeus obstitit nē rēs cōnficerētur, II. opposed the thing being done; Rēgulus nē sententiam diceret recūsāvit, Regulus refused to pronounce an opinion; *Cave nē portūs occupet alter, Hor., Beware lest another get into the harbor beforehand; *Tantum nē noceās dum vis prōdesse vidētō, Ov., Only see (to it) that you do not do harm while you wish to do good; *Maledictis dēterrēre nē scribat parat, TER., He is preparing (trying) to frighten (him) from writing, by abuse.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of PREVENTING also take QUOMINUS (§ 338), and some of them the Infinitive (§ 317): *Nemo ire quemquam publicā prohibet viā*, PLAUT., *No one forbids any one to go by the high road.*

2. After *caveo*, *I beware*, *nē* is often omitted: *Cavē crēdās*, *Beware of believing* (*Cave ut crēdās*, *Be sure to believe*).

3. With verbs of FEARING and FRIGHTENING, *NĒ*, *lest*, shows that the negative is wished and the positive feared; *UT* (*NĒ NŌN*) shows that the positive is wished and the negative feared:—

[illegible]

Timeo ut amicus veniat } *I fear lest my friend come not*
 nē " nōn " } *(I wish he may come).*

Compare UTINAM (§ 55).

*Sed vereor nē cui dē tē plūs quam tibi crēdās, HOR., *But I am afraid that you will (lest you) trust some one more than yourself about yourself* (Nē crēdās, *Don't trust*) ; *Firmae hae vereor ut sint nūptiae, TER., *I am afraid that this marriage will not be valid* (Utinam sint firmæ!).

§ 336. 2. QUĪN (= quī + nē, *how not*), *so as not*.

Quī is a virtual ablative: quicum = quōcum.

RULE.

§ 337. QUIN is used when verbs and phrases of OMITTING, REFRAINING, PREVENTING, REFUSING and DELAYING, DOUBT and UNCERTAINTY, are negated or questioned: *Nullum adhuc intermisit diem quin aliquid ad te literarum ad te darem, I have thus far not allowed a day to pass without dropping you*

a line or two (literally: on which I did not give to you something of a letter); **Vix nunc obsistitur illis* (§ 15) *quān* lanient mundum, Ov., *They are now hardly to be kept from rending the universe*; *Nihil abest quān* sim miserimus, *There is nothing wanting that I should be* (= to make me) perfectly miserable; *Paulum abfuit quān* Fabius Vārum interficeret, *There was little lacking but Fabius* (had) killed Varus (= Fabius came near killing Varus); *Fieri nullō modō poterat quān* Cleomenī (§ 15) parceretur, *It could in no wise happen but that Cleomenes should be spared* = *Cleomenes had to be spared*; *Nōn possum quān* exclāmem, *I cannot but* (I must) cry out; *Facere nōn possum quān* quotidie ad tē mittam, *I cannot do without, I cannot help sending to you daily*; **Nōn dubium est quān* uxōrem nōlit filius, TER., *There is no doubt that* (my) son does not want a wife; *Quis dubitet* (= nemo dubitet) *quān* in virtūte dīvitiae sint? *Who can doubt that there is wealth in virtue?* [No one]; *Nōn abest suspicio quān* Orgetorix ipse sibi (§ 100) mortem cōnsūverit, *There is a suspicion that Orgetorix killed himself* (cōnsciscere sibi mortem, to procure death for one's self).

REMARKS.—1. Dubito, *I hesitate*, is commonly followed by an Infinitive (generally nōn dubito, or a question): **Et dubitāmus adhūc virtūte extendere virēs?* *And do we still hesitate to extend* (our) *power by* (our) *proceeds?* So also timeo, vereor, *I fear, hesitate to*.

2. Dubito num — *I am doubtful whether.*

Dubito an — *I doubt but.*

Dubito an nōn — *I doubt but not, §*

RULE.

§ 338. 3. QUŌMINUS (= UT EŌ MINUS), *that thereby the less*, is used with verbs of PREVENTING: impedire, to hinder, prohibere, to keep from, tenere, to hold, deterrere, to frighten off, obstare, to be in the way, recusare, to refuse, and the like: *Aetās nōn impedit quōminus agrī colendī studia teneāmus*, *Age does not hinder our retaining interest in agriculture*; *Nōn deterrēt*

sapientem mors quōminus rei pūblicae (§) cōsulat, *Death does not deter the sage from consulting the interest of the state*; Quid obstat quōminus deus sit beātus? *What is in the way of God's being happy?*

REMARK.—Impedire, to hinder, deterrere, to frighten off, recūsare, to refuse, sometimes take the Infinitive. Prohibere, to keep from, generally (§ 335, R.): Quid est quod mē impediat sequi? *What is there to prevent me from following?* Frāter meus princeps esse nōn recūsavit, *My brother did not refuse to be the leader*; Commemorāre deterreor, *I am deterred from relating*.

§ 339. Sentences of Design may be represented:—

1. By the Infinitive; §
2. By AD, to, and OB, on account of, with Gerund and Gerundive; §
3. By the Gerund or Gerundive, with or (more rarely) without CAUSĀ or GRĀTIĀ, for the sake: §
4. By the Future Participle Active (later Latin): Maroboduus misit lēgātōs ad Tiberium orātūrōs auxilia, *Marbod sent commissioners to Tiberius to beg for auxiliary troops*;
5. By the Accusative Supine after verbs of motion; §
6. By the Relative sentence with the Subjunctive: *Semper habē Pyladēn quī cōsölētur Orestēn, Ov., *Always have a Pylades to console Orestes*. § 425.

Sentences of Tendency and Result.

RULE.

§ 340. Sentences of Tendency and Result have the Subjunctive mood.

On the sequence of tenses, see § 295.

The introductory particle is UT.

In the leading clause, demonstratives are often employed in correlation with UT, which is a relative.

Sentences of Tendency and Result are used after—

1. Transitive, and
2. Intransitive verbs;
3. Demonstratives, and
4. A number of phrases all implying the creation or existence of conditions which tend to a result.

EXAMPLES.

§ 341. 1. *Temperantia efficit ut [appetitōnēs] rectae ratiōnī pareant, Temperance makes the appetites obey right reason*; *Inventus () facio ut recorder ruīnās (§ 3. R. 6) reipublicae, (It is) against my will that I (am doing so as to) recall the ruined condition of the commonwealth.*

§ 342. 2. *Persaepe evenit ut ūtilitās cum honestāte certet, It very often (so) happens that profit is at variance with honor*; *Ad Appiī Claudii senectūtem accēdebat etiam ut (§ 311, R. 2) caecus esset, [To Appius Claudius's old age was also added his being blind*; *Tantum abest ab eō ut malum mors sit ut verear nē hominī sit nihil bonum aliud, So far is it from death being an evil (= so far is death from being an evil) that I fear a man has no other blessing.]*

§ 343. 3. *Tanta vis probitātis est ut eam in hoste etiam diligāmus, So great is the virtue of uprightness that we love it even in an enemy*; *Quis est tam dēmēns ut suā voluntāte moereat? Who is so much beside himself as to grieve of his own accord?* *Nōn is es ut tē pudor unquam ā turpitūdine revocārit, You are not the man for shame ever to have recalled you (= ever to have been recalled by shame) from baseness.*

REMARK.—Very common are the periphrases: *FORE UT, FUTURUM UT*, with the Subjunctive instead of the Future Infinitive: *Spēro fore ut contingat id nobis, I hope that we shall have that good fortune (contingit*

mihi, *I have the good fortune*); In fātis scriptum Vējentēs habēbant fore ut brevī ā Galli Rōmas caperetur, *The Veientes had it written down in their prophetic books that Rome would shortly be taken by the Gauls*. FORE UT is necessary when the Future Infinitive cannot be formed (§ 44. R.).

§ 344. 4. *Mōs est hominum ut nōlint eundem plūribus excellere* (§ 317); **Omnibus hoc vitium est cantōribus . . . ut nunquam indūcant animum cantāre rogatī*, HOR., *All singers have the fault of never consenting to sing* (when) *asked*; **Rectum est ego ut faciam nōn est tē ut dēterream*, TER., *It is right for me to do it, it is not (right) for me to prevent you* (from doing it); *Est miserōrum* (§) *ut malevolentēs sint atque invideant bonīs*, *It is (characteristic) of the wretched to be ill-natured and envy the good*.

REMARKS.—1. *Necesse est*, *it is necessary*, generally, and *oportet*, *it behooves*, always, omit UT: **Sed nōn effugiēs; mēcum moriāris oportet*, PROP., *But you shall not escape; you must die with me*; *Leuctrica pugna immortalis sit necesse est*, *The battle of Leuctra must needs be immortal*.

2. The comparative with QUAM UT, *than that*, *than to*, denotes disproportionate action or condition. §

3. ITA — UT (sometimes UT alone), *so that*, often serves to restrict and condition: *Ita probanda est mānsuetudo ut adhibeātur reipublicae causā sēvēritās*, *Mildness is to be approved, so that* (provided that) *strictness be used for the sake of the commonwealth*; *Pythagorūs et Plato mortem ita laudant ut fugere vitam vetent*, *Pythagoras and Plato so praise death that* (= praise death but) *they forbid fleeing from life*; **Ut dēsint virēs tamen est laudanda voluntās* (§ 402).

Astonished Interrogations.

§ 345. UT with the Subjunctive is used in astonished interrogations parallel with the Accusative and Infinitive (§ 319): *Egone ut tē interpellem?* *I interrupt you?* *Tū ut unquam tē corrigās?* *You—ever reform yourself?*

REMARK.—There is no conscious ellipsis.

Negative of Sentences of Tendency and Result.

§ 346. The regular negative of sentences of Tendency and Result is *UT NŌN*. If the leading sentence is negative, *QUĪN* may be used as well as *UT NŌN*, or its equivalent, *QUĪ NŌN*: **Nēmo adeō ferus est ut nōn mītescere possit*, HOR., *No one is so savage that he cannot (be made to) soften*; **Nīl tam difficile est quān quaerendō investigārī possiet*, TER., *Nothing is so difficult but it can (= that it cannot) be traced out by search*; *Nunquam tam male est Siculis quān aliquid facētē et commodē dicant*, *The Sicilians are never so badly off as not to (have) something clever and pat (to) say*.

§ 347. *NĒ*, *lest*, is sometimes irregularly used instead of *NŌN*, especially when the idea of *design* or *wish* intrudes: *Ita mē gessī nē tibi pudōrī essem*, *I behaved myself so as not to be a disgrace to you*; *Quīdam nē unquam rīdērent cōsecuti sunt*, *Some have accomplished (the object) never to laugh*; *Pythagorās Lacedaemonius ūnus nē caperētur urbs Lacedaemon causa fuit*, *P. the Lacedaemonian alone was the cause that the city (of) Lacedaemon was not taken*.

Sentences of Tendency and Result introduced by the Relative.

§ 348. *UT* itself is a Relative, and hence it is natural that Sentences of Tendency and Result should be introduced by the relative *QUĪ* = *UT* IS. In some combinations the relative is the common construction; so with *dignus*, *worthy*: *Digna fuit illa nātūra quae meliōra vellet*, *That nature was worthy of willing better things (= of better aims)*, § 425. Likewise *indignus*, *unworthy*, *idōneus*, *fit*.

TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

§ 349. The action of the Temporal or Dependent clause may stand to the action of the Principal clause in one of three relations:—

I. It may be *antecedent*:

Conjunctions : POSTQUAM, *after that, after*, UT, *as*, UBI, *when* (literally, *where*), SIMULAC, *as soon as* ; UT PRIMUM, QUUM PRIMUM, *the first moment that*.

II. It may be *contemporaneous* :

Conjunctions : DUM, DŌNEC, *while, until*, QUAD, *up to* (the time) *that*, QUAMDIŪ, *as long as*, QUUM, *when*.

III. It may be *subsequent* :

Conjunctions : ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, *before that, before*.

Moods in Temporal Sentences.

§ 350. The mood of Temporal clauses is regularly the Indicative.

§ 351. The Subjunctive is used only—

1. In Oratio Obliqua (§ 439), or when reference is had to the thoughts or wishes of another than the speaker or writer :
2. When the idea of design or condition is introduced.

I. *Antecedent Action.*

RULE.

§ 352. In historical narrative, Temporal Clauses with POSTQUAM, UBI, UT, SIMULAC, UT PRIMUM, and QUUM PRIMUM commonly take the Historical Perfect or the Historical Present Indicative: *Postquam* Caesar *pervēnit* obsidēs poposcit, *After Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages* ; *Quae ubi nūntiantur* Rōmam, senātus extemplō dictatōrem dīcī jussit, *When these tidings were carried to Rome, the senate forthwith ordered a dictator to be appointed* ; Pompejus *ut* equitātum suum pulsum vidit aciē excēssit, *As Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the line of battle* ; Pelopidās nōn dubitāvit *simulac cōnspexit* hostem, cōnfligere (§ 352), *As soon as he caught sight of the enemy, Pelopidas did not hesitate to engage* (him).

§ 353. The Imperfect is used to express an action continued into the time of the Principal clause: *Postquam nēmo prōcēdere audēbat intrat, After no one had the courage to come forth, he entered; Postquam nox aderat, revertitur, After night was there (came on), he returned; Ubi nēmo obvius ibat ad castra hostium tendunt, When (it was seen that) no one was coming to meet them, they proceeded to the camp of the enemy.*

§ 354. The Pluperfect is used to express an action completed before the time of the principal clause: with **POST QUAM** when a definite interval is mentioned. **POST** and **QUAM** are often separated. An Ablative of Measure requires **QUAM** only:—

Literās scripsī statim ut tuās lēgeram, I wrote a letter immediately after I had finished reading yours; Aristidēs dēcēssit ferē post annum quartum quam Themistoclēs Athēnīs erat expulsus, Aristides died about four years after Themistocles had been (was) banished from Athens; Hamilcar nōnō ānnō postquam in Hispāniam vēnerat occisus est, Hamilcar was killed nine years after he came to Spain; Aristidēs sextō ferē ānnō quam erat expulsus in patriam restitūtus est, Aristides was restored to his country about six years after he was exiled.

REMARK.—The Historical Perfect is also in frequent use: *Nero nātus est Antii post novem mēnsēs quam Tiberius exlēssit, Nero was born at Antium nine months after Tiberius departed (this life).*

§ 355. **POSTQUAM** and the like, with the Present Indicative, assume a causative signification (compare **QUONIAM**, *now that* = *since*): *Plānē relēgātus mihi videor postēāquam in Formiānō sum, I seem to myself absolutely banished now that I am in (my) Formian villa.*

Frequentative Use of the Tenses of Completion.

§ 356. The Perfect is used of frequentative action in the present; the Pluperfect, of frequentative action in the past; the Future Perfect, of frequentative action in the future.

PARADIGM.

Quotiēs cecidit, surgit, *As often as he falls, he rises,*
 Quotiēs ceciderat, surgēbat, *As often as he fell, he rose,*
 Quotiēs ceciderit, surget, *As often as he falls, he will rise.*

Simul inflāvit tībīcen ā peritō carmen agnōscitur, *As soon as the fluter blows, the song is recognized by the connoisseur; Ut quisque mē vīderat nārrābat, As each one saw me, he would tell me; Alcibiadēs simul sē remiserat luxuriōsus reperiēbātur, As soon as Alcibiades relaxed, he was found a debauchee; *Rīdēbat quotiēs dē limine mōverat ūnum prōtuleratque pedem, flēbat contrārius auctor, Juv., He used to laugh as often as he put out one foot from his threshold, (while) the opposite authority used to weep. Other examples in Conditional and Relative sentences, see §§ 367, 380, 418.*

REMARKS.—1. The frequentative idea comes from the idea of completion contained in the verb of the dependent clause, combined with the idea of continuance contained in the leading verb, which must be a tense of continuance, Present, Imperfect, Future.

2. The Pluperfect Subjunctive is also used by later historians, either on the general principle of *Orātiō Obliqua*, or perhaps in imitation of the Greek optative: *Id ubi dixisset fētiālis hastam in finēs eōrum ēmittēbat, When he said that the fétial used to hurl (his) spear within their boundaries.*

II. *Contemporaneous Action.*

RULE.

§ 357. DUM, DŌNEC, QUOAD, QUAMDIŪ, *so long as, while*, take the Indicative of all the tenses.

REMARK.—QUUM demands a separate treatment.

In narrative, **DUM**, *while*, usually takes the Historical Present.

EXAMPLES.

**Dum vitant stultī vitia in contrāria currunt*, HOR., *Fools, while they avoid (one set of) faults, run into the opposite.*

**Sibi vērō hanc laudem relinquunt*, “*Vixit dum vixit bene*,” TER., *They leave indeed this praise for themselves, “He lived well while he lived;”* **Dum juga montis aper, fluviō dum piscis amābit, semper honōs nōmenque tuum laudēsque manēbunt*, VIRG., *While the wild boar shall love (loves) the mountain ridges, while the fish the river, Thy honor and name and praises shall always abide; Fuit haec gēns fortis dum Lycūrgi lēgēs vigēbant, This nation was brave so long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force; Dum haec Rōmae aguntur, cōsulēs ambo in Liguribus gerēbant bellum, While these things are going on at Rome, both consuls were carrying on war in Liguria.*

**Dōnec grātus eram tibi, Persārum viguī rēge beātor*, HOR., *While I was acceptable in your sight, I throve more blessed than Persia’s king; Quoad potuit, restitit, As long as he could, he withstood.*

RULE.

§ 358. **DUM**, **DŌNEC**, **QUOAD**, *up to the time that, until*, have the Present and Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative: The Present is either an Historical Present or looks forward to the Future: **Tityre dum redeō, brevis est via, pasce capellās*, VIRG., *Tityrus, while I am returning (— till I return)—the way is short—feed my kids; Epaminōndās ferrum in corpore usque eō retinuit, quoad renūntiātum est (§ 313) vicisse Boeōtiōs, E. retained the iron in his body until word was brought back that the Boeotians had conquered; Dōnec rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit, Until Marcellus returned, there was silence;*

**Haud dēsinam dōnec perfēcerō, I will not cease until I have (shall have) accomplished (it); *Exspectābo dum venit, I will wait until he comes.*

DUM, DŌNEC, QUOD, with the Subjunctive.

RULE.

§ 359. DUM, DŌNEC, and QUOD, *until*, take the Subjunctive when suspense and design are involved: *Virginius dum collēgam cōsuleret morātus est, Virginius delayed until he could consult his colleague; *At tibi sit tanti (§) nōn indulgēre theātris, Dum bene de vacuō pectore cēdat amor, Ov., But let it be worth the cost to you (= Deem it worth the cost) not to indulge in playgoing until love is fairly gone from (your) untenanted bosom. Often with exspecto: *Rūsticus exspectat dum dēfluat amnis, Hor., The clown waits for the river to run off (dry).*

REMARK.—The Subjunctive is sometimes used in narrative with DUM, *while*, and DŌNEC, *while, until*, to express subordination (like QUAM, § 368).

RULE.

§ 360. DUM, DUMMODO, MODO, *so long as, provided that, only*, with the Subjunctive, are used in conditional wishes: *Oderint dum metuant, Let them hate so long as they fear, provided that, if they will only fear. Examples: § 396.*

• III. Subsequent Action.

ANTEQUAM and PRIUSQUAM with the Indicative.

RULE.

§ 361. ANTEQUAM and PRIUSQUAM, *before*, take the Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, when the limit is stated as a fact.

REMARK.—The present is used in anticipation of the future. The elements ANTE, ANTEĀ, PRIUS — QUAM, are often separated.

Antequam ad sententiam redeo dē me pauca dīcam, Before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself;

*Omnia experiri certum est *priusquam* pereō, **TER.**, *I am determined to try every thing before I perish* (*priusquam peream* = sooner than perish, to keep from perishing); *Membris ūtimur priusquam didicimus* (§ 356) *cūjus ea ūtilitātis causā habeāmus*, *We use our limbs before we learn for what use we have them*; *Nōn ante finitum est proelium quam tribūnus militum interfectus est*, *The engagement was not finished before* (= until) *the tribune of the soldiers was killed*; *Neque defatigabor antequam illōrum viās ratiōnēsque percēpero*, *And I will not let myself grow weary before* (until) *I learn* (*shall have learned*) *their ways and means* (*via ratioque* = scientific method).

ANTEQUAM and PRIUSQUAM with the Subjunctive.

RULE.

§ 362. ANTEQUAM and PRIUSQUAM are used with the Subjunctive when an ideal limit is given, when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate.

REMARK.—The translation is often *before*, and the verbal in *-ing*.

Ante vidēmus fulguratiōnem quam sonum audiāmus, *We see the flash of lightning before hearing the sound*; *In omnibus negōtiis priusquam aggrediāre adhibenda est praeparatio diligēns*, *In all affairs, before addressing yourself* (to them), *you must make use of careful preparation*; *Collem celeriter priusquam ab adversariis sentiātur commūnit*, *He speedily fortified the hill before he was perceived by the enemy* [*priusquam* = *priusquam ut* (§), *too soon to be perceived by the enemy*;] *Hannibal omnia priusquam excederet pugnā erat expertus*, *Hannibal had tried everything before withdrawing from the fight* (= to avoid withdrawing from the fight); *Inde nōn prius ēgressus est quam* (*nōn priusquam* = *dōnec*) *rēx eum in fidem reciperet*, *He did not go away until the king took him under his protection* (*i. e.*, *He stayed to make the king take him under his protection*); *Anteā mortuus est quam tū nātus essēs*, *He died before you were born, your birth* (mere

subordination); *Ducentis annis antequam urbem Rōmam caperent in Italiam Galli dēscendērunt*, (It was) *two hundred years before their taking Rome* (that) *the Gauls came down into Italy*.

REMARK.—POTIUS QUAM, like PRIUSQUAM, does not require UT: *Depugnā potius quam serviās*, *Fight (it) out rather than be a slave*.

§ 363. IV. Constructions of Quum.

RULE.

- I. Temporal QUUM (*when — then*) takes the Indicative;
- II. Historical QUUM, *as*, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.
- III. 1. Causal QUUM, *as, since*; and
2. Concessive QUUM, *whereas, although*, take the Subjunctive.

PARADIGM.

- I. *Quum vēr appetit*, militēs ex hibernis movent, *When spring approaches, soldiers move out of winter-quarters.*
- II. *Quum vēr appeteret*, Hannibal ex hibernis mōvit, *As spring was approaching (spring approaching), Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.*
- III. 1. *Quum vēr appetat*, ex hibernis movendum est, *As (since) spring is approaching, we must move out of winter-quarters.*
2. *Quum vēr appeteret*, tamen hostēs ex hibernis nōn movērunt, *Whereas (although) spring was approaching, nevertheless the enemy did not move out of winter-quarters.*

I. Temporal Quum.

RULE.

§ 364. QUUM, *when*, is used with all the tenses of the Indicative, to designate merely temporal relations. In the Principal clause, a temporal adverb or temporal expression is frequently employed, such as TUM, TUNC, *then*, NUNC, *now*, DIēs, *day*, TEMPUS, *time*, and the like: *Animus nec quum*

adest nec quum discēdit appāret, The soul is not visible either when it is there (comes) or when it goes; Sex librōs tunc dē Rēpublicā scrīpsimus quum gubernācula reīpūblicae tenēbāmus, I wrote the six books about the state at the time when I held the helm of the state; Recordāre tempus illud quum pater Cūrio maerēns jacēbat in lectō, Remember the time when Curio the father lay grieving in bed; Longum illud tempus quum nōn ero magis mē movet quam hoc exiguum, That long time (to come), when I shall not exist, has more effect on me than this brief (present time); Jam vēr appetēbat quum Hannibal ex hibernis mōvit, Spring was already approaching when H. moved out of winter-quarters.

Coincident Action.

§ 365. When the actions of the two clauses are coincident, QUUM is almost equivalent to its kindred relative QUOD, in that: *Quum tacent clāmant, when (= in that) they are silent, they cry aloud; Improbis fuisti quum accēpisti, You were dishonest when (= in that) you received.*

This is true even when the temporal relation is emphasized: **Quum patriam amīsī tum mē perisse putātō, Ov., When I lost my country, then (it was) you must think I perished.*

Conditional use of QUUM.

§ 366. QUUM with the Future, Future Perfect, or Present, used as a Future (§ 27), is often almost equivalent to SĪ (if), with which it is sometimes interchanged: **Quum veniet, contrā digitō compesce labellum, Juv., When (If) he meets you, padlock your lip with your finger; Nemo mē vestrum quum hinc excēssero cōsequētur, None of you will catch up with me when I shall have departed (depart) hence.*

Quum as a Generic Relative.

§ 367. QUUM — QUOTIĒS, as often as, is used in the same way as the generic relatives (§ 418). When one action is re-

peated before another in the Present, the Perfect is employed ; in the Past, the Pluperfect ; in the Future, the Future Perfect : *Ager quum multōs ānnōs requiēvit ūberiorēs efferre frūgēs solet, When a field has rested (rests) many years, it usually produces a more abundant crop ; Quum palam ejus ānnulī ad palmam converterāt Gygēs ā nullō vidēbātur, When(ever) Gyges turned the set of the ring toward the palm (of his hand) he was seen by no one.*

REMARK.—In this frequentative sense the Pluperfect Subjunctive is frequently employed, chiefly by later historians ; § 356, R. 2.

II. Historical QUUM.

RULE.

§ 368. QUUM, *when (as)*, is used in narrative with the Imperfect Subjunctive of contemporaneous action, with the Pluperfect Subjunctive of antecedent action.

REMARK.—The subordinate clause generally precedes and often indicates causal as well as temporal relation. The English participle is often a convenient translation. *Quum essem — being ; Quum fuīsem — having been (also : being).*

Quum hanc jam epistolam complicārem tabellārīi ā vōbis vēnērunt, As I was already in the act of folding this letter, couriers from you came ; Quum Caesar Ancōnam occupāset, urbem reliquimus, When (as) Caesar had occupied Ancōna (C. having occupied A.), I left the city ; Agēsīlāus quum ex Aegyptō reverterētur dēcēssit, Agesilaus died as he was returning from Egypt ; Zēnōnem quum Athēnis essem audiēbam frequenter, When I was at Athens, I heard Zeno (lecture) frequently.

Causal and Concessive QUUM.

RULE.

§ 369. QUUM, *when, whereas, since*, with the Subjunctive, is used to denote the reason, and occasionally the motive, of an action : *Quae quum ita sint effectum est nihil esse malum quod turpe nōn sit, Since these things are so, it is made out*

(proved) *that nothing is bad that is not dishonorable*; *Quum* Athēnās tamquam ad mercatūram bonārum artium sīs profectus inānem redire turpissimum est, *As (since) you set out for Athens as if to a market of good qualities, it would be utterly disgraceful to return empty (handed)*; *Dolō erat pugnandum quum pār nōn esset armīs, He had to fight by stratagem, as he was not a match in arms.*

REMARKS.—The Subjunctive is used because the relation is a mere conception: that it is a mere conception is emphasized by *QUIPPE* and *UTPOTE*, as in the relative sentence. (§ 427.)

RULE.

§ 370. Causal *QUUM*, *whereas*, becomes concessive *QUUM*, *whereas, although*, when the cause is not sufficient: *Nihil me adjuvit quum posset, He gave me no assistance, although he had it in his power*; **Quum sit turpe magis nostris nescire Latinē, Juv., Whereas it is more disgraceful for natives not to know Latin*; *Quum primī ordinēs hostium concidissent, tamen acerrimē reliquī resistēbant, Whereas (although) the first ranks of the enemy had fallen (been cut to pieces), nevertheless the rest resisted most vigorously*; **Quum tē tam multī peterent tū mē ūna petistī, Prop., Though so many sought you, you alone sought me.*

QUUM — TUM.

§ 371. When *QUUM*, *when*, *TUM*, *then* (both—and especially), have the same verb, the verb is put in the Indicative; when they have different verbs, the verb with *QUUM* may be in the Subjunctive, which often has a concessive force: *Multum quum in omnibus rebus tum in rē militārī potest fortuna, Chance has great potency in every thing, and especially in war*; *Plēna exemplōrum est nōstra rēs publica quum sæpe tum maximē bellō Pūnicō secundō, (The history of) our state is full of examples (which have occurred), often and most (of all) in the second Punic war*; *Sisēnnæ historia quum facile omnēs*

superiōrēs vincat tum indicat tamen quantum absit ā summō, Although the history of Sisenna easily surpasses all former histories, yet it shows how far it is from the highest (mark).

Conditional Sentences.

§ 372. In conditional sentences the clause which contains the condition (supposed cause) is called the *Prótasis*, that which contains the consequence is called the *Apódōsis*. For practical purposes Protasis may be translated *premise*, and Apodosis, *conclusion*. The Apodosis is grammatically the *Principal*, the Protasis the *Dependent* clause.

§ 373. The common conditional particle is *sī*, *if* (a locative case, literally *so, in those circumstances* (comp. *sī-c, so*). Hence, conditional clauses with *sī* may be regarded as adverbs in the ablative case, and are often actually represented by the ablative with a participle, adjective, or substantive (§ 161).

REMARKS.—1. With *sī* compare English *so*: “So I were a man” (SHAKS.) — *If I were a man: so it be*, dummodo sit.

2. The temporal particles *QUUM* and *QUANDO*, *when*, and the locative *UBI*, are also used to indicate conditional relations in which the idea of time or space is involved.

Sign of the Conditional omitted.

§ 374. The sign of the Conditional is sometimes omitted, and the relation expressed by an interrogative or imperative: *Tristis es? indignor quod sum tibi causa dolōris*, Ov. (§ 328); *Cēdit amor rēbus: rēs age, tūtus eris*, Ov., *Love yields to business; do business, (if you plunge into) business, you will be safe.*

Negative of sī.

§ 375. The negative of *Sī* is either *sī nōn* or *nisi*.

Sī nōn negatives a particular word, *if not*; *nisi*, *unless*, negatives the whole idea:

1. *Quod sī nōn possumus facere, moriāmur*, *If we cannot do it, let us die*; *Sī fēceris, magnum habēbo grātiam*; *sī nōn fēceris, ignōscam*, *If you do it, I will be very grateful to you*;

*if you do not, I will forgive (you); *Sī mihi nōn parcis, fortūnæ parcere dēbēs, Ov., If you do not spare me, you ought to spare (my) fortune.*

2. *Nisi id confestim facis, ego tē trādam magistrātūi, Unless you do it at once, I will give you up to the magistrate; Parvī sunt forīs arma nisi est cōsiliū domī, Of little (value) are arms abroad, unless there is wisdom at home.*

REMARKS.—1. Sometimes the difference is unessential. Observe the phrases: *Si ille nōn fuisset and nisi ille fuisset.*—*If it not been for him.*

2. *Nī* for *nisi* is antiquated or poetical: **Nī pārere velis pereundum erit ante lucernās, Juv. (§ 317, R. 4).*

3. If the verb is to be supplied from the context, *sī* *minus*, *if less*, (not) *sīn minus*, *sīn aliter*, *if otherwise*, are commonly used, rarely *sī nōn*: *Edūc tēcum omnēs tuos; sī minus, quam plūrimos, Take out with you all your (followers); if not, as many as possible; *Ōdero sī poterō sī nōn invitū amābo, Ov., § 30 R.*

Two Conditions excluding each the other.

§ 376. When two conditions exclude each the other, *sī* is used for the first; *sīn*, *if not* (but if), for the second. *Sīn* is further strengthened by *AUTEM*, *but*, *minus*, *less*, (not), *SECUS*, *otherwise*, *ALITER*, *else*: *Mercātūra, sī tenuis est, sordida putanda est; sīn magna et cōpiōsa, nōn est admodum vituperanda, Mercantile business, if it is petty, is to be considered dirty (work); if (it is) not (petty, but) great and abundant (= conducted on a large scale), it is not to be found fault with much.*

Correlatives of Sī.

§ 377. The correlatives of *sī* are: *Sīc*, *so*, *ita*, *thus*; but they are commonly not expressed. Occasionally *TUM*, *then*, and *EA* *CONDITIōNE*, *on those terms*, are employed.

Classification of Conditional Sentences.

§ 378. Conditional sentences may be divided into three classes, according to the character of the Protasis:—

- I. Logical Conditional Sentences: *Sī*, with the Indicative.
 II. Ideal Conditional Sentences: *Sī*, with Present and Perfect Subjunctive.
 III. Unreal Conditional Sentences: *Sī*, with Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

I. *Logical Conditional Sentences.*

§ 379. The Logical Conditional Sentence simply states the elements in question. (If this is so, then that is so; if this is not so, then that is not so.) The Protasis is in the Indicative; the Apodosis is either in the Indicative or an equivalent (the Potential Subjunctive or Imperative).

PARADIGMS.

<i>Sī id crēdis, errās,</i>	<i>If you believe that, you are going wrong;</i>
<i>Sī id crēdēbās, errābās,</i>	<i>If you believed that, you were going wrong;</i>
<i>Sī id crēdidistī, errāstī,</i>	<i>If you have believed that, you have gone wrong;</i>
<i>Sī id crēdēs, errābis,</i>	<i>If you (shall) believe that, you will be going wrong; §§ 36, 38.</i>
<i>Sī id crēdideris, errāveris,</i>	<i>If you (shall have) believe(d) that, you will have gone (will go) wrong.</i>
<i>Sī quid crēdidistī, errās,</i>	<i>If you have believed any thing (— when you believe any thing), you go wrong. Comp. § 356.</i>
<i>Sī quid crēdiderās, errābās,</i>	<i>If you had believed any thing (— when you believed any thing), you went wrong.</i>

§ 380. *Sī spīritum dūcit, vivit,* *If he is drawing (his) breath (breathing), he is living;* *Nātūram sī sequēmur ducem, nunquam aberrābimus,* *If we follow nature (as our) guide, we shall never go astray;* *Stomachābātur senex sī quid asperius dixeram,* *The old man used to be fretted if I said any thing (that was) rather harsh; *Vivam sī vivet; sī cadet illa cadam,*

PROP., *I shall live if she lives ; if she falls I shall fall ;* *Flectere sī nequeō superōs, Acheronta movēbō, VIRG., *If I cannot bend heaven, I will rouse hell ;* *Sī animum vicistī est quod gandeās, PL., *If you have conquered (your) temper, there is reason for your rejoicing ;* *Nunc sī forte potes, sed nōn potes optima conjux; Fīnitīs gaudē tot mihi morte malīs, OV., *Now, if haply you can, but you cannot, noble wife ; Rejoice that so many evils have been finished for me by death.*

REMARK.—In the Ōrātiō Oblīqua the Protasis of the Logical Conditional takes the Subjunctive, according to the rule. § 440.

II. Ideal Conditional Sentence.

§ 381. The Ideal Conditional sentence represents the matter as still in suspense. The Protasis is put in the Present Subjunctive for continued action, and in the Perfect Subjunctive for completion or attainment. The Apodosis is in the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, Imperative, or some other equivalent of the Future. §§ 27, 30, R. 2.

Sī id crēdās, errēs, *If you should, were to, believe that, you would be going wrong.*

Sī id crēdās, errāveris, *If you should, were to, believe that, you would go wrong.*

Sī id crēdideris, errēs, 1. *If you should (prove to) have believed that, you would be going wrong.*

2. *If you should (come to) believe that you would be going wrong.*

§ 382. Sī vicīnus tuus equum meliōrem habeat quam tuus est, tuumne equum mālīs an illius? *If your neighbor were to have a better horse than yours is, would you prefer your horse or his ?* Sī gladium quis apud tē sānā mente dēposuerit, repetat insāniēns, reddere peccātum sit, officium nōn reddere, *If a man in sound mind were to deposit a sword with you, (and) reclaim it (when) mad, it would be wrong to return it, right not to return it ;** Sī vērūm excutiās, faciēs nōn uxor amātur,

JUV., *If you (were to) get out the truth, it is the face, not the wife, that is loved*; *Ōtia sī tollās periēre Cupīdinis arcūs*, OV. (§ 3, R. 6); **Sī valeant hominēs, ars tua Phoebe jacet*, OV., *Should men keep well, your art, Phoebus, is naught*; **Sī nunc mē suspendam, meis inimicis voluptatem creāverim*, PLAUT., *If I were to hang myself now, I should get up a pleasure for mine enemies*; **Sī ā corōnā relictus sim nōn queam dīcere*, *If I were to be left by the ring (the outside crowd), I should not be able to speak.*

III. Unreal Conditional Sentence.

§ 383. The Unreal Conditional sentence is used of *that which is unfulfilled or impossible*, and is expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive for continued action—generally, in opposition to the Present, and by the Pluperfect Subjunctive for completed action—uniformly in opposition to the Past.

Sī id crēderēs, errārēs, *If you believed that, [you do not],
you would be going wrong;*

Sī id crēdidissēs, errāvissēs, *If you had believed that, [you did not], you would have gone wrong.*

§ 384. *Sapientia nōn expeterētur, sī nihil efficeret*, *Wisdom would not be sought after, if it accomplished nothing*; *Sī ibi tē esse scīssēm, ad tē ipse venīssēm*, *If I had known you were there, I should have come to you myself*; **Hectora quis nōsset sī fēlix Troja fuīssēt?* OV., *Who would know (of) Hector if Troy had been happy*; *Nisi ante Rōmā prōfectus essēs, nunc eam certē relinquerēs*, *If you had not departed from Rome before, you would certainly leave it now.*

REMARKS.—1. The Imperfect denotes opposition to the Present, and hence it may be used in opposition to a continued present or future. At certain points, then, the Ideal and Unreal conditions may be interchanged according to the conception of the speaker: *Haec sī tēcum patria loquātur nōnne impetrāre dēbeat?* *If your country should (were to) speak thus with you, ought she not to get (what she wants)?* *Sī ūniversa prōvincia loqui posset, hāc vōce ūterētur*, *If the whole province could speak, it would*

use this language; *Si existat hodiē ab inferis Lycūrgus, gaudeat, If Lycūrgus were to rise from the dead this day, he would rejoice. (Sī exsisteret, if he were rising.)*

2. The Imperfect Subjunctive may also denote opposition to the past (Comp. § 54): *Nōn tam facile opēs Carthāginis tantae concidissent nisi Sicilia clāssibus nōstris patēret, The great resources of Carthage (Carthage with her great resources) would not have fallen so readily if Sicily had not been open to our fleets.*

3. In Unreal Conditions, the Apodosis is sometimes expressed by the Imperfect Indicative when the action is represented as interrupted (§ 316), by the Pluperfect and Historical Perfect when the conclusion is confidently anticipated (§ 51). This is the regular construction with verbs which signify *possibility* or *power*, *obligation* or *necessity* (§ 49, R.). *Lābēbar longius, nisi mē retinuissem, I was gliding (should have glided) too far if I had not checked myself; Peractum erat bellum sī Pompējum opprimere Brundusii potuisset, The war was (had been) finished if he had been able to crush Pompey at Brundisium; Cōsul esse quī potuī nisi eum vitāe cursum tenuissem? How could I have been consul if I had not kept that course of life? *Antōni potuit gladiōs contemnere sī sic omnia dixisset, Juv., He might have despised Antony's swords if he had thus said all (that he did say); *Emendatūrus sī licuisset eram, Ov., I should have removed the faults if I had been free (to do it); *In bona ventūrus sī paterēre (R. 2) fuit, Ov., He would have come into (my) property if you had permitted it.*

§ 385. When the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional is made to depend on a sentence which requires the Subjunctive, the Pluperfect is turned into the Periphrastic Perfect Subjunctive: the Imperfect form is unchanged.

Nōn dubito,	}	quīn sī id crēderēs, errārēs,
I do not doubt,		that if you believed that, you would be going wrong.
Nōn dubitābam,	}	quīn sī id crēdidissēs erratūrus fueris,
I did not doubt,		that if you believed that, you would have gone wrong.

§ 386. *Honestum tale est ut vel sī ignōrārent id hominēs esset laudābile, Virtue is a thing to deserve praise, even if men did not know it. Nec dubium erat quīn sī tam paucī simul obire omnia possent, terga datūrī hostēs fuerint, There was no doubt that if it had been possible for so small a number to have*

managed every thing, the enemy would have turned their backs; Dic quidnam factūrus fueris si eō tempore cēnsor fuissēs? Tell (me) what you would have done, if you had been censor at that time? Adeō inopiā coactus est Hannibal, ut nisi tum fugae speciem abeundō timuisset Galliam repetitūrus fuerit, Hannibal was so hard pressed by want of provisions, that had he not at the time feared (presenting) the appearance of flight by retreating, he would have gone back to Gaul (less usual: repetitūrus fuisset).

REMARKS.—1. Potui (§ 49, R.) commonly becomes potuerim, and the Periphrastic Passive with fui fuerim:

Haud dubium fuit quin nisi ea mora intervēnisset castra eo diē Pūnica capi potuerint, There was no doubt that had not that delay interfered the Punic camp could have been taken on that day. Compare § 456, R. 2.

2. The Passive Conditional is unchanged: *Id ille si repudiāset, dubitātis quin ei vis esset allata? If he had rejected that, do you doubt that force would have been brought (to bear) on him?*

INCOMPLETE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Omission of the Protasis.

§ 387. When the Protasis is omitted, either the precise verb or the general idea of the verb is to be supplied from the Apodosis: *Sī quisquam, Cato sapiēns fuit — Sī quisquam fuit, If any one was wise, Cato was; Magnus orātor est, si nōn maximus, He is a great orator, if not the greatest.*

Omission of the Apodosis.

§ 388. The Apodosis is omitted in *wishes*: *O, mihi praeteritōs referat si Jūppiter ānnōs, VIRG. (§ 56.)

REMARK.—No definite ellipsis is to be supplied.

Apodosis omitted in Comparisons.

§ 389. The Apodosis is omitted in comparisons with *ut si*, *velut si*, *ac si*, *quam si*, *tamquam si*, *quasi*, or simply *velut* and *tamquam*, *as if*. The verb is to be supplied from the Protasis. The mood is the Subjunctive. The tenses follow the rule of sequence, rather than the ordinary use of the conditional. In English the translation implies the unreality of the comparison.

§ 390. *Parvī primō ortū sic jacent tamquam [= jaceant sī] omnīnō sine animō sint, Babies, when first born, lie (there) as if they were wholly lifeless; Hic est obstandum, militēs, velut sī ante Rōmāna moenia pugnēmus, Here (is the place) we must oppose them, Soldiers, as if we were fighting before the walls of Rome (velut obstēmūs sī pugnēmus, as we would oppose them, if we were to fight); Mē juvat velut ipse in parte labōris ac periculī fuerim ad finem bellī Pūnicī pervēnisse, I am delighted to have reached the end of the Punic war, as if I had shared in the toil and danger (of it); *Suspectus tamquam ipse suās incenderit aedēs, Juv., Suspected as if he had (of having) set his own house on fire; Tantus patrēs metus cēpit velut sī jam ad portās hostis esset, As great fear caught (came upon) the senators as if the enemy were already at their gates; Dēlēta est Ausōnum gēns perinde ac sī internecivō bellō certāset, The Ausonian race was blotted out, just as if it had engaged in an internecine war (war to the knife).*

REMARK.—Occasionally the sequence is violated out of regard to the conditional: *Massiliēnsēs in eō honōre audīmus apud Rōmānōs esse ac sī medium umbilicum Graeciae incolerent, We hear that the people of Marseilles are in as high honor with the Romans as if they inhabited the mid-
navel (= the heart) of Greece.*

Omission of the Conditional Sign.

§ 391. Occasionally the members of a Conditional sentence are put side by side without a Conditional sign: *An ille mihi (§ 149) liber, cui mulier imperat; poscit; dandum est; vocat; veniendum; ējicit; abeundum; minātur; extimēscendum, Or is he free, (tell) me, to whom a woman gives orders; she asks; he must give; she calls; he must come; she turns out (of door); he must go; she threatens; he must be frightened; *Ūnum cognōris, omnēs nōris, Ter., You know one, you know all.*

Nisi.

§ 392. *NISI* and *NISI SĪ* are often used after negative sentences in the signification of *except, besides, only*: **Inspice*

quid portem; *nihil hīc nisi triste vidēbis*, Ov., *Examine what I am bringing; you will see nothing here except (what is) sad; *Nīl nisi mē patriis jussit abesse focis* (§ 214, R. 3).

§ 393. NISI QUOD introduces an actual limitation—with the exception, that: *Nihil acciderat [Polycratī] quod nōllet* (§ 426) *nisi quod ānnulum quō delectābātur in marī abjēcerat*, *Nothing had happened to Polycrates that he could not have wished, except that he had thrown into the sea a ring in which he took delight* (= a favorite ring).

§ 394. NISI FORTE, *unless perhaps*, NISI VĒRŌ, *unless indeed*, with the Indicative, either limits a previous statement, or makes an ironical concession: *Nēmo ferē saltat sōbrius nisi forte insānit*, *There is scarce any one that dances (when) sober, unless perhaps he is mad; Licet honestā morte dēfungī, nisi forte satius est victōris expectāre arbitrium*, *We are free to die an honorable death, unless perhaps it is better to await the pleasure of the conqueror.*

Other Forms and Phases of the Conditional Sentence.

§ 395. SIVE, SIVE (SEU, SEU), leaves a choice between two (§ 283). It stands with the Indicative: *Sive habēs quid* (§ 104), *sive nihil habēs*, *scribe tamen*, *If you have any thing, or if you have nothing* (= whether you have any thing to write or not), *still write.*

Concessive Sentences.

§ 396. DUM, DUMMODŌ, MODŌ, *provided, provided only, only* (negative: NĒ), are used to limit a previous expression, and to imply at the same time a wish, always in the Subjunctive (§ 360): *Dum dōs sit*, *nullum vitium vitiō* (§ 148) *vertitur*, PLAUT., *Provided there be a dowry, no fault can be counted as a fault; *Dummodo mōrāta rectē* (§ 229) *veniat*, *dōtāta est satis*, PLAUT., *Provided only she come with a good character, she is endowed* (= her dowry is) *enough; Multa [in eō] admī-*

randa sunt: eligere modo cūrae (§ 148) sit, *Many things in him are to be admired, only you must be careful to choose*; *Dumnē ob malefacta peream parvī id aestimo, PLAUT. (§ 176); *Cōpia plācandī sit modo parva tuī, Ov. (§ 219, R.).

§ 397. ETSĪ, ETIAMSĪ, TAMETSĪ, QUAMQUAM, QUAMVIS, QUANTUMVIS, LICET, correspond generally to the idea *although*.

REMARK.—On QUUM, *when, whereas*, as a concessive particle, see § 370.

§ 398. ETSĪ, literally: *even if*, ETIAMSĪ, *even now if*, TAMETSĪ, *yet even if*, take the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the general principles which regulate the use of SĪ, *if*. The Indicative is more common, especially with ETSĪ and ETIAMSĪ: De futūris rēbus etsi semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum conjectūrā possis accēdere, *Although it is always difficult to tell about the future, nevertheless you can sometimes come near it by guessing*; Hamilcar etsi flagrāvit bellandī cupiditāte, tamen pāci serviendum putāvit, *Although Hamilcar was on fire with the desire of war, nevertheless he thought that he ought to subserve (to work for) peace*; Inops ille etiamsi referre grātiā nōn potest, habēre certē potēst, *The needy man (spoken of), if he cannot return a favor, can at least feel it*; Etsi meum ingenium nōn moneret necessitās cōgit, *Even if my heart did not bid (me), necessity compels (me)*.

§ 399. QUAMQUAM, *to what extent soever*, falls under the head of generic relatives (§ 59), and, in the best authors, is construed with the Indicative: Hostēs quamquam vicerant sē recēpērunt, *The enemy, although he had conquered, retired*.

REMARK.—The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes found with QUAMQUAM: Quamquam exercitum quī in Volscis erat, mallet, nihil recūsāvit, *Although he would have preferred the army which was in the Volscian country, nevertheless he made no objection*.

§ 400. QUAMVIS, *to what extent you choose*, QUANTUMVIS, *to what amount you choose*, after the analogy of VOLO, *I will*,

take the Subjunctive: **Quamvis sint* sub aquā, sub aquā maledicere tentant, *OV.*, *Although they be under the water, under the water they try to rail*; **Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tū candidus essēs*, *VIRG.*, *Although he was black, although you were fair*; *Vitia mentis, quantumvis exigua sint*, in majus excēdunt, *Mental ailings, no matter how slight they be, go on increasing.*


REMARKS.—1. *ETSĪ*, *TAMETSĪ*, and *QUAMQUAM* are often used at the beginning of sentences, in the same way as the English, *And yet, Although, However*, in order to limit the whole preceding sentence.


2. The Indicative with *ETSĪ* and *QUAMQUAM* are of course liable to attraction into the subjunctive in *ōrātiō obliqua* (§ 440).

§ 401. *LICET*, *it is left free* (Intransitive of *linquo*, *I leave*) retains its verbal nature, and, according to the sequence of Tenses, takes only the Present and Perfect Subjunctive: *Licet irrīdeat sī quī vult*, *Let any one laugh who will*; **Ardeat ipsa licet*, *tormentis gaudet amantis*, *JUV.*, *Though she herself is aglow, she rejoices in the tortures of her lover*; **Sim licet extrēmum sicut sum missus in orbem*, *OV.*, *Although I be sent, as I have been, to the end of the world.*

§ 402. *UT* and *NĒ* are also used concessively: **Ut dēsint virēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās*, *OV.*, *Granted that strength be lacking, nevertheless you must praise (my) good-will*; *Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est*, *Granted that pain be not the chief evil, an evil it certainly is.*

§ 403. The Concessive sentence may be represented further by a participle:

<i>Although seeing,</i>	} <i>vidēs;</i> <i>nōn vidēs.</i>
<i>Although { not seeing,</i>	
<i>{ it does not see,</i>	
 <i>Without seeing. (§ 221.)</i>	

<i>Although seen,</i>	} <i>vīsus.</i> <i>nōn vīsus.</i>
<i>Although not seen,</i>	
 <i>Without being seen,</i>	

(§ 461.)

RELATIVE SENTENCES.

Preliminary Observations.

§ 404. 1. The Latin language uses the relative construction far more than the English: so in the beginning of sentences, and in combination with Conjunctions and other Relatives. The awkwardness or impossibility of a literal translation may generally be relieved by the substitution of a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction, or the employment of an abstract noun: *Quae quum ita sint, Now since these things are so*; *Epicūrus nōn satis politus iīs artibus quāsq̄ tenent, ērudīti appellantur, Epicurus is not sufficiently polished by those accomplishments, from the possession of which people are called cultivated*; *Futūra modo exspectant quae quia certa esse nōn possunt, cōficiuntur et angōre et metu, They only look forward to the future, and because that cannot be certain, they are worn out by distress and fear.* Notice especially *QUOD* in combination with *SĪ*, *UBI*, in which *QUOD* means *and as for that*, and is sometimes translated by *and*, *but*, *therefore*, sometimes not at all.

§ 405. 2. The Relative is the fertile source of many of the introductory particles of the compound sentence, and is therefore put last on account of the multiplicity of its uses.

§ 406. Relative sentences are introduced by the Relative Pronouns in all their forms: Adjective, Subjunctive, and Adverbial. (See Tables, p. 44.)

REMARKS.—1. The relative adverbs of Place and their correlatives may be used instead of a preposition with a relative. *Unde, whence*, is frequently used of persons, the others less frequently. *ibi* = in *eō*, &c.; *ubi* = in *quō*, &c.; *inde* = ex *quō*, &c.; *unde* = ex *quō*, &c.; *eō* = in *quem*, &c.; *quō* = in *quem*, &c.

Potest fieri ut is unde tē audisse dicis irātus dixerit, It may be that he from whom you say you heard (it) said it in anger.

2. The relative is not to be confounded with the dependent interrogative sentence. *Dicam quid sentiam, I will tell what opinion I have. Dicam quod sentio, I will tell the opinion that I have, Et quid ego tē velim et tu quod quaeris sciēs, You shall know both what I want of you and what (the thing which) you are asking (=the answer to your question.)*

Position of the Relatives.

§ 407. The Relative and Relative forms are put at the beginning of sentences and clauses. The Preposition, however, generally, though not invariably, precedes its relative. (§ 205.)

RULE.

§ 408. The Relative agrees with the word to which it refers (its antecedent) in Gender, Number, and Person: **Is minimō eget mortālis quī minimum cupit*, SYRUS, *That mortal is in want of least, who wanteth least*; **Uxor contenta est quae bona est unō virō*, PLAUT. (§ 170 R. L.); **Malum est cōsiliū quod mutārī nōn potest*, SYRUS, *Bad is the plan that cannot be changed*; **Pugnābant armīs quae post fabricāverat ūsus*, HOR., *They fought with arms which need had fashioned afterward*; **Ego quī tē cōfirmo*, ipse mē nōn possum, *I, who reassure you, cannot reassure myself*; **Tū es is quī mē saepissimē ornāstī*, *Thou art he who hast most frequently honored me*.

REMARKS.—1. When the relative refers to a sentence, *id quod*, *that which*, is commonly used (parenthetically): *Si ā vōbis dēserar (id quod nōn spēro) tamen animō nōn dēficiam*, *If I should be deserted by you (which I do not expect), nevertheless I should not become faint-hearted*.

2. The gender and number of the Relative may be determined:

1. By the sense, and not by the form.

2. By the predicate or the apposition, and not by the antecedent.

EXAMPLES: 1. *Sex millia quā Pydnā perfūgerant*, *Six thousand who had fled to Pydna*; *Equitātum omnem praemittit, quī videant*, *He sent all the cavalry ahead, who should see, that they might see (to see)*.

2. *Thēbae, quod caput Boeōtiae est*, *Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia*; *Flūmen Scaldis, quod influit in Mosā*, *The river Scheldt, which empties into the Maas*; *Iūsta glōria, quā est fructus virtūtis*, *True glory, which is the fruit of virtue*.

3. The apposition may be incorporated into the relative: *Testārū suffrāgiis, quod illi ostracismum vocant*, *By potsherd votes* — (a thing; which they call "ostracism.")

4. When the Relative refers to combined antecedents of different gender, the strongest gender is preferred (p. 81); *Pater et māter quī mortuī sunt*, *mīrū et porta quae tactae erant*.

§ 409. When the Relative has the same preposition as the Antecedent, the preposition is repeated only for the purpose of emphasis: *Cimōn in eandem invidiam incidit quam* (= *in quam*) *pater* (§ 207).

Repetition of the Antecedents.

§ 410. The Antecedent of the Relative is often repeated in the Relative clause, with the Relative as its attributive: *Caesar intellexit diem instāre, quo diē frūmentum militibus mētiri oportēret, Caesar saw that the day was at hand, on which (day) provant was to be measured out to the soldiers.*

Incorporation of the Antecedent.

§ 411. The Antecedent and the adjective, or the apposition, of the Antecedent, are often incorporated into the Relative clause: *Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc sē exerceat, What trade each man understands, in that let him practise himself* (= every man to his trade): *In quem primum ēgressi sunt locum Troja vocātur, The first place they landed at was called Troy*; *Amānus Syriam ā Ciliciā dividit quī mōns erat hostium plēnus, Syria is divided from Cilicia by Amanus, a mountain which was full of enemies*; *Themistoclēs dē servis suis quem habuit fidēlissimum ad Xerxem misit, Themistocles sent the most faithful slave he had to Xerxes.*

REMARKS.—1. Especially to be noted are the phrases: *quae tua prūdentia est, which (such) is your prudence*; *quā prūdentia es, of which (such) prudence are you*, equivalent to: *prō tuā prūdentia, in accordance with your prudence.* The most simple explanation is that *quae* — *quoniam ea, quā* — *quoniam eā* (§ 420).

2. So-called Inverted Attraction is found only in poetry, and then in the Accusative case, which may be considered as an object of thought or feelings: **Urbem quam statuo, vestra est, VIRG., (As for) the city which I am rearing, (it) is yours*; **Istum quem quaeris, ego sum, (As for) that man whom you are looking for, I am he.* ("He that hath ears to hear, let him hear").

Attraction of the Relative.

§ 412. The Accusative of the Relative is occasionally attracted into the Ablative of the Antecedent, rarely into any

other case: *Nōs tamen hoc confirmāmus illō auguriō quō diximus, Nevertheless, we confirm this by the augury which we mentioned.*

REMARK.—This attraction takes place chiefly when the verb of the relative clause must be supplied from the principal sentence: *Quibus sauciis potērat sēcum ductis, All the wounded he could (take) having been taken with him.*

§ 413. The usual Correlative of *Quī* is *is*, more rarely, *hic*, *this*, *ille*, *that*; **Is minimō eget mortālis, quī minimum cupit* (§ 408); *Illic sapiēns, de quō loquor* (§ 89); **Illa diēs veniet mea quā lūgubria pōnam* (§ 93).

§ 414. The Correlative *is*, is often omitted, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative: **Postume nōn bene olet, quī bene semper olet, MART., Postumus, he does not smell sweet, who always smells sweet*; *Quem arma nōn frēgerant vitia vīcērunt, Him, whom arms had not crushed did vices overcome*; *Xerxēs prāemium prōposuit quī [— eī quī] invēnisset novam voluptātem, Xerxes offered a reward to him who should invent a new pleasure*; *Miseranda vīta quī [— eōrum quī] sē metuī quam amārī mālunt, Pitiāble is the life of those who would prefer being feared to being loved*; **Discitē sanārī per quem [— per eum, per quem] didicistis amāre, Ov. (§ 199); learn how to be healed from him from whom you have learned how to love.*

§ 415. The indefinite antecedent is generally omitted: **Elige cui dicās: tu mihi sōla placēs, Ov., Choose some one to whom you may say: You alone please me.*

§ 416. The Relative clause often precedes the Correlative; incorporation is common: *Male rēs sē habet quum quod virtūte effici dēbet id tentātur pecūniā, It is a bad state of affairs when what ought to be accomplished by worth, is attempted by money*; **Quam quisque nōrit artem in hāc sē exerceat* (§ 411). The Correlative omitted: *Quod nōn dedit fortūna nōn ēripit, What fortune has not given (does not give), she does not take away.*

Tenses and Moods in Relative Sentences.

TENSES.

§ 417. The Future and Future Perfect are used with greater exactness than in current English: **Sit liber dominus qui volet esse meus*, MART., *He must be free who wishes (shall wish) to be my master*; *Qui prior strinxerit ferrum, ejus victoria erit* (§§ 36, 39).

Frequentative Action.

§ 418. The Perfect is used of frequentative action in the Present, the Pluperfect of frequentative action in the Past, and the Future Perfect of frequentative action in the Future, when the action in the relative clause precedes the action in the principal clause: *Terra nunquam sine usura reddit, quod accipit*, *The earth never returns without interest what it has received (receives)*; *Quod non dedit fortuna non eripit* (§ 416); **Non coenat quoties nemo vocavit eum*, MART., *He does not dine as often as (when) no one has invited (invites) him*; *Haerēbant in memoria quaecumque audierat et viderat* [Themistocles], *Whatever Themistocles had heard and seen (= heard and saw) remained fixed in his memory.* Comp. § 356.

REMARK.—The frequentative idea lies in the combination with the leading verb, which must be a verb of continuance. The mood is the Indicative. The Pluperfect Subjunctive, however, is used by the later historians. § 357, R. 2.

MOODS.

§ 419. The Relative clause, as such—that is, as the representative of an adjective—takes the Indicative mood: *Uxor quae bona est*, *A wife who is good, a good wife.* The Relative in this use often serves as a circumlocution for a Substantive, with this difference: that the Substantive expresses a permanent relation; the Relative clause, a transient relation: *ei, qui docent* — *those who teach* — *the teachers* (inasmuch as they are exercising the functions).

RULE.

§ 420. The Indicative is used in Relative clauses when the particle into which the Relative can be resolved (§ 404) requires the Indicative: (QUĪ = IS ENIM, *for he*, is often strengthened by UT, UT POTE, QUIPPE:) Habeo senectūtī magnam grātiā, *quae mihi sermōnis aviditātem auvit*, *I am very thankful to old age, which* (= for it) *has increased me* (= in me) *the appetite for talk.*

REMARK.—QUI with the Subjunctive gives *an argument*, quī with the Indicative *a fact*; hence the latter is nearly — QUONIAM.

§ 421. QUĪ = SĪ QUIS, has the Indicative when the Conditional is logical: Terra nunquam sine ūsūrā reddit, *quod accēpit* (sī quid accēpit). So also in Generic Relative sentences; § 418.

§ 422. The Subjunctive is employed in Relative clauses when it would be used (potentially) in a simple sentence, chiefly in phrases: quod sciam, *for all I know*; quōs cōgnōverim, *so far as I know them.*

REMARK.—The sphere of this rule may be extended by embracing the sentences of character which are potential (§§ 330, 425–6), and the ideal second person, which attracts its dependencies into the Subjunctive (§ 424).

RULE.

§ 423. The Subjunctive is used in Relative clauses which form a part of the utterance or the view of another than the narrator (Ōrātio Obliqua): Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait bestiolās quāsdam nascī *quae unum diem vivant*, *Aristotle says that on the river Bog there are little creatures that live (only) one day* (“that live a day” is a part of Aristotle’s statement); Paetus omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus *reliquisset* mihi dōnāvit, *Paetus presented to me all the books that his brother had left* (this is Paetus’s statement; otherwise: quōs frāter ejus (§ 307) *reliquerat*); Multī suam vītā neglexērunt ut eōs

quī his cārīorēs quam ipsī sibi *essent* liberārent, *Many have neglected their own lives, that they might free those who were dearer to them than they were to themselves*; Xerxēs praemium prōposuit quī [— eī quī] *invenisset* novam voluptātem (§ 414). See § 439.

REMARKS.—Even in Ōrātiō Obliqua the Indicative is retained:

1. In mere circumlocutions (§ 419): Efficitur ab ōrātōre ut *sī quī audiunt* ita afficiantur ut ōrātor velit, *It is brought about by the orator that those who hear him* (— his auditors) *are affected as he wishes* (them to be).

2. In explanations of the narrator: Apud Hypanim fluvium quī in Pontum influit Aristotelēs ait, etc. (§ 423), *On the river Bog, which (the Bog, a river which) empties into the Black Sea.*

RULE.

§ 424. Relative sentences which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive: Plūris putāre quod ūtile videātur quam quod honestum turpissimum est, *To deem of more value that which seems useful than that which (seems) honorable, is utterly disgraceful*; Nihil indignius est quam eum quī culpā careat supplicio nōn carere, *There is nothing more outrageous than that he who is free from fault should not be free from punishment*; Quis eum diligat quem metuat aut eum a quō se metui putet? *Who could love a man whom he fears, or by whom he deems himself feared?* *Nam quod emās possis jure vocāre tuum, MAET., *For what you buy, you may rightly call your own*; Sī sōlōs eōs dicerēs miserōs quibus moriendum esset, nēminem eorum quī viverent exciperēs, moriendum enim est omnibus, *If you called only those wretched who had (have) to die, you would except none who lived (live), for all have to die.*

REMARK.—Of individual facts the Indicative is employed: *Quod habēs, nē habeās, et illud quod nunc nōn habēs, habeās, malum, PLAUT., *The evil that you have, may you not have, and that which now you have not, may you have.* So also in circumlocutions and in the older language: *Necesse est facere sūmptum quī quaerit lucrum (§ 320.)

RULE.

§ 425. Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive when *quī* — *ut* is as design or tendency; §§ 339 and 348.

DESIGN: *Sunt multī quī aliīs ēripiunt quod aliīs largiantur*, *There are many who snatch from some to lavish on others*; *Senex serit arborēs quae alteri sēculō prōsint*, *The old man sets out trees to do good to the next generation*; *Conōn nōn quaesivit ubi ipse tūtō viveret, sed unde praesidiō esse posset cīvibus suis* (§ 136); **Semper habē Pyladēn quī cōsōlētur Orestēn*.

TENDENCY (character), § 339, 6: *Damna nulla tanta sunt quae nōn virī fortēs ferenda arbitrentur*, *There are no losses so great, that brave men should not think them endurable* (great enough to keep brave men from thinking them endurable); *Ego is sum quī fēcērim*, *I am the man to have done it*; **Nīl prōdest quod nōn laedere possit idem* (§ 97); **Quem mea Calliopē laeserit ūnus ego*, *Ov.*, *I am the only one that my Calliope (= my Muse) has hurt*. On *quam quī* — *quam ut*, see § 113; on *dignus quī*, *worthy of* see § 348.

§ 426. This construction is especially common after the general expressions: *Est quī, sunt quī*, *there is, there are some who*; *nēmo est quī*, *there is none to*; *nihil est quod*, *there is nothing*; *habeo quod*, *I have to*, and the like: *Sunt quī discēssum animā ā corpore putent esse mortem*, *There are some who think that the departure of the soul from the body is death*; *Fuit quī suādēret appellatiōnem mēnsis Augusti in Septembrem transferendam*, *There was a man who urged that the name of the month (of) August should be transferred to September*; **Sunt quae tortōribus annua praestent*, *Juv.*, *There are some women who give salaries to torturers*; **Nec mea quī digitis lūmina condāt erit*, *Ov.*, *And there will be no one to close mine eyes with his fingers*; **Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuum mali*, *PLAUT.*, *After death there is no ill in death for me to dread*; **Miserrimus est quī quum ēsse cupit quod*

edat nōn hābet, PLAUT., *He is a poor wretch who, when he wants to eat, has not any thing to eat.* So also: *Reperiuntur quī*, *Persons are found who (to)* *Quis est quī?* *who is there who (to) ?* *Est cūr*, *there is reason for, &c.* (*Nihil habeo quod dicam*, *I have nothing to say*; *Nōn habeo quid dicam*, *I do not know what to say.*)

REMARKS.—1. QUI NŌN, QUAE NŌN, QUOD NŌN, &c., are represented after negative clauses by QUĪN (§ 336): *Sunt certa vitia quae nemo est quin effugere cupiat*, *There are certain faults which there is no one but (— everybody) desires to escape*; **Nil tam difficile est quin quaerendō investigari possiet* (— possit) TER., *Nothing is so difficult but it can be tracked out by search.* But as QUĪN = UT NŌN the demonstrative may be expressed, and generally is expressed when in the Accusative case.

2. The Indicative is used in poetry and in the statements of definite facts, and not of general characteristics:—

Multi sunt quī ēripiant,
There are many to snatch away.

Multi sunt quī ēripiunt,
Many are they who snatch away.

**Sunt quōs genus hoc minimē iuvat*, HOR., *There are some who do not like this style (of mine) at all.*

3. When a definite predicate is negated, the Indicative may stand on account of the definite statement, the Subjunctive on account of the negative:

- A. *Nihil bonum est quod nōn eum quī id possideat meliōrem facit*; or,
- B. *Nihil bonum quod nōn eum quī id possideat meliōrem faciat.*
- A. *Nothing that does not make its owner better is good.*
- B. *There is nothing good that does not make its owner better.*

RULE.

§ 427. When QUĪ = QUUM IS, *as he*, the Subjunctive is employed. The particles UT, UTPOTE, QUĪPPE, *as*, are often used in conjunction with the Relative: [Canīnius] *fuit mirificā vigilantia quā suō tōtō cōsulātū somnum nōn viderit*, *Caninius was a man of marvellous watchfulness, as he did not see, not to have seen (— taken a wink of) sleep in his whole consulship*; *Ō fortunāte adolēscēns quī tuae virtūtis Homērum*

praecōnem invēneris! Lucky youth! to have found a crier (— trumpeter) of your valor (in) Homer! Magna pars Fidēnātium, ut quī colōnī additī Rōmānīs essent, Latīnē sciēbant, A great part of the Fidenates, inasmuch as they had been mixed as colonists with the Romans, understood Latin; Convīvia cum patre nōn inībat, quippe quī ne in oppidum quidem nisi perrārō venīret, He was not in the habit of going to parties with his father, for he did not even come to town but very rarely.

REMARK.—On the relative in a causal or illative sense with the Indicative, see § 420.

Accusative Relative and Infinitive.

§ 428. The Accusative Relative, with the Infinitive, may be used in *Ōrātiō Obliqua* when the Relative is to be resolved into a *Coördinating Conjunction* and the *Demonstrative*: *Philosophī cēsent ūnumquemque nōstrum mundi esse partem, ex quō illud nātūrā cōsequī ut commūnem ūtilitātem nostrae anteponāmus, Philosophers think that every one of us is a part of the universe, and that the natural consequence of this is for us to prefer the common welfare to our own.*

REMARK.—So also sometimes sentences with the relative particles *QUIA*, *QUUM*, *UT*, *QUAMQUAM*, &c.: *quia trucidāre — quia trucidārent, because they butchered* (only in the later historians).

Combination of Relative Sentences.

§ 429. Relative sentences are combined by means of *Copulative Conjunctions* only when they are actually *coördinate*. When the second Relative would stand in the same case as the first, it is commonly omitted. When it would stand in a different case, the *Demonstrative* is often substituted; or, if the case be the *Nominative* or *Accusative*, the Relative may be omitted altogether.

PARADIGM.

Dumnorix quī principātum obtinēbat cuique plēbs favēbat,
*D., who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons
 favored ;*

Dumnorix quī principātum obtinēbat ac plēbi acceptus erat,
*D., who held the chieftaincy, and (who) was acceptable to
 the commons ;*

Dumnorix quī principātum obtinēbat eīque plēbs favēbat,
*D., who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons
 favored ;*

Dumnorix quī principātum obtinēbat et plēbs diligēbat,
*D., who held the chieftaincy, and (whom) the commons
 loved ;*

Dumnorix quem plēbs diligēbat et principātum obtinēbat,
D., whom the people loved, and (who) held the chieftaincy.

REMARK.—The relative is not combined with adversative or illative conjunctions (*but who, who therefore*), except at the beginning of a sentence as the representative of a demonstrative.

On the Participle as the representative of a relative sentence, see § 462.

Comparative Sentences.

§ 430. A peculiar phase of the Relative sentence is the comparative, which is introduced in English by the relative particle "*as*"—in Latin, by a great variety of relative forms: 1, by correlatives; 2, by ATQUE or AC (§259); 3, by QUAM.

§ 431. The mood of the Dependent clause is the Indicative, unless the Subjunctive is required by the laws of oblique relation, or by the conditional idea (§ 389).

RULE.

§ 432. When the dependent clause (or standard of comparison) borrows its verb from the leading clause, the dependent clause is treated as a part of the leading clause; and if the first or leading clause stands in the Accusative with the Infinitive, the second or dependent clause must have the Accusative

likewise: *Ita sentio Latīnam linguam locupletīorem esse quam Graecam, It is my opinion that the Latin language is richer than the Greek; Ego Gájum Caesarem nōn eadem dē rēpúblicā sentire quae me scio, I know that Gaius Caesar has not the same views with regard to the state as I have.*

§ 433.

CORRELATIVES.

1. Pronominal correlatives:

TOT TOTIDEM	= QUOT,	(so) as many	} as.
TANTUS	= QUANTUS,	(so) as great	
TĀLIS	QUĀLIS,	such	
IDEM	QUĪ,	the same	

2. Adverbial correlatives:

TAM	QUAM,	so, as much	} as.
TANTOPERE	QUANTOPERE,	so, as much	
TOTIĒS	QUOTIĒS,	as often	
TAMDIŪ	QUAMDIŪ,	as long	

ITA, SĪC	{	UT, UTI, SĪCUT,	{	so (as) = as.
ITEM ITIDEM		QUEMADMODUM,		

§ 434. *Quot hominēs, tot sententiæ, (as) many men, (so) many minds; Frūmentum tantū fuit quantū iste aestimavit, Corn was worth as much as he valued it; Quālem invēni tālem reliquī, Such as I found (him), I left (him); Cimōn incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater (§ 97); Nihil tam populāre quam bonitās, Nothing is so winning as kindness; Tamdiū requiēscō quamdiū ad tē scribo, I rest as long as I am writing to you.*

REMARKS.—1. On other forms with IDEM see § 97, R. I.

2. UT QUIQUE with the superlative is more common than QUOD QUIQUE with the comparative, and is translated in the same way: *Ut quisque sibi plurimum cōfidit, ita maximē excellit, The more a man trusts himself, the more he excels.*

3. UT — ITA is often used concessively (§ 269),

4. **UT** and **PRO EÔ UT** are frequently used in a limiting or causal sense, *so far as, inasmuch as*: *Prô eô ut* temporum difficultâs tulit, *So far as the hard times permitted*; *ut* tum rês erant, *as things were then*; *ut* temporibus illis, *for those times*; *ut* erat furiôsus, *as he was stark mad*.

5. On **QUAM**, **QUANTUS**, and the superlative, see § 117.

Notice in this connection **QUAM QUI** with the superlative: *Tam sum amicus reipublicae quam qui maximê (— est), I am as devoted a friend to the state as he who is most (— as any man)*.

Comparative Sentences with ATQUE (AC).

§ 435. These sentences have been explained under the head of those “Copulative Sentences,” to which they properly belong (§ 259), although the form **—QUE** connects them with the Relative. **ET** and **QUE** are rarely used instead of **ATQUE (AC)**.

REMARK.—**ALIUS**, **ALITER**, **SECUS**, seldom have **QUAM**: **NÔN ALIUS** and other negative combinations seldom have **ATQUE**, commonly **QUAM** or **NISL**. (§ .)

Comparative Sentences with QUAM.

§ 435. Comparative sentences with **QUAM** follow the comparative degree or comparative expressions (§ 111).

The verb of the dependent clause is commonly to be supplied from the leading clause; hence the

RULE.

§ 436. In Comparative Sentences **QUAM** takes the same case after it as before it: *Melior tûtiorque est certa pax quam spêrâta victôria* (§ 92); *Existimês velim nêminem cuiquam cârîôrem unquam fuisse quam tē mihi, I wish you to think that no one was ever dearer to any one than you to me*.

EXCEPTION.—When the second member is a subject, and the first member an oblique case, the second member *must* be put in the Nominative, with the proper form of the verb **ESSE**, unless the oblique case be an Accusative: *Haec verba sunt Varrônis, hominis doctiôris quam fuit Claudius, These words*

are (the words) of *Varro*, a person of greater learning than *Claudius* (was); *Sī vicīnus tuus equum meliōrem habeat quam tuus est* (§); **Ego hominem callidiōrem vidī nēminem quam Phormiōnem*, TER., *I have not seen a shrewder man than Phormio* (= *quam Phormio est*).

REMARK.—On *QUAM PRŌ*, see § 113. On the double comparative, § 114.

THE ABRIDGED SENTENCE.

THE INFINITIVE AND INFINITIVE FORMS.

§ 437. The practical uses of the Infinitive and its kindred forms have been already considered :

Tenses of the Infinitive : §§ 75 and after.

Use of the Gerund : §§ 216 and after.

Use of the Supine : §§ 223 and after.

Infinitive in Object Sentences : § 311 and after.

Infinitive in Sentences of Design : § 317.

Infinitive in Relative Sentences : § 428.

Historical Infinitive.

§ 438. The Infinitive of the Present is sometimes used by the historians to give a rapid outline of events, with the subject in the Nominative ; generally, several infinitives in succession : [*Verrēs*] *minitārī Diodōrō, vociferārī palam, lacrimās interdum vix tenēre, Verres threatened Diodorus, bawled out before every body, sometimes could hardly restrain his tears.*

REMARK.—There is no ellipsis. The Infinitive is to be explained as in *Ōratio Oblīqua*. It takes the place of the Imperfect, and gives the outline of the thought and not the details.

Ōratio Oblīqua.

§ 439. The thoughts of the narrator, or the exact words of another, as reported by the narrator, are called *Ōratio Recta*, or Direct Discourse.

Indirect Discourse, or *Ōratio Oblīqua*, reports not the exact words spoken, but the general impression produced.

Under the general head of Ōrātio Obliqua are embraced also those clauses which imply the thought or representation of another than the speaker. Compare especially §§ 327, 423.

REMARK.—INQUAM, *quoth I*, is used in citing the Ōrātio Recta; *ĀJO, I say*, generally in Ōrātio Obliqua. INQUAM is always parenthetic; *ĀJO* may or may not be parenthetic. Ōrātio Recta may also be cited by a parenthetic “*ut ait*,” “*ut aiunt*,” *as he says, as they say, &c.* When the subject of INQUIR is mentioned it is commonly postponed.

The Ōrātio Obliqua differs from the Ōrātio Recta, partly in the use of the Moods and Tenses, partly in the use of the Pronouns.

Moods in Ōrātio Obliqua.

RULE.

§ 440. In Ōrātio Obliqua the principal clauses are put in the Infinitive, the subordinate clauses in the Subjunctive.

Ōrātio Recta :	Apud Hypanim fluvium, inquit Aristotelēs,
Ōrātio Obliqua :	Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait,
Ō. R. :	bestioale quaedam nascuntur,
Ō. O. :	bestiolās quāsdam nascī,
Ō. R. :	quae ūnum diem vivunt.
Ō. O. :	quae ūnum diem vivant.

Ō. R.— <i>On the river Bog, says Aristotle,</i>	} <i>little creatures</i>
Ō. O.— <i>Aristotle says that on the river Bog</i>	

are born that live (but) one day.

Sōcratēs dicere solēbat :

Ō. R. Omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt eloquentēs.

Ō. O. Omnēs in eō quod scirent satis esse eloquentēs.

Ō. R. *Socrates used to say : “All men ARE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTAND.”*

Ō. O. *Socrates used to say that all men WERE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTOOD.*

REMARKS.—1. Coördinate Relative clauses are put in the accusative and Infinitive (§ 428).

2. Relative clauses are put in the Indicative: 1. In mere circumlocutions. 2. In explanations of the narrator (§ 428, R. 1).

3. DUM, with the Indicative, is often retained as a mere circumlocution (so also sometimes QUUM): *Dic, hospes, Spartae nōs tē hīc vīdisse jacēntēs, Dum sanctis patriae lēgibus obsequimur, *Tell Sparta, stranger, that thou hast seen us lying here obeying (in obedience to) our country's hallowed laws.*

§ 441. Interrogative sentences are put in the Subjunctive: Ariovistus respondit sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum, *quid sibi vellet?* A. *replied that he had come to Gaul before the Roman people, what did they (= the Roman people) want?* Thrasybūlus magnā vōce exclāmat: *cūr sē fugiant?* *Thrasybulus cried out with a loud voice (asking): why they ran from him?*

REMARK.—Rhetorical questions, i. e., questions which are asked merely to be answered with "No," are transferred from the Indicative of the Oratio Recta to the Accusative and Infinitive of the Ō. O.; if originally in the Subjunctive, the Subjunctive is either retained or transferred to the Infinitive:

Ō. R. Num possum? <i>Can I?</i>	[No.]	Ō. O. Num posse? <i>Could he?</i>
Quid est turpius? <i>What is baser?</i>	[Nothing.]	Quid esse turpius? <i>What was baser?</i>
Cūr amittam? <i>Why should I lose?</i>		{ Cūr amitteret? <i>Why should he lose?</i>
		{ Cūr amittere? <i>Why lose?</i>

§ 442. Imperative sentences are put in the Subjunctive: The Negative is, of course, NĒ: Redditur responsum: Nōndum tempus pugnae esse; castris sē tenērent, *There was returned for answer that it was not yet time to fight, that they must keep within the camp;* Vercingetorix cohortātus est: *nē perturbārentur incommodō, V. comforted them (by saying) that they must not allow themselves to be disconcerted by the disaster.*

Tenses in Ōrātio Oblīqua.

§ 443. The Tenses of the Infinitive follow the laws already laid down :

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action ;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action ;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action (§ 314).

§ 444. The Tenses of the Subjunctive follow the law of sequence (§ 295). The choice is regulated by the point of view of the narrator, or the point of view of the principal personage :

Point of View of the Narrator. Dictātor Maelium jūre caesum prōnūntiāvit quī vocātus ā magistrō equitum ad dictātorem nōn vēnisset, *The dictator publicly declared that Maelius had been righteously put to death, for not having come to the dictator (when) commanded by the master of the horse.* (Point of view of the dictator: quī nōn vēnerit.)

Point of View of the Principal Personage. Lēgātis Helvētiōrum Caesar respondit: consuēsse deōs immortālēs quō grāvius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdere, *Caesar answered the envoys of the Helvetians that the gods were (are) wont that men might (may) suffer the more severely from the change in their fortunes, to grant occasional increase of prosperity to those whom they wished (wish) to punish for their crime.*

Conditional Sentences in Ōrātio Oblīqua.

§ 445. General view of the principal changes produced :

In the Protasis. 1. The Indicative Mood is transferred to the Subjunctive.

2. The Present Tense becomes Imperfect, }
3. The Perfect Tense becomes Pluperfect, } or

Present and Perfect remain unchanged, according to § 444.

4. Imperfect and Pluperfect are unchanged.

In the Apodosis. 1. The Indicative is changed into the Infinitive.

2. The Imperative is changed into the Subjunctive.
3. The Subjunctive of the Imperfect is transferred to the Future Infinitive or the circumlocutions which represent that future (§ 44).
4. The Subjunctive of the Pluperfect is transferred to the Perfect Infinitive of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation (§), or *futūrum fuisse ut* (§).

§ 446. In *Ōrātio Oblīqua* the Future of the logical condition is not to be distinguished from the Present form of the Ideal Conditional, nor is the difference material. After a Past Tense both coincide with the Imperfect form of the Unreal Conditional.

ORATIO RECTA.

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

Ideal: *Sī id crēdās, errēs,*
Unreal: *Sī id crēderēs, errārēs,*
Logical: *Sī id crēdēs, errābis,*

Dixit tē sī id crēderēs errātūrum esse,
He said that if you believed that, you would go wrong.

REMARK.—Generally the difference between the different classes of the conditional vanishes from the point of view of the narrator. When the difference is to be emphasized the tense is not attracted: *Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī a Caesare opus esset sēsē ad illum ventūrum fuisse: sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre, A. answered, that if he had wanted any thing of Caesar he would have come to him; if he (C.) wanted any thing of him, he ought to come to him (A.); O. R. Sī quid mihi opus esset, ad tē venīsem; sī quid tū mē velis, tē ad me venīre oportet.*

§ 447. The Oblique forms of the Logical and Unreal Conditionals are clearly distinguished in the relation of completion, by the difference in the Apodosis:

ORATIO RECTA.

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

Logical: *sī quid crēdidistī errās,*
 sī quid crēdiderās errābās,
 sī id crēdideris errābis,

Dixit tē sī quid credidissēs errāre.
 sī quid crēdidissēs errāssēs.
 sī id crēdidissēs errātūrum esse.
 sī id crēdidissēs errātūrum fuisse.

Unreal: *sī id crēdidissēs errāssēs,*

REMARK.—It is important to mark the difference between the future and the past of the speaker.

Examples of Conditional Sentences in Ōrātio Oblīqua, and in Constructions Involving Oblique Relations.

§ 448. Titurius clāmitābat suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtā; *sī* nihil *esset* (O. R., *sī* nihil est) dūrius, nullō periculō ad proximam legiōnem *perventūrōs* (O. R., *pervenīētis*) *sī* Gallia omnis cum Germānis *cōsensīret* (O. R., *sī cōsensit*) unam *esse* (O. R., est) in celeritāte *positā* salutē, *Titurius kept crying out that his resolution was the best in either case; if there was no especial pressure, they would get to the next legion without danger; if all Gaul was in league with the Germans, their only safety lay in speed.*

§ 449. Eum omnium labōrem finem fore existimabant *sī* hostem ab Ibērō intercludere *potuissent*, *They thought that would be the end of all (their) toils, if they could cut off the enemy from the Ebro.* (O. R., *is labōrum finis erit, sī hostem intercludere potuerimus.*)

§ 450. [Hī] Jugurthae nōn mediocrem animum pollicitandō accendēbant *sī* Micipsa rēx *occidisset* fore uti sōlus imperiō Numidiae *potirētur*, *These persons kindled no little courage in Jugurtha's heart) by promising that if King Micipsa fell, he alone should possess the rule over Numidia.* (O. R., *sī Micipsa occiderit, tū sōlus imperiō potiēris.*)

§ 451. Nōn multō ante urbem captam exaudīta vōx est . . . *futurum esse, nisi prōvisum esset ut Rōma caperētur, Not long before the taking of the city, a voice was heard (saying), that unless precautions were adopted, Rome would be taken.* (O. R., *nisi prōvisum erit, Rōma capiētur.*)

§ 452. Sī vim faciat neque pāreat interficī jubet, *He orders him to be killed if he offers violence, and does not obey.* (O. R., *sī faciet neque pārēbit interficite.* The Subjunctive could stand in the O. R. § 446.)

§ 453. Fertur Jugurtha dixisse urbem vënalem et mätürei peritüram sī emptörem invënerit (Perfect Subjunctive), *Jugurtha is reported to have said that the city was for sale, and would soon perish if it found a buyer.* (O. R., urbs peribit sī emptörem invënerit: Future Perfect Indicative.)

§ 454. Titurius clāmitābat Eburönēs, sī Caesar adesset, ad castra [Römānōrum] ventürös [nōn] esse, *Titurius kept crying out that if Caesar were there, the Eburones would not be coming to the camp of the Romans.* (O. R., sī Caesar adesset, Eburönēs nōn venīrent.) The context shows that Caesar was not there.

§ 455. Omnibus appāruit nisi Āgēsilāus fuisset (§ 375, R. 1) Spartam futūram nōn fuisse, *It was evident to all that if it had not been for Agesilaus, Sparta would have been no more.* (O. R., nisi Āgēsilāus fuisset, Sparta nōn fuisset.)

§ 456. Nisi eō ipsō tempore quīdam nūntiū de Caesaris victoriā essent allāti existimābant plērīque futūrum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur, *Had not messages been brought at that very time about Caesar's victory, most persons thought the city would have been taken.* (O. R., nisi nūntiū allāti essent, oppidum amissum esset.)

REMARKS.—1. Instead of this circumlocution the Perfect Participle Passive with FORE is sometimes used, *e. g.*, oppidum amissum fore.

2. As the Pluperfect Indicative is sometimes used (rhetorically) for the Subjunctive (§ 51), so the ordinary Perfect Infinitive is sometimes employed instead of the Periphrastic: Nemo mihi persuādēbit multōs praestantēs virōs tanta esse cōnatōe (— cōnatūrös fuisse) nisi animō cernerent (§ 881, R. 2.) posteritatem ad sē pertinēre, *No one will persuade me that (so) many eminent men had made such mighty endeavors, had they not seen with their mind's (eye) that futurity belonged to them.* So, regularly, POSSE, POTUISSE, and the like, instead of FORE UT, FUTURUM FUISSE UT . . . Plērīque existimant sī ācrius īsequi valuisset [Pompējum] bellum eō diē potuisse finire, *Most people think that if Pompey had (but) determined to follow up more energetically, he could have finished the war on that day.* (O. R., sī voluisset, potuit, § 384, R. 3.) Namque illā multitudine si sāna

mēns esset (§ 381, R. 2) Graeciae, supplicium Persās dare *potuisse*, *For with that number if Greece had had (— been in her) sound mind, the Persians might have paid the penalty (due).* (O. R. Si sāna mēns *esset* Graeciae, supplicium Persae dare *potuerunt*.)

Pronouns in Oratio Obliqua.

§ 457. 1. The Reflexive is used according to the principles laid down §§ 306, and after.

REMARKS.—1. For the sake of clearness, the subject of the leading sentence is not unfrequently referred to in the form of the demonstrative instead of the reflexive: *Helvētīi Allobrogibus sēsē persuāsūrōs existimābant vel vī coactūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur*, *The Helvetians thought that they would persuade or force the Allobroges to let them (the Helvetians) go through their territory.*

2. The person addressed is ILLE or IS: [*Ariovistus respondit*] nisi dēcēdat [*Caesar*] sēsē *illum* prō hoste hābitūrum; quodsi *eum* interfēcerit, multis sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmānī grātum factūrum, *Ariovistus replied, that unless Caesar withdrew he should regard him as an enemy, and in case he killed him, he would do a favor to many men of the highest position among the Roman people.*

3. Hic and iste are commonly changed into ILLE, as nunc into tum and tunc.

Participial Sentences.

§ 458. Participles are used in Latin even more extensively than in English, to express a great variety of subordinate relations, such as *Time* and *Circumstance*, *Cause* and *Occasion*, *Condition* and *Concession*. The classification cannot be always exact, as one kind blends with another.

§ 459. TIME WHEN: *Alexander moriēns* annulum suum dederat *Perdiccae*, *Alexander (when he was) dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas*; *Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsīs expulsus* Corinthī puerōs docēbat, *Dionysius the tyrant, (after he had been) exiled from Syracuse, taught (a) boys' (school) at Corinth*; *Tiberius trājectūrus* (§ 79) Rhēnum *commeātum* nōn *trāns-*

mīsit, *When Tiberius was about to cross the Rhine, he did not send over the provisions.* ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE: Solōn et Pisistratus Serviō Tulliō rēgnante viguērunt, *Solon and Pisistratus flourished when Servius Tullius was king; Sōlē ortō Volsci sē circumvallātōs vidērunt, After sunrise the Volscians saw that they were surrounded by lines of intrenchment.*

§ 460. CAUSE WHY: Servilius Ahāla Spūrium Maelium regnum appetentem interēmit, *Servilius Ahala slew Spurius Maelius (because he was) aiming at the kingship; Athēniēnsēs Alcibiadem corruptum ā rege Persārū capere nōluisse Cymēn arguēbant, The Athenians charged Alcibiades with having been unwilling to take Cyme (because he had been) bribed by the King of Persia.* ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE: Rōmānī veterēs regnārī omnēs volēbant libertātis dulcēdine nōndum expertā, *The old Romans all wished to have a king over them (because they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.*

REMARK.—An apparent cause is given by UT as VELUT, as, for instance, TAMQUAM (so) as, QUASI, as if: Galli laeti ut explorātā victoriā ad castra Rōmānōrum pergunt, *The Gauls in their joy, as if (their) victory had been fully ascertained, proceeded to the camp of the Romans; Antiochus sēcūrus erat dē bellō Rōmānō tamquam nōn trānsitūris in Asiam Rōmānis, Antiochus was as unconcerned about the war with Rome as if the Romans did not intend to cross over into Asia Minor.*

§ 461. CONDITION AND CONCESSION: Animus sē nōn vidēns alia cernit, *The mind, although it does not see itself, distinguishes other (objects).* ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE: Maximās virtūtēs jacēre omnēs necesse est voluptātē dominante, *All the great virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, if (or when) the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress.*

REMARK.—Later writers add ETSI, QUAMQUAM, or QUAMVIS (§ 397): Caesarem militēs quomōis recūsantem ultrō in Africam sunt secūtī, *The soldiers followed Caesar into Africa of their own motion, although he declined it; *Saepe bibi sūcōs quamvis invitus amārōs, Ov., I have often drunk bitter potions, although against my will.* (QUAMVIS, to what extent you wish, may be used with adjectives.)

§ 462. RELATIVE: Athēniēnsēs virtūte rēgis prō salūte patriae mortī sē offerentis bellō liberantur, *The Athenians were freed from the war by the manliness of their king, who offered himself to death for the salvation of his country*; Pisistratus Homēri librōs cōnfūsōs antea sīc disposuisse dīcitur ut nunc habēmus, *Pisistratus is said to have arranged the books of Homer, which were in confusion before, as we have them now.*

ERRATA.

1.—REFERENCES OMITTED.

- page 121, 5 lines from bottom, § 383, R. 1.
 " 226, 8 " " " § 245, R.
 " 237, supply the references, § 145, § 214, R. 2, § 218, R. 1, § 219, R. 2, § 224.
 " 238, " " " § 123, R. 5.
 " 239, " " " § 162, R. 1, § 113
 " 245, " " " § 176.
 " 246, " " " § 113.
 " 274, " " " § 392.
 " 275, " " " § 382.

2.—MISTAKES IN LATIN.

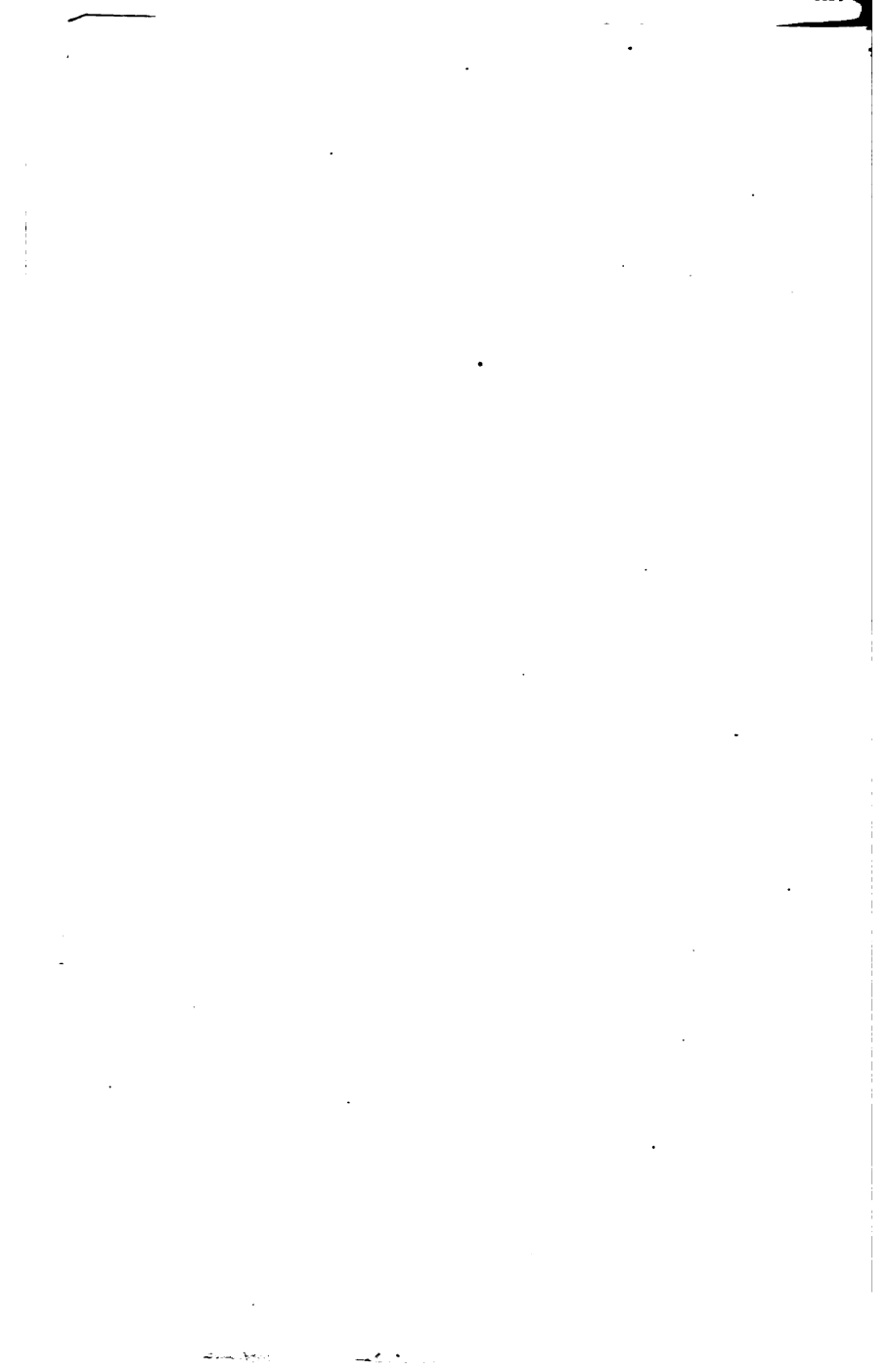
- page 125, 13 lines from bottom, for "lacrimās," read "lacrimis."
 " 155, 2 " " top, read digitō.
 " 213, 13 " " bottom, for "vitæ," read "senectutis."
 " 243, 15 " " top, for "brūtulerat," read "prūtulerat."
 " 244, 8 " " top, for "fluviō," read "fluviōe."
 " 262, 8 " " bottom, the first "ex quō" should be "ex eo;" the first
 "in quem" should be "in eum."
 " 263, last line, for "tactæ," read "tacta." The reference should be § 81,
 not p. 81.
 " 276, 15 lines from bottom, for "bestioale," read "bestiolæ."
 " 281, 1 " " top, for "mātūrel," read "mātūrē."
 " 281, 4 " " bottom, for "valuisse," read "voluisse."

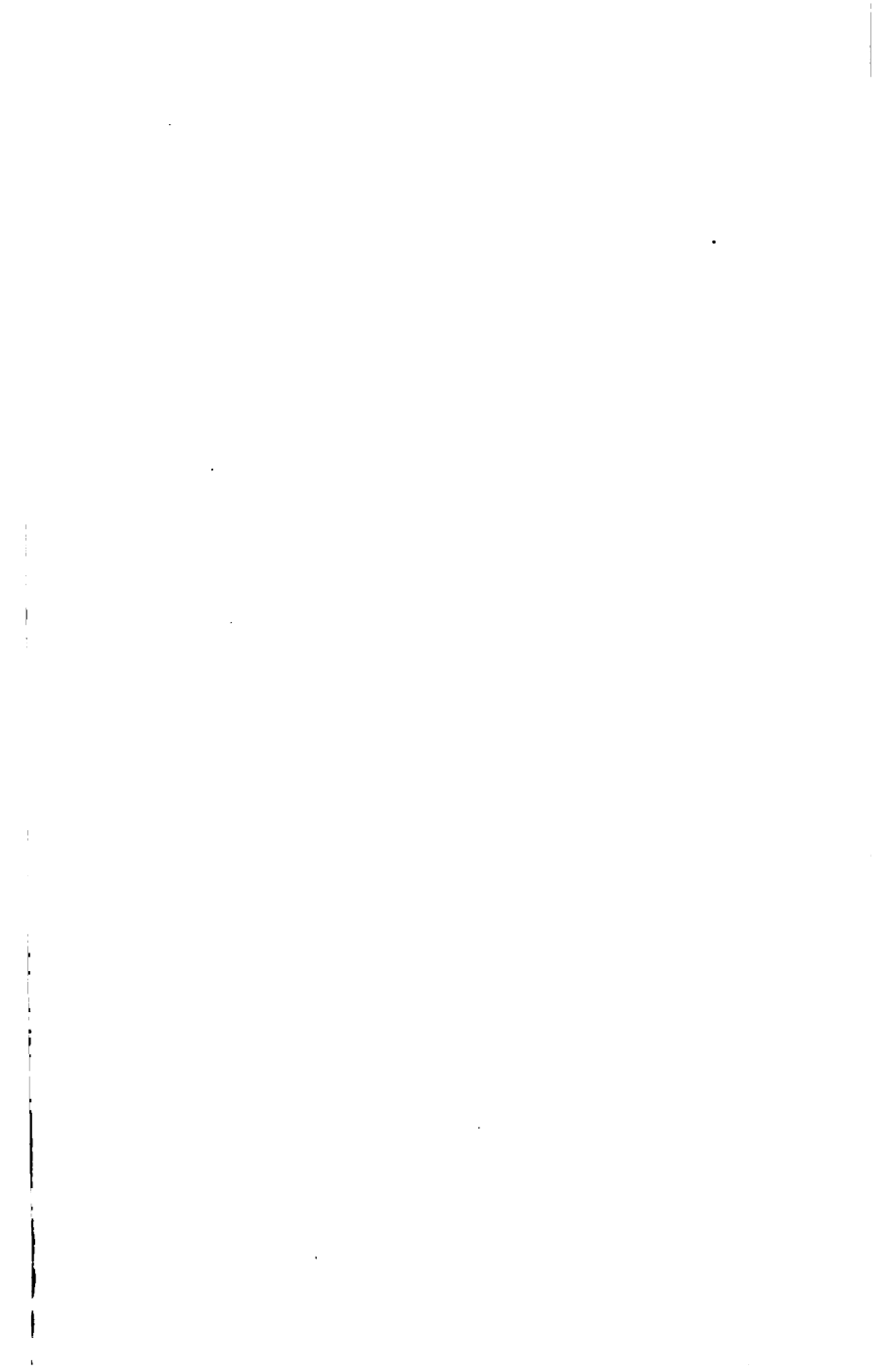
3.—MISTAKES IN ENGLISH.

- page 79, 19 lines from top, for "I groan," read "I grow."
 " 213, 1 " " " for "Tense," read "Sentence."
 " 256, 7 " " bottom, for "If you believed," read "had believed."
 " 262, 14 " " " for "subjunctive," read "substantive."
 " 267, 6 " " " read "there are born."

4.—MISTAKES IN THE NOTATION OF QUANTITY.

- page 11, 4 lines from bottom, for "pīrus," read "pirus."
 " 39, last line, read ōnī and ōnæ.
 " 45, 2 lines from top, read quālisunque.
 " 83, 11 " " bottom, read negligo, and so in other places.
 " 107, 12 " " top, read faba.
 " 203, 14 " " " Cocles.
 " 215, 9 " " " facerent.
 " 221, 9 " " bottom, read Mūōsiōs.
 " 224, 13 " " " Amfisiōe.
 " 232, 12 " " " quotidiē.
 " 239, 10 " " " Pythagorās.
 " 243, 6 " " top, quotiēs.
 " 277, 8 " " bottom, amittam, amitteret, amittere.
 " 279, 9 " " " velis.
 " 281, 18 " " top, amitteretur, amissum.
 " 283, 10 " " " rēge.









This book should be returned to
the Library on or before the last date
stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred
by retaining it beyond the specified
time.

Please return promptly.

~~NOV 5 1922~~

